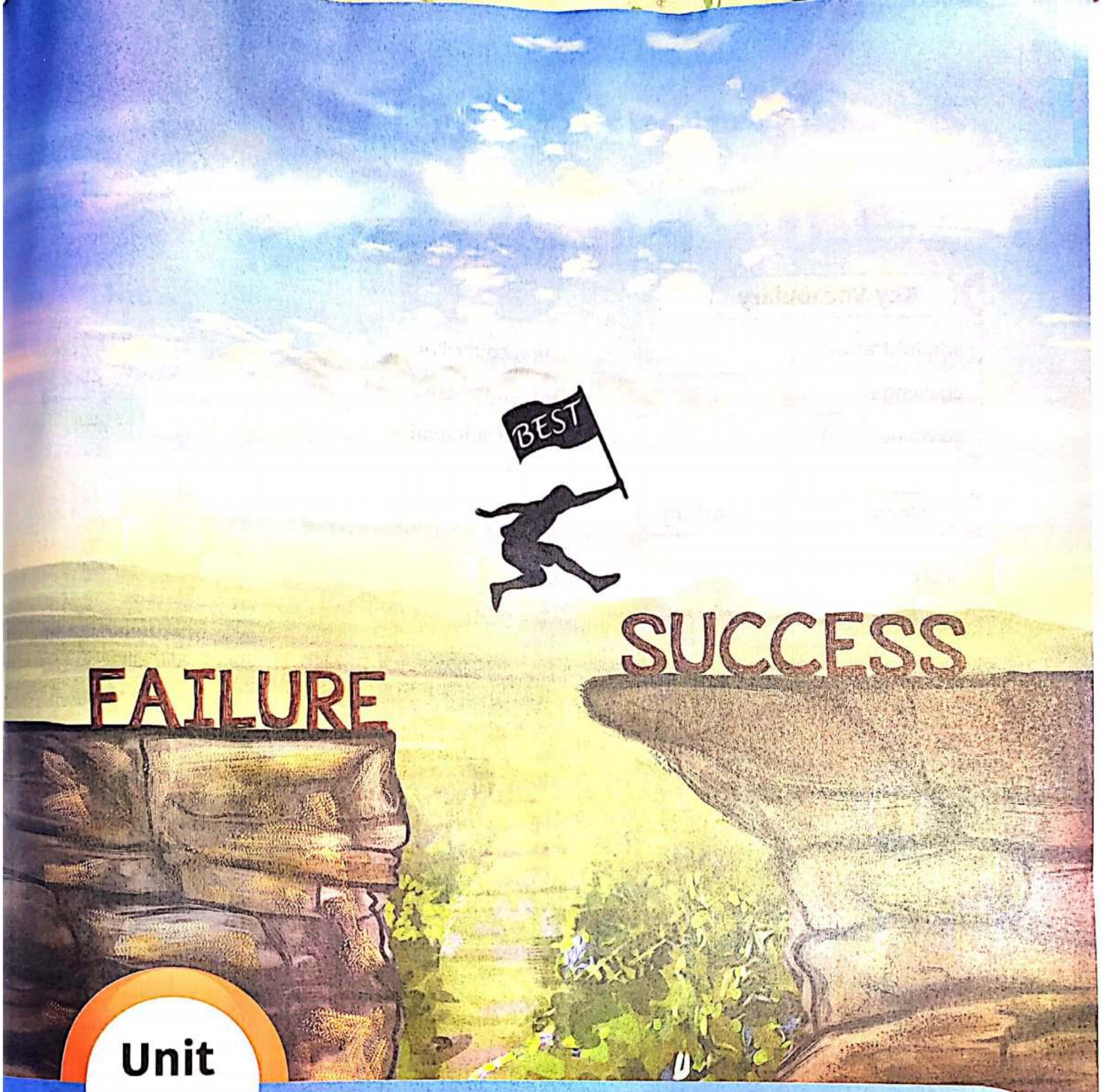
made by Mansy

صلى ع النبى وادعيلى دعوة حلوة

#دفعة المنوفية 2022

#قناة تالتة ثانوى 2022

Scanned with CamScanner



Unit 7

The meaning of success

Objectives

- Reading : An article about achieving success despite challenges
- Writing : An invitation to an event to celebrate achievements
- Listening : A short lecture about what successful people have in common
- Speaking : Research, plan and give a presentation about a successful person
- Language : Present perfect simple versus present perfect continuous, adverbs and adjectives (review)
- Life skills : Critical thinking: evaluate the meaning of success; problem solving: how to achieve set goals

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary

شاهد فيديو الشرح على تطبيق الأضواء

Key Vocabulary

administrative (adj)	إدارى
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدٍّ/يتحدى
combine (v) (d)	يخلط بين
councillor (n)	عضو مجلس/مستشار
impressive (adj)	مؤثر
inspiration (n)	إلهام

Vocabulary on Reading

accept (v) (ed)	يقبل
assistant (n)	مساعد
average (adj) (n)	متوسط
career (n)	مهنة/حياة مهنية
championship (n)	بطولة
character (n)	شخصية
coach (n) (v) (ed)	مدرب/يتدرب
combine (v) (d)	يجمع بين
define (v) (d)	يعرف
determination (n)	تصميم/عزيمة
diagram (n)	شكل/رسم تخطيطى
disability (n)	إعاقة
disabled (adj)	معاق
Down's Syndrome	متلازمة داون (مرض اضطراب جينى)
enthusiastic (adj)	متحمس
exact (adj)	دقيق
female (n) (adj)	أنثى/أنثوى
gym (n)	صالة ألعاب رياضية
highlight (v) (ed)	يؤكد على/يسلط الضوء على
include (v) (d)	يشمل/يتضمن
اهتمام	
male (n) (adj)	ذكر/ذكورى
overcome (v)	يتغلب على
Paralympics (n)	الألعاب الأولمبية للمعاقين
paraphrase (v) (d)	يعيد الصياغة
particularly (adv)	بشكل خاص
phrase (n)	عبارة
powerlifter (n)	لاعب رفع الاثقال
powerlifting (n)	رياضة رفع الاثقال
quote (v) (d) (n)	يقتبس/اقتباس
responsible (adj)	مسئول
role model (n)	قدوة/مثل أعلى
significant (adj)	ذو مغزى/مهم
signposting language (n)	لغة إرشادية
silver (n) (adj)	فضة/فضى
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
support (v) (ed) (n)	يدعم/يؤيد/دعم
treat (v) (ed)	يعامل
value (n)	قيمة/فضيلة
vote (v) (d) (n)	يصوت/تصويت

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Workbook Vocabulary

article (n)	مقال
athlete (n)	رياضى
disease (n)	مرض
facilities (n)	تسهيلات/إمكانيات
independent (adj)	مستقل
likely (adj)	من المحتمل
muscle (n)	عضلة
opportunity (n)	فرصة
Paralympian (adj)	بارالمبى/لاعب أولمبى من المعاقين
polio (n)	مرض شلل الأطفال
publish (v) (ed)	يطبع/ ينشر
realise (v) (d)	يدرك
report (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/ يبلغ عن
respect (v) (ed)	احترام/ يحترم
solve (v) (d)	يحل

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

achieve success	يحقق النجاح
all the time	طوال الوقت
(be) average height	متوسط القامة (الطول)
(be) born with	يولد بـ
change people's minds	يغير آراء الناس
come to a conclusion	يصل لاستنتاج
do a responsible job	يقوم بعمل/وظيفة مسئولة
do sport	يمارس رياضة
answer to	إجابة لـ
combine ... with	يمتزج/يختلط مع
different to	مختلف عن
enthusiastic about	متحمس بشأن
fail at	يفشل فى
in fact	فى الواقع
in terms of	من ناحية (وفقًا لـ)
in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
make ... different	يجعل...مختلفًا
make choices	يقوم باختيارات
on their own	بمفردهم
take a break	يأخذ راحة
take a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا
inspiring for	ملهم لـ
read about	يقرأ عن
train for	يتدرب لـ
treat with	يتعامل بـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
administrate	يدير	administration	إدارة	administrative	إدارى
combine	يجمع بين	administrator	مسئول إدارى	combined	مجمع
determine	يصمم	combination	جمع/مزيج	determined	مصمم/عاقد العزم
impress	يؤثر على	determination	تصميم/عزيمة	impressive	مؤثر
inspire	يلهم/يوحى بـ	impression	انطباع	inspiring	ملهم
value	يقدر/يقيم	inspiration	إلهام	valuable	قيم
		value	قيمة		

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
accept	يقبل	consent/agree	refuse/deny يرفض/ينكر
combine	يجمع بين	blend/integrate	disconnect/separate يفصل
determination	تصميم/عزيمة	perseverance/dedication	indifference/hesitation لا مبالاة/تردد
enthusiastic	متحمس	eager/keen	disinterested/unconcerned غير مبال
impressive	مؤثر	powerful/influential/ significant	insignificant/ordinary غير هام/عادى
include	يشمل/يتضمن	involve/contain	abandon/exclude يترك/يستبعد
overcome	يتغلب على	beat/defeat	fail/surrender يفشل/يستسلم
particularly	بشكل خاص	especially/unusually	normally/commonly بشكل طبيعى/عادى
responsible	مسئول	trustworthy/efficient	impotent/inefficient/ irresponsible غير كفء
significant	مهم/ذو مغزى	important/critical	minor/trivial ثانوى/تافه
treat	يعامل	handle/regard	abandon/disregard يهجر/يتجاهل
value	يقدر	appreciate/respect	disregard/despise لا يكترث/يحتقر

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some new cancer drugs have shown great and ..... results especially with children.
   a) impressed b) puzzling c) impressive d) deployed
2. Mohamed Salah has become a/an ..... to all ambitious young athletes in the Arab World.
   a) infection b) inspiration c) depression d) recreation
3. One of the main ..... of the 21st century for any country is to have a skilled labour force.
   a) prohibitions b) respects c) inflations d) challenges
4. The Paralympic champion has learned to keep a positive attitude about her ..... .
   a) disability b) ability c) possibility d) property
5. Doctors and nurses are supported by ..... staff who mainly do paperwork.
   a) social b) economic c) administrative d) repetitive

Answers 1) c 2) b 3) d 4) a 5) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

Overcoming challenges

Rehab Ahmed enjoyed watching powerlifting[1] on television while she was growing up, but she rarely did any sport herself. After she completed her studies, she met the Egyptian powerlifting team's coach at a gym and soon developed a strong interest in the sport.

Rehab is disabled, but she hasn't let this stop her lifting weights. In fact, her disability[2] has probably been the least significant challenge that she's had to overcome[3]. At first, Rehab wasn't sure if she could successfully combine powerlifting with being a mother to her young daughter. Powerlifting is also seen as a male sport and there aren't many role models for female powerlifters.

Rehab has now become an inspiration[4] to other young women due to her achievements, which have included winning gold at the 2019 World Para Powerlifting Championships and silver at the 2016 and 2020 Paralympics.

Angela Bachiller comes from Valladolid in Spain. She was born with Down's Syndrome[5], which usually results in people having a learning disability and not being as tall as the average person. However, Angela's family has never treated[6] her any differently because of this. They saw no good reason why Angela shouldn't grow up with the values[7] of the importance of hard work, trying your best and trying to help other people.

After working as an administrative[8] assistant at the town hall in Valladolid for two and a half years, a position as a town councillor became free. Angela won the vote and since 2013 she has performed the role of town councillor in the same way as another person doing that job.

Her strong character and determination[9] not to be treated differently have helped her to change people's minds about people with Down's Syndrome and accept her as someone who can do a responsible job.

(1) رياضة رفع الأثقال
(2) إعاقة
(3) يتغلب على
(4) إلهام
(5) متلازمة داون
(6) يعامل
(7) قيم/فضائل
(8) إدارى
(9) تصميم/عزيمة

Reading Text (2)

Study skills: Taking notes

Notice signposting words and phrases

These are words and phrases[1] that the speaker uses to let the listeners know that he/she is going to talk about a subject (e.g. I will talk about three ways that …) and then to show when one part of a lecture[2] has finished (e.g. That's all I have to say about …) and what the next part of the lecture will be about (e.g. Now, I'd like to move on to …). Speakers may also use signposting language to highlight[3] important information, which will usually be information that you need to write down (for example, What I find particularly important is …).

(1) عبارات
(2) محاضرة
(3) يؤكد على
(4) يقتبس
(5) يعيد صياغة

Know when to quote, paraphrase or summarise

You can quote[4] what the lecturer is saying by writing a whole sentence that he/she says, but only do this if you think that you need to mention the whole sentence, exactly as the speaker said it. If you don't need to remember the lecturer's exact words, only the information, you should paraphrase[5] it by using some keywords from the speaker to write what he/she said in your own words.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Scientists have been studying what makes a successful student for many years. Now, they have published a report on their results.

Firstly, how many times have you done the housework? You may be surprised to know that students who have been helping with the housework are often more successful workers when they become independent adults. These students realise that work is something we all have to do to help each other. So students of parents who have been planning what time they do everything are likely to be less independent. Students who can make their own choices and plans will be more successful.

Students who are able to solve problems with others or on their own are also more likely to achieve success in later life. The most successful students are often those who enjoy a challenge. If a student has failed at a task, they don't worry, but sees it as an opportunity student should always set goals for the future.

So, has this article inspired you to become a better student?

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thousands of ..... from all over the world come to compete in the Olympic Games.
   a) politicians **b)** athletes **c)** reporters **d)** trainers
2. Successful people are able to change their situation and become ..... by being responsible for their own lives.
   a) known **b)** reckless **c)** dependent **d)** independent
3. The exercises are designed to strengthen your stomach ..... .
   a) fibres **b)** forms **c)** muscles **d)** sizes
4. ..... is a serious infectious disease that often results in someone being permanently unable to move particular muscles.
   a) Polio **b)** Smallpox **c)** Malaria **d)** Typhoid
5. We need modern technology to help ..... environmental problems like global warming.
   a) create **b)** devise **c)** solve **d)** revise

Answers 1) b 2) d 3) c 4) a 5) c

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

administrative إدارى	relating to the work of managing a company or organisation
challenge تحدٍ	something that tests strength, skill, or ability, especially in a way that is interesting
combine يجمع بين	to do two or more things at the same time

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

councillor عضو مجلس/مستشار	a member of a council
impressive مؤثر	something that is impressive makes you admire it because it is very good, large, important
inspiration الهام	a person, experience, place, etc. that gives you new ideas for something you do

Notes on Vocabulary

1

impressive — مؤثر (يوحى بالإعجاب)
used about something that people admire because it is very good, large, important, etc.
- Seeing the Pyramids for the first time was really impressive.

affecting/ moving — مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)
producing strong emotions of sadness, pity, etc.
- *Oliver Twist* is a deeply affecting story talking about how orphans really suffered.

effective — مؤثر (فعال ومفيد)
successful, and working in the way that was intended
- Antibiotics are only effective if you finish the whole course of treatment.

2

value — قيمة/ما يساويه الشيء
the amount of money that something is worth
- This beautiful garden increases the value of your house.

cost — تكلفة شراء أو فعل شيء
the amount of money you need to buy or do something
- The cost of running a factory is increasing.

price — سعر شيء معروض للبيع
the amount of money you must pay for something that is for sale
- The new supermarkets sell good-quality goods at reasonable prices.
- The prices of plane tickets have risen due to the high petrol prices.

fee — أتعاب لدخول مكان أو استخدام خدمة/ أتعاب تدفع لشخص مثل طبيب أو محامٍ
the amount you have to pay to enter a place, or for the services of a professional person such as a lawyer or a doctor
- There is no entrance fee at this charity exhibition.
- Many people complain that the fees of doctors have recently increased much.

fare — أجرة وسيلة مواصلات
the amount you have to pay to travel somewhere by bus, plane, train
- I didn't have enough money for my bus fare as I lost my wallet.

rent — إيجار شقة أو مكان سكن
the amount you have to pay to live in or use a place that you do not own or to use something that belongs to someone else
- The rent of my new flat is 2000 pounds a month.

3

average — متوسط(حول المعدل أو المستوى المعتاد)
around the usual level or amount
- This six-year-old girl is of average height.
- The boy is a genius. He is of above average intelligence.

normal — طبيعى (عادى أو نموذجى حسب المتوقع)
usual, typical, and as you would expect it to be
- This cold weather is normal for this time of year.

routine — روتينى (شيء يتم بشكل منتظم)
used about things that are done regularly as part of a series of things
- The fault in the security system was discovered during a routine check of the supermarket.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

4 **work** — عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)
- I started work when I was sixteen.
- Much of the heavy work on farms is now done by machines.

works — اعمال فنية او ادبية (اسم يعد)
- The works of Naguib Mahfouz are still read all over the world.

job — وظيفة (اسم يعد)
- (look for/apply for/find) a job
- It's not his job to tell us what we can and can't do.
- I've applied for several jobs without success.

career — مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)
- Choosing a career can be a very difficult decision.

profession — مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)
- (the medical الطبية/legal القضاء/nursing/teaching profession)
- We admit that a few members of our profession have behaved badly.

Notes on sentences from Reading Texts

- Rehab Ahmed enjoyed watching powerlifting on television .....

لاحظ استخدام (verb+ing) بعد الفعل (enjoy).

- They saw no good reason why Angela shouldn't grow up with the values of the importance of hard work, ...

لاحظ استخدام (why + sentence) بعد كلمة (reason).

- After working as an administrative assistant at the town hall in Valladolid for two and a half years, ...

لاحظ استخدام (verb+ing) بعد (after) لعدم وجود فاعل.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The scientific theories can be simplified so that the ..... person could understand.
a) skilled b) routine
c) excellent d) average

2 It's sad that so many young people are unable to find ..... these days.
a) works b) jobs
c) careers d) professions

3 Parents complain that the ..... of some private and language schools are extremely high.
a) rents b) fares
c) fees d) prices

4 Seeing the old man sleeping on the pavement was really an ..... sight that made us all sad.
a) affecting b) impressive
c) effective d) defective

Answers (1 d) (2 b) (3 c) (4 a)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. The young musician's first performance was so ..... that the fans stood for ten minutes clapping for him.
   a) impressive b) effective c) disappointed d) depressed
2. My grandmother's charity work is a/an ..... to all the family.
   a) invention b) inspiration c) intention d) institution
3. Hard work is one of the best ways to ..... the problems of everyday life.
   a) define b) fail c) overcome d) refine
4. Hany told me that he worked as a sales ..... before he left his job.
   a) assistant b) owner c) detective d) informer
5. Adel Emam always played the main ..... in his most films and series.
   a) producer b) director c) rule d) character
6. Our team qualified for an international basketball ..... this year, but we lost in the final game.
   a) race b) examination c) championship d) relationship
7. It isn't easy for a woman to successfully ..... being a professional sportswoman with being a mother.
   a) damage b) combine c) separate d) create
8. We all respected Ibrahim Hamato's ..... to succeed in his career as a table tennis player although he lost his arms.
   a) determination b) inspection c) deterioration d) reduction
9. In the new school, there are special classes for teaching or educating ..... children.
   a) bored b) devised c) disabled d) revised
10. The writer ..... the essay's main arguments in the final paragraph.
    a) phrased b) devised c) exclaimed d) summarised
11. Ahmed is really ..... about his university studies. He can't wait for the beginning of the term.
    a) enthusiastic b) magnetic c) aquatic d) fanatic
12. In Egypt, all those aged 18 or above have the right to ..... in the elections.
    a) teach b) exercise c) degrade d) vote
13. I think it isn't easy for a young pupil to ..... this poem however simple it is.
    a) calculate b) publish c) paraphrase d) appreciate
14. The study figures clearly..... the difference in world living standards.
    a) delight b) highlight c) reply d) focus
15. Ahmed is ..... for taking care of his grandfather who is very old. So, he lives with him.
    a) irresponsible b) desirable c) reusable d) responsible

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

16 There is a/an ..... increase in online shopping during the Coronavirus pandemic. Producers have made great profits.

a) significant b) minor c) amazed d) ineffective

17 My brother works as a civil engineer in the New ..... Capital.

a) Communicative b) Administrative c) Competitive d) Investigative

18 The newspaper ..... says that there will be an increase in the number of university students next year.

a) article b) item c) caption d) composition

19 People with high blood pressure are three times more likely to develop heart ..... or have a stroke.

a) cure b) disease c) medicine d) process

20 Samia's brother never missed a/an ..... to criticise his sister when they were young.

a) award b) reward c) opportunity d) race

21 After I got to the stadium, I ..... that the match had already started.

a) reminded b) achieved c) recognised d) realised

22 Students show their ..... for the teacher by not talking while he is explaining the lesson.

a) respect b) hatred c) disrespect d) envy

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

23 The experienced architect is responsible for designing the entire project. The synonym of "responsible" is ..... .

a) inefficient b) trustworthy c) affecting d) puzzling

24 The achievements of great women really ..... people's minds about the role of women in society.

a) played b) did c) made d) changed

25 Winning the Olympic medals is inspiring ..... all young sportsmen and sportswomen.

a) in b) at c) for d) about

26 The company valued the experience of the secretary who has just retired. The verb "value" is similar in meaning to the verb ..... .

a) appreciate b) deny c) refuse d) disregard

27 It leaves a very bad ..... if you're late for a job interview.

a) impress b) impression c) impressive d) impressed

28 This model combines a printer and scanner. The antonym of the verb " combine" is ..... .

a) relate b) connect c) separate d) spray

29 I'm really enthusiastic ..... the idea of reading online newspapers.

a) about b) in c) at d) on

30 Visiting Burj Khalifa is really an impressive experience. The adjective " impressive" is the opposite of the adjective ..... .

a) respected b) meaningful c) effective d) insignificant

31 The internet made a great change in ..... of the way students learn.

a) advance b) terms c) conclusions d) request

32 Trees give us ..... chemicals which can be used in many fields.

a) value b) valuing c) valuable d) valueless

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

(B) Language

Present Perfect and Present Perfect Continuous

المضارع التام والمضارع التام المستمر

1 Present Perfect

المضارع التام

لقد تمت دراسة المضارع التام فى الوحدة الأولى، وهذه مراجعة شاملة للزمن.

Form

Subj. + have/has + P.P.

- We have prepared our luggage.

Negative

Subj. + have/has not + P.P.

- I haven't heard from Ahmed since he travelled abroad.

Interrogative

Have/Has + subj. + P.P.?

- Has Emad tidied his room?

Wh-word + have/has + subj. + P.P.?

- Where has Samir gone?

Passive

Obj. + have/has been + P.P.

- The car hasn't been repaired yet.

Usage الاستخدام

1. They are happy because they have won the cup.
   حدث انتهى وأثره واضح فى الحاضر.
2. I have just had my lunch. (I'm not hungry now).
   حدث انتهى منذ فترة قريبة جدًا لدرجة أننا لا نعتبره ماضيًا.
3. We have had this flat for three years.
   حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا وخاصة مع الأفعال غير الحركية والتى لا تستخدم فى المضارع التام المستمر.
4. for, since, already, yet, just, ever, never, so far, up till now, lately, recently, how long .. over the years, etc.
   مع الكلمات والتعبيرات الآتية:

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Key words		Examples
already	بالفعل	I have already bought a lot of bread.
just	حالًا	She has just fed the baby. = She fed the baby a moment ago. ماضٍ بسيط
ever	من قبل	Have you ever played hockey? / This is the most expensive car I've ever bought.
never	مطلقًا/أبدًا في النفي وجمل المقارنة	They have never visited Luxor. / I have never driven a faster car than BMW.
yet	حتى الآن (النفي/السؤال)	I haven't finished breakfast yet. / Has your course started yet?
so far/up till now	حتى الآن	Salah has scored 2 goals in this match up till now.
lately, recently	حديثًا/مؤخرًا	Have you bought any shirts recently/lately?
over	على مر (السنين)	Egypt has changed over the last 8 years.
how long ...?		How long has he had that camera?
for (duration)	مدة	I haven't seen Mariam for 3 months.
since	نقطة بداية	She hasn't visited us since last May.

have/has gone (to) / have/has been (to) / have/has been in

have/has been to — ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه

- Ramy has been to the shops. He came back a moment ago.

have/has gone to — ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد أو في الطريق إلى هناك

- Samy has gone to the shops. He will come back in half an hour.

have/has been in — موجود في مكان

- We have been in Cairo for 20 years now.

for
- a day/a month/a year
- weeks/months/years
- several days/weeks/years
- 2 hours
- ages
- a long time
- the last week/year

since
- + ماضٍ بسيط (he left school)
- Friday/Monday أيام
- last June/April شهور
- 2 o'clock ساعات
- 2000 سنين
- + عبارة اسمية (his childhood)
- last week/last year
- then منذ ذلك الحين (بدل ماضٍ بسيط)

لاحظ

١- نستخدم the مع for إذا كان الشيء محسوبًا مثل for the last week بمعنى (لمدة الأسبوع الماضي) وهو أسبوع واحد هنا.
نستخدم the مع since إذا كان الشيء غير محسوب وكان بداية حدث مثل the morning أو the last time وبعدها جملة ماضٍ بسيط مثل:

- I haven't eaten fish since the last time I visited Alexandria.

٢- استخدام then بعد since بدل جملة ماضي بسيط مذكورة سابقًا وبعدها أو قبلها المضارع التام:

- I left school in 1995, and since then I've lived in London.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Extra Points

1. It's + مدة + since + subj. + last + ماضٍ بسيط
   - It's 2 years since I last visited London.
2. It's the first/second/third time, etc. + مضارع تام
   - It's the first time I've met a celebrity.
3. Present perfect + this morning/afternoon, etc.
   - I have received 2 e-mails this morning.

   إذا لم تكن فترة الصباح مثلًا قد انتهت.
   (We are still in the morning).
4. Past simple + this morning/afternoon, etc.
   - I received 2 e-mails this morning.

   إذا كانت فترة الصباح قد انتهت.
   (We are in the afternoon or the evening).
5. Subject + last + past simple + when + past simple
   - I last caught fish when I was in Hurghada.
6. The last time + subject + past simple + was + مدة + ago. (was in + سنة)
   - The last time Ali played football was 10 years ago. (was in 2012)
7. We often use the present perfect with already and still to express surprise.

   غالبًا ما نستخدم المضارع التام مع كلمات already وstill للتعبير عن الدهشة.
   - Our bus still hasn't arrived! It's too late.
   - Have you finished the exercise already?
   - Have you already finished the exercise?
8. We use the present perfect with (after, when, as soon as) to refer to the future.

   نستخدم المضارع التام مع الروابط الزمنية (after, when, as soon as) للإشارة للمستقبل.
   - I'll leave the place when/after I've taken the money.
9. just + present perfect
   - I've just called the doctor.
10. past simple + just now
    - He left just now.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He ..... fish since he was in Port Said.
   a) didn't eat b) hasn't eaten c) won't eat d) isn't eating
2. I haven't drawn a picture since I ..... a child.
   a) have been b) were c) had been d) was
3. Salah ..... 2 goals with Liverpool so far.
   a) has scored b) scored c) had scored d) was scoring
4. Don't come in here! I've ..... cleaned the floor.
   a) always b) already c) just d) just now
5. I haven't taken any photographs ..... years.
   a) since b) for c) ever d) in

Answers 1) b 2) d 3) a 4) c 5) b

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

2) Present Perfect Continuous

المضارع التام المستمر

Form

Subj + have/has + been + v-ing

- We have been playing for 2 hours now.

Negative

Subj + haven't/hasn't + been + v-ing

- Our team hasn't been doing very well lately.

Interrogative

Have/Has + Subj + been + v-ing?

- Have you been searching for a job recently?

Wh-word + have/has + Subj + been + v-ing?

- How long have you been waiting?

Usage الاستخدام

1. **For an action which started in the past and continues up to the present especially with time expressions such as (for, since, all morning/day/week, etc, How long, lately, recently).**

يستخدم لحدث بدأ فى الماضى وما زال مستمرًا وخاصة مع الكلمات المذكورة.

- It has been raining for three hours now.
- How long have you been working in this company?

2. **For an action which started and finished in the past and lasted for some time. The result is visible in the present.**

حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى (ولكنه كان مستمرًا فى الماضى) ونتيجته واضحة فى الحاضر .

- His T-shirt is dirty. He has been playing football.

هو لم يعد يلعب ولكن ملابسه متسخة نتيجة لما كان يحدث.

3. **To explain a present situation**

تفسير موقف فى الحاضر

- I've been running – that's why I'm so tired.

- With verbs that take a long time

لاحظ

يستخدم هذا الزمن غالبًا مع الأفعال التى تستغرق وقتًا طويلًا إلى حد ما مثل:

stay, run, study, play, rain, sleep, write, teach, learn, cook, read, paint, etc.

- Mona has been cooking for 2 hours.

feel, live, work, teach

- We have lived/been living here for twenty years.

١ مع بعض الأفعال لا فرق فى المعنى إذا استخدمنا المضارع التام أو التام المستمر، مثل:

- He has typed three reports so far.
- He has been typing reports all morning.

٢ إذا ذكر عدد للأشياء التى تم فعلها نستخدم المضارع التام.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

❷ يستخدم المضارع التام مع state verbs لبيان حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا لأن هذه الأفعال لا تستخدم مع المضارع التام المستمر.

join, like, dislike, hate, enjoy, love, prefer, believe, think, notice, remember, understand, realise, seem, know, see, hear, feel, taste, look, smell, sound, be, contain, fit, include, belong, own, want, mean, appear, have, cost, owe, need, surprise

- He has owned this car for 5 years. He doesn't intend to sell it.
- I have had this camera since I got married. It's still in a good condition.

ℹ هناك كلمات وعبارات تساعد فى اختيار المضارع التام المستمر.

- He has been painting the wall for 3 hours and hasn't finished yet.
  now.
  and he will finish in 2 hours.
  and he is still painting it.

Present perfect continuous or Present perfect?

Present Perfect Continuous	Present Perfect
For an action happening over a period of time.	**For a complete action.**
(1) Emad has been repairing the car.	(1) Emad has repaired the car.
(2) We have been touring Egypt.	(2) We've finished our tour of Egypt.
(3) Ali is out of breath. He's been running.	(3) Ali is here at last. He has run all the way.
(4) I've been writing an essay. I'm tired now.	(4) I've written an essay. I can hand it now.
We use it when we say "How long".	**We use it when we say "How much/many".**
(5) Rasha has been playing music all day.	(5) Rasha has played at least twenty CDs.
(6) I've been ironing shirts since ten o'clock.	(6) I've ironed eight shirts.
(7) How long have you been learning to drive?	(7) How many driving lessons have you had?

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rania ..... as a doctor for the last ten years.
   a) has been working b) worked c) had worked d) is working
2. My sister ..... with me for three weeks now.
   a) stayed b) has been staying c) is staying d) stays
3. My neighbour ..... music for 2 hours. I can't do my homework.
   a) has played b) is playing c) has been playing d) plays
4. We ..... in Cairo since 2000. We don't intend to leave it.
   a) are living b) live c) lived d) have been living
5. It ..... for three hours now. I hope it stops raining.
   a) has been raining b) has rained c) is raining d) rains

Answers (1 a) (2 b) (3 c) (4 d) (5 a)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a month since I last ..... shopping.
   a) had gone b) have gone c) go d) went
2. He ..... English since three o'clock.
   a) has been studying b) was studying c) studied d) studies
3. I can't call you because I ..... my mobile phone.
   a) had lost b) have been losing c) have lost d) was losing
4. I haven't gone to Luxor ..... a long time.
   a) in b) for c) since d) until
5. Your face looks pale شاحب. You ..... too hard these days.
   a) have been working b) worked c) had worked d) work
6. Omar ..... to the market. Let's see what he has bought.
   a) had been b) has gone c) has been d) will go
7. The weather is awful, it ..... all day.
   a) is raining b) has been raining c) rained d) has rained
8. I ..... anyone taller than Tarek in my whole life.
   a) just saw b) never see c) have ever seen d) have never see
9. This actor began acting in the 1990s. He ..... for about 32 years.
   a) had acted b) acted c) has been acting d) acts
10. With this promotion, I feel that I ..... a turning point in my career.
    a) have achieved b) achieve c) achieved d) had achieved
11. I haven't met Rami ..... the last time we were in Alexandria together.
    a) since b) for c) when d) ago
12. It is the first time I ..... a tiger.
    a) see b) have ever seen c) saw d) am seeing
13. That's the sixth cup of coffee you ..... today.
    a) was having b) had c) have had d) had had
14. These are the glasses I ..... ever since I was 30.
    a) was wearing b) am wearing c) wore d) have worn
15. I ..... my hands, so that I can help you with the cooking.
    a) have washed b) wash c) had washed d) was washing
16. Chess ..... my hobby since childhood. I really like it.
    a) is being b) had c) has been d) was
17. Have you finished your homework .....? I really can't believe so.
    a) ever b) already c) yet d) just

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 I haven't written to my English pen friend ..... the last two months.

a) until b) in c) since d) for

19 I ..... sushi for the first time yesterday.

a) ate b) haven't eaten

c) had eaten d) have eaten

20 They ..... poor. They have never had any money to afford their living and education.

a) always been b) always are

c) have always been d) were always

21 Prices ..... sharply over the past six months.

a) had risen b) have risen

c) rose d) were rising

22 My grandfather ..... here since childhood and I think he knows everyone in our village.

a) am living b) lived

c) has lived d) had been living

23 He ..... all night long. Now he is totally exhausted and ..... to sleep.

a) has been driving/wants b) has driven/wants

c) was driving/wants d) has been driving/is wanting

24 The next bus leaves at 8 p.m., but I still ..... a ticket!

a) hadn't bought b) am buying

c) haven't bought d) bought

25 Mr. Galal ..... phone calls to travel agencies all day long, but he ..... a suitable offer.

a) has made/still hasn't got b) has been making/still doesn't get

c) is making/still didn't get d) has been making/still hasn't got

26 It's 9 a.m. Shahd ..... four cups of coffee this morning.

a) is already having b) had already had

c) has already had d) has already been having

27 ..... the report? Yes, I have just finished it. I ..... it for so long.

a) Did you write/have been doing b) Have you written/have been doing

c) Have you written/was doing d) Have you written/have done

28 I .....this washing machine for 5 years now.

a) had owned b) have owned

c) own d) am owning

29 How long ..... that camera? – About a month.

a) did you have b) have you been having

c) had you been having d) have you had

30 Which sentence is in the correct form in the present perfect tense?

a) I have done it yesterday. b) I have done it yet.

c) I haven't done it lately. d) I haven't ever done it recently.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Parents in some Arab countries still tend to ..... boys differently from girls.
   a) trade b) detest c) cure d) treat
2. No one can deny the ..... of a good education in the progress of any country.
   a) fare b) value c) cost d) price
3. My uncle had worked for some years as a/an ..... assistant, but he didn't like office work.
   a) responsive b) reflective c) administrative d) defensive
4. A budget ميزانية is ..... as a plan of action expressed in money terms.
   a) defined b) decided c) determined d) deceased
5. Educational curricula مناهج in most countries ..... courses in computing and internet technology.
   a) consist b) include c) exclude d) proclaim
6. Our school has a/an ..... class size of 40 students.
   a) inspected b) unusual c) average d) natural
7. ..... is the sport of carrying weights in three different ways, in a set order.
   a) Surfing b) Boxing c) Wrestling d) Powerlifting
8. I love playing hard for such an enthusiastic audience. The antonym of the word "enthusiastic" is ..... .
   a) unconcerned b) keen c) interested d) defective
9. My brother isn't here. He ..... into town to buy some new shoes.
   a) has gone b) has been c) had gone d) was going
10. It's not nice of her. I ..... for her all day and she hasn't come yet.
    a) waited b) had waited c) have been waiting d) am waiting
11. Phone for an ambulance. I think Samy ..... his arm.
    a) breaks b) has broken c) had broken d) was breaking
12. My brothers ..... since 8 pm yesterday and they haven't woken up yet.
    a) are sleeping b) slept c) sleep d) have been sleeping
13. I ..... a good night's sleep for two weeks.
    a) hadn't had b) didn't have c) wasn't having d) haven't had
14. Baher ..... this book for over 15 days now.
    a) is reading b) has been reading c) read d) reads
15. I finished my essay yesterday, but I ..... it in to my teacher yet.
    a) haven't given b) hadn't given c) didn't give d) have given
16. Nahla has already written an essay and she ..... it out for three hours. Don't interrupt her.
    a) is checking b) has been checked c) has been checking d) has checked
17. Which description best suits the full-stop?
    a) A dot at the end of a sentence indicating that the sentence is complete.
    b) A dot at the end of a sentence which leads to the next sentence.
    c) A mark in a sentence indicating when the sentence should begin.
    d) A dot in the middle of the sentence.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 What is the main purpose of the persuasive paragraph?
a) To describe a special event.
b) To inspire the reader to feel a certain way towards an event, character, place, etc.
c) To explain a concept in full depth.
d) To make the reader experience whatever is narrated.

19 Choose the topic sentence that suits these supporting sentences.
Games, sports, picnics and other outdoor activities are interrupted by the rain. Heavy rain also prevents fishermen from going out to sea.
a) Rain really supports activities.
b) Heavy rain also prevents fishermen from going out to sea.
c) Farmers think that heavy rain is very useful.
d) Heavy rain causes trouble to us.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

All great men have been successful. They are remembered for their great achievements. But, it is certain that success comes to those who are sincere, hardworking, loyal and committed to their goals. Success has been man's greatest motivation. It has a great effect on life. It brings pleasure and pride. It gives a sense of fulfillment. Everybody hopes to be successful in life, but success smiles on those who have a proper approach, planning, vision and stamina. One cannot be successful without cultivating these certain basic things in life. It is very difficult to set out on a journey without knowing one's goals and purposes. Clarity of the objective is a must to succeed in life. A focused approach with proper planning is certain to bring success. Indecision and insincerity are big obstacles on the path to success.

One should have the capability, capacity and resources to turn one's dreams into reality. Mere desire cannot bring you success. This is the basic requirement of success. The next important thing is the eagerness, seriousness and the urge to be successful.

One needs to pursue one's goals with all one's sincerity and passion. One should always be in high spirit. Time is also a deciding factor. Only the punctual and committed have succeeded in life. The lives of great men are examples of this. They had all these qualities in plenty which helped them rise to the peak of success.

Hard labour is one of the basic requirements of success. Every success has a ratio of five percent inspiration and ninety-five percent perspiration. It is patience, persistence and perseverance which play a decisive role in achieving success. Failures are the pillars of success as they are our stepping-stones and we must get up and start again and be motivated.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 Success comes certainly to ..... .
a) those who want it
b) everybody who hopes to be successful
c) those who are sincere, hardworking loyal and committed
d) those who have always dreamt of it

21 We need ..... to achieve success.
a) a proper approach, planning, vision and stamina
b) to be old enough
c) to be rich and businessmen
d) indecision and insincerity

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

22 Great men have ..... to rise to the peak of success.

a) sincerity b) passion c) punctuality d) all of these

23 Ratio of success is five percent of ..... .

a) perspiration b) inspiration c) patience d) passion

24 ..... is a big obstruction on the path to success.

a) Capacity b) Mere desire c) Lack of spirit d) Motivation

25 ..... helps us to get up and start again and motivate us to achieve success with more passion.

a) Failure b) Success c) Sincerity d) Development

26 The word from the passage that means "endurance" is ..... .

a) passion b) patience c) sincerity d) stamina

27 The best title to the passage is ..... .

a) Success and failure
b) The elements of success
c) People who don't succeed
d) Young people and success

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 With determination and patience, many people with special needs could do miracles and achieve great success in life.

a) بالإصرار والصبر استطاع كثير من الناس ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة القيام بالمعجزات وتحقيق نجاح كبير فى الحياة.

b) بالإصرار والصبر استطاع كثير من الناس المحتاجين بشكل خاص القيام بالمعجزات وتحقيق نجاح كبير فى الحياة.

c) بالتصميمات والصبر استطاع كثير من الناس المحتاجين بشكل خاص القيام بالمعجزات وتحقيق نجاح قليل فى الحياة.

d) بالإصرار والصبر استطاع بعض من الناس ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة القيام بالمعجزات وتحقيق نجاح قليل فى الحياة.

29 Co-operation among nations of the world will result in spreading peace and security in addition to solving global problems.

a) يسبب التعاون بين دول العالم إلى نشر السلام والأمن، بالإضافة إلى حل المشكلات القومية.

b) ينتج التعاون بين دول العالم عن نشر السلام والأمن، بالإضافة إلى حل المشكلات العالمية.

c) يؤدى التعاون بين دول العالم إلى نشر السلام والأمن، بالإضافة إلى حل المشكلات العالمية.

d) يؤدى التعاون بين دول العالم إلى منع السلام والأمن، بالرغم من حل المشكلات العالمية.

30 يفضل الكثيرون الكتاب الإلكترونى لسهولة حمله وقراءته أينما كانو لذلك أصبح جزءا هاما من التعليم الحديث.

a) Many people prefer electronic books because they are easy to carry and read wherever they are. That's because; they became an important part of recent education.

b) Many people prefer electronic books because they are simple to carry and read wherever they are. That's why; they became an important part of modern education.

c) Many people prefer electric books because they are easy to carry and read wherever they are. That's the reason; they became an important part of modern education.

d) Many people prefer e-books because they are easy to carry and read wherever they are. That's why; they became an important part of modern education.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

شاهد فيديو الشرح على تطبيق الأضواء

(A) Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

achievement (n)	إنجاز
attached (adj)	مرفق/متصل
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر
award (n) (v) (ed)	جائزة/وسام/يمنح جائزة
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ
ceremony (n)	مراسم/احتفال
complicated (adj)	معقد
details (n)	تفاصيل
event (n)	حدث
feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة/تعقيب
indicate (v) (d)	يشير إلى/يبين
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يوحى بـ
invitation (n)	دعوة
notice (n) (v) (d)	ملاحظة/يلاحظ
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
perform (v) (ed)	يؤدى
pleasure (n)	سرور
presentation (n)	تقديم/عرض تقديمى
R.S.V.P. form	استمارة رد على دعوة
trust (v) (ed) (n)	يثق/ثقة

Workbook Vocabulary

certificate (n)	شهادة
competition (n)	مسابقة
creativity (n)	إبداع
degree (n)	درجة جامعية
graduate (v) (d) (n)	يتخرج/خريج
graduation (n)	تخرج
hall (n)	صالة/قاعة
opera singer (n)	مغنية أوبرا
pause (v) (n) (d)	يتوقف/يصمت/صمت
picnic (n)	نزهة
poster (n)	ملصق
rhetorical (adj)	بلاغى/بيانى
right (n)	حق
stadium (n)	استاد
technique (n)	تقنية/أسلوب
visual aids (n)	مؤثرات/مساعدات بصرية

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

do amazing things	يقوم بأشياء مذهلة	over the last year	خلال العام الماضى
get a degree in	يحصل على درجة جامعية فى	receive an invitation	يتلقى دعوة
give a presentation	يقوم بعرض تقديمى	sound more interesting	يبدو أكثر تشويقًا
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	the year to come	العام القادم
begin with	يبدا بـ	give out	يوزع
compare ... with	يقارن بين	invite ... to	يدعو ... إلى
connected to	متصل بـ	reply to	رد على
dream of	يحلم بـ	send ... to	يرسل ... إلى

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن إنجازه
attend	يحضر	attendance	حضور	attendant	مصاحب
		attendee	حاضر		
		attendant	مرافق		
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
		celebrity	شخصية مشهورة		
indicate	يبين/يشير	indication	إشارة/بيان	indicative	إرشادى/مبين
invite	يدعو	invitation	دعوة	inviting	مرحب/مغرٍ
perform	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدى
present	يقدم	presentation	تقديم/عرض تقديمى	presentable	صالح للتقديم
		presenter	مقدم		

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
attached	موفق/متصل	connected/tied	separated/loose	منفصل/مفكك
attend	يحضر	be present	disappear/be absent	يختفى/يتغيب
celebrate	يحتفل/يحتفى بـ	commemorate/rejoice/ honour	criticise/mourn	ينتقد/يحزن/يقوم بحداد
complicated	معقد	difficult/complex	easy/simple	سهل/بسيط
inspire	يلهم	encourage/stimulate	depress/discourage	يحبط/يثبط عزيمة
pleasure	سرور	joy/excitement	sadness/sorrow	حزن/أسى
trust	ثقة	confidence/faith	disbelief/doubt	عدم ثقة/شك

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My birthday party ..... were sent to all my friends yesterday afternoon.
   a) inventions b) invitations c) presents d) introductions
2. Many kinds of research ..... that eating habits are changing fast especially for young people.
   a) implement b) reply c) apply d) indicate
3. Two thousand balloons were released into the air at the opening ..... of the festival.
   a) funeral b) detection c) ceremony d) battle
4. The young woman was fired for not ..... her duties as a manager secretary well.
   a) performing b) carrying c) researching d) depicting
5. The new clothes catalogue was ..... in a file with the email to the customer.
   a) attacked b) attached c) tied d) separated

Answers 1) b 2) d 3) c 4) a 5) b

Reading Text (1)

(A)

Hi Dina,

We're organising(1) a surprise 50th birthday party for Aunt Soha on Saturday evening. I know it's a bit short notice, but do you think you can make it? The plan is that we all meet at her favourite restaurant at 6.45. Then Aunt Soha walks in with Uncle Sami at 7.00 and finds us all there!

Let me know by tomorrow evening if you can come. Hope to see you there!

Cousin Reem

ينظم (1) .....
سرور (2) .....
مراسم (3) .....
إنجازات (4) .....
يثق (5) .....
يحتفل بـ (6) .....
يبين (7) .....
يحضر (8) .....

(B)

Dear Dina Osman,

It is our pleasure(2) to invite you to the awards ceremony(3) for young sports people in our area. The evening will begin with a dinner at the Sporting Club and after that prizes for sporting achievements(4) over the last year will be given out to the winners.

We trust(5) that this will be a very enjoyable evening where we can celebrate(6) your sporting achievements and, we hope, inspire you to continue to perform at such a high level over the year to come.

Please, use the attached RSVP form to indicate(7) whether or not you can attend(8) and send it to Mrs Noha El Taweel at the Club office by 14th June.

Yours sincerely,

Magdy El Sayed

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (2)

Hi everyone. Thank you for coming to my presentation today. I'm going to tell you about the life and achievements of Fatma Said.

Have you heard this name before? Well, she is one of the world's best opera singers. She started singing lessons at the Cairo Opera House when she was just fourteen.

That is like playing football at the world's most famous stadium. But it is not easy. When she was younger, she worked very hard and studied in other countries. She got a degree in music at a university in Germany. Then, in 2014, she became the first ever Egyptian to sing at the famous opera house in Milan, Italy. The first time I heard Fatma I thought, I want to be an opera singer too!

She has also done some amazing things, for example, she has sung for children's rights to an education for the United Nations and in 2016, she won Egypt's Creativity Award, a very important prize.

If you look at this poster, you can see a list of her awards. These include competitions she has won in Ireland, Turkey and Germany. And that brings me to the end of my presentation. Does anyone have any questions?

Reading Text (3)

Hi Ali,

We're organising a picnic in the park for my cousins who are visiting us from Australia. It's tomorrow evening. It's a bit short notice, but do you think you can come?

The plan is that we meet at our house at midday. Then we can prepare a picnic and take it to the park.

Let me know by this evening if you can make it. Hope to see you soon!

Best wishes,

Nabil

Reading Text (4)

Dear Mr and Mrs Amir,

It is our pleasure to invite you to your daughter's graduation ceremony on 12 July. They day will begin at the university hall, when the certificates will be given out to the graduates. We will then move to the university restaurant for an evening meal for the parents.

We trust that this will be a very enjoyable day where we can celebrate your daughter's achievements with the other parents and young people at the university.

Please use the attached R.S.V.P. form to indicate whether you can attend and send it to the university office by 1 July.

Yours sincerely,

Mrs Morsy

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A ..... of completion will be issued to all who complete the English course.
   a) guarantee b) permit
   c) contract d) certificate
2. Many young men have at least one ..... of their favourite sports stars on their bedroom walls.
   a) statue b) video
   c) poster d) sculpture
3. After ....., my cousin worked as a trainee accountant at a local bank.
   a) graduation b) nursery
   c) infancy d) gradation
4. I asked my father to let me watch the football match at the ....., but I wasn't allowed to.
   a) course b) stadium
   c) court d) hall
5. Laser ..... have many applications in medical treatments.
   a) routes b) means
   c) inspections d) techniques

Answers 1) d 2) c 3) a 4) b 5) d

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

attend يحضر	to go to an event such as a meeting or a class
ceremony مراسم	an important social or religious event, when a traditional set of actions is performed in a formal way
feedback تغذية راجعة	advice or criticism about how successful or useful something is
inspire يلهم/يوحى بـ	to encourage someone by making them feel confident and eager to do something
presentation عرض تقديمى	an event at which you describe or explain a new product or idea

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

1

notice — يلاحظ (يدرك شيئًا/حدوث شيء)
to realise that something is there or that something is happening
- I noticed that the child was rather quiet during dinner.

detect — يكتشف (يلاحظ وجود شيء صعب الرؤية بسبب صغر حجمه أو عدم وضوحه)
to notice something that is difficult to see, hear, etc. because it is very small, faint, or unclear
- The X-ray telescopes can now detect every type of astronomical فلكى object.
- He thought he detected some interest in her eyes.

spot — يحدد/يكتشف (يلاحظ شيئًا بصعوبة لفترة قصيرة)
to notice something, especially something that is difficult to see or that you see for a short time only
- Can you spot the difference between these two pictures?
- I'm glad you spotted the mistake before it was too late.

2

indicate — يشير إلى وجود موقف أو صحة شيء
show that a particular situation exists, or that something is likely to be true
- The study indicates a connection between poverty and crime.

refer to — يشير إلى (يذكر أو يتحدث عن)
mention or speak about someone or something
- We agreed never to refer to the dispute again.

3

give — يعطى/يهب (دون توقع دفع شيء فى المقابل)
to let someone have something, without expecting to be paid for it
- He was always giving me gifts.
- They gave a free drink to all their customers.

donate — يتبرع (لمؤسسة كعمل خيرى)
to give money to an organisation that helps people or protects something, or to give your blood or part of your body to save someone's life
- The company donates 1 percent of its profits to charity.
- 70% of people wanted to donate their organs after death.

award — يمنح (مالًا أو جائزة بطريقة رسمية)
to officially give money or a prize to someone
- She was awarded a million dollars to make up for the damages.
- The Cinema Festival awarded the actor an Oscar for his performance.

4

degree — ١- درجة (زاوية/حرارة/مستوى) ٢- شهادة جامعية
- It was very cold yesterday. It was about 10 degrees.
- All the students have different degrees of ability.
- Applicants must have a degree in engineering.

certificate — ١- وثيقة/شهادة (ميلاد/خبرة/ضمان) ٢- وثيقة/شهادة(دراسية كالثانوية)
- In order to get a passport, you'll need your birth certificate.
- Students who complete the program receive a skill certificate.
- I got the General Secondary Education Certificate in 2005.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Reading Texts

- Hope to see you there!

لاحظ أن الجملة بدون فاعل، وهذا مقبول فى لغة الرسائل غير الرسمية.

- Please, use the attached R.S.V.P .....

- تستخدم الاختصارات R.S.V.P وهى مأخوذة من الفرنسية بمعنى طلب الرد على الدعوة وأصلها:

- Répondez s'il vous plait. = Please respond.

- Then, in 2014, she became the first ever Egyptian to sing at the famous opera house in Milan, Italy.

لاحظ استخدام كلمة (ever) مع الجملة المثبتة بمعنى التأكيد على أنه لم يسبقها أحد فى ذلك.

- Let me know by this evening if you can make it.

لاحظ استخدام كلمة (by) قبل الزمن بمعنى (بحلول).

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most people believe that an increase in crime ..... a decline in moral standards.
   - a) activates
   - b) acts
   - c) refers
   - d) indicates
2. The Nobel Prize was ..... to Naguib Mahfouz in 1988. He was the first Arab writer to get it.
   - a) got
   - b) donated
   - c) awarded
   - d) volunteered
3. Some tests were designed to ..... COVID-19 quickly at airports.
   - a) note
   - b) detect
   - c) spot
   - d) notice
4. As a sign of respect, the accident victims were not ..... to by name.
   - a) referred
   - b) indicated
   - c) cured
   - d) remembered
5. According to his death ....., my uncle died aged 44.
   - a) degree
   - b) qualification
   - c) certificate
   - d) licence

Answers 1) d) 2) c) 3) b) 4) a) 5) c)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. Thanks to the ..... of female athletes, many women are encouraged to do sports.
   a) failures b) obstacles c) achievements d) hindrance
2. The player's performance won him the man of the match ..... .
   a) award b) reward c) medal d) present
3. The ..... living conditions of our modern age put us under pressure.
   a) simple b) puzzled c) weak d) complicated
4. The Nobel Prize winners will receive their awards at a special ..... in Sweden.
   a) fair b) ceremony c) funeral d) exhibition
5. A good teacher always tries to give each student positive ..... on their tasks.
   a) feedback b) denial c) punishment d) perfection
6. The concert of Mohamed Munir was ..... in order to raise money for charity.
   a) canceled b) noticed c) organised d) damaged
7. I was nervous as it was my first time I gave a ..... in front of a large crowd.
   a) speck b) presentation c) design d) podcast
8. Talking openly with your team helps you to build ..... with everyone.
   a) doubt b) suspicion c) frost d) trust
9. My friend and I are going to enter an athletics ..... . We both hope to win something.
   a) debate b) competition c) profession d) quiz
10. My cousin, Omar, has received a master's ..... in conservation management.
    a) effect b) flight c) degree d) licence
11. The oldest person to ..... from the British Open University was a man of 94.
    a) graduate b) enroll c) join d) grade
12. Mr Essam rented a big ..... in a hotel for his son's wedding reception.
    a) space b) office c) pitch d) hall
13. The spokeswoman talked for over an hour without ..... .
    a) attachment b) attack c) pause d) lecture
14. The manager has been unable to ..... his duties at the office well since the accident.
    a) refuse b) perform c) retire d) spread
15. She was a very hard-working student and ..... all her lectures.
    a) attended b) extended c) released d) inspected

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

16 Our boss has declared support for women, but his actions have ..... otherwise.

a) retreated b) relieved c) improved d) indicated

17 The receptionist at the hotel made us fill in forms with our personal ..... before checking in.

a) experiences b) tests c) details d) plans

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18 I sent my cousin an ..... to my first performance as a musician, but he was busy at work.

a) invite b) invitation c) inventive d) inviting

19 My teacher always advises me to ..... notes before writing an essay.

a) give b) devise c) do d) make

20 My favourite team gave a good ..... last season and won the league.

a) perform b) performance c) performed d) performativity

21 We celebrated our son's wedding in a five-star hotel. The antonym of the verb "celebrate" is ".....".

a) rejoice b) discourage c) mourn d) attend

22 The new printer can be connected ..... more than one computer via network.

a) to b) in c) for d) at

23 The concert ..... more interesting with the presence of two famous bands.

a) intended b) surprised c) sounded d) fled

24 I hope this success will inspire you to greater efforts. The synonym of the verb "inspire" is ".....".

a) deny b) encourage c) define d) doubt

25 I have always dreamed ..... visiting England and watch Mohamed Salah play a match.

a) in b) with c) for d) of

26 You shouldn't put your trust in a dishonest man . The antonym of the noun "trust" is ".....".

a) confidence b) doubt c) belief d) gratitude

27 The teacher gave ..... the exam papers and asked the students to be quiet.

a) for b) in c) up d) out

28 The new sales manager will ..... a presentation on the new products.

a) give b) take c) reply d) defy

29 The scientists were excavating the archaeological site ..... the last year.

a) under b) close c) near d) over

30 The brain is like a very powerful, very complicated computer. The synonym of the adjective "complicated" is ".....".

a) content b) simple c) complex d) fragile

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(B) Language

Adjectives and Adverbs

1 Adjectives الصفات

الصفة: هى كلمة تصف الاسم وتأتى قبله، وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v.to be

- He is a tall boy. The boy is tall.

- تأتى الصفة بعد الأفعال الآتية وبعد state verbs:

be, look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.

- She is beautiful.
- The food tastes good.

- الصفات الآتية لا تأتى بعدها أسماء:

afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.

- They are still alive.

- الصفات الآتية يأتى بعدها اسم:

chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.

- I like outdoor activities such as skiing, climbing, and hiking.

- بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

the living الأحياء, the dead الموتى, the sick المرضى, the homeless المتشردون, the hungry الجوعى, the poor الفقراء, the rich الأغنياء, the strong الأقوياء, the unemployed العاطلون, the weak الضعفاء, the disabled المعاقون, etc.

- The old usually walk slowly. (= We refer to old people in general).

- لاحظ عندما يأتى بعد الصفة أى اسم مفرد أو جمع فإنه يشير إلى شخص أو أشخاص معينة وليس الكل بصفة عامة، مثل:

- The old people in the building are annoyed with the landlord.
- The old man asked us for help.

- الصفة لا تجمع، وإذا جاء اسم قبل اسم فالاسم الأول يعتبر صفة ولا يجمع

a bus driver سائق الأتوبيس — bus drivers سائقو الأتوبيسات

Two million pounds كلمة «مليون» هى اسم ولكنها هنا صفة؛ لأن بعدها اسم، لذلك لم تجمع

the book fair معرض الكتاب — book fairs معارض الكتب

a five-day holiday إجازة خمسة أيام — five-day holidays إجازات كل منها خمسة أيام

- الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تصف الأشياء والأشخاص والصفات المنتهية بـ ed تصف المشاعر

- This book is interesting.
- My neighbour is an interesting man.
- As the film was boring, we got bored and wanted to leave the cinema.

- هناك صفات تنتهى بـ ly ويجب حفظها لتجنب التشابه بينها وبين الحال ومنها:

elderly	مسن	lonely	وحيدا/يشعر بالوحدة	ugly	قبيح
fatherly	أبوى	lovely	محبوب	deadly	مميت
friendly	ودود	motherly	كالأم	heavenly	سماوى
lively	مفعم بالحيوية	silly	سخيف	cowardly	جبان
brotherly	أخوى	likely	متوقع/محتمل	sisterly	خاص بالأخت

- Genetically modified food الطعام المعدل وراثيًا

- كما أن الصفة تسبق الاسم فإن الحال يسبق الصفة:

an extremely old man رجل عجوز للغاية

- الصفة تسبق بـ very, so, too, وتأتى قبل enough:

- She looks very impolite today!
- The car they want to buy is too expensive.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Order of Adjectives ترتيب الصفات

	opinion	Fact adjectives							noun
		size	age	shape	colour	origin	material	used for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner	table.

- وفى الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنتين أو ثلاث صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

ex. ... a beautiful white wedding dress

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister is very happy as she has bought a ..... red dress.
   a) beloved b) love c) loving d) lovely
2. To achieve success, we need to find the most ..... way to solve the problem.
   a) effectively b) effect c) effective d) affect
3. You should be very careful. Snowboarding is a/an ..... hobby.
   a) dangerously b) dangerous c) danger d) endanger
4. I bought ..... boots yesterday.
   a) beautiful black riding b) riding beautiful black
   c) riding black beautiful d) beautiful riding black
5. My father gave me a ..... to buy a pen.
   a) five-pound coins b) five-pounds coin
   c) five-pounds coins d) five-pound coin

Answers 1) d 2) c 3) b 4) a 5) d

2 Adverbs الأحوال

الحال يصف:

(Action verb + Adverb) الفعل

- They started the race slowly.
- They played badly.
- The student answered the question correctly.

(Adverb + Adjective) الصفة

- This car is terribly expensive.
- He is an incredibly amazing cook.
- The Nile is extremely long.

(Adverb + Adverb) الحال

- He cooks really amazingly. (very well)
- He runs incredibly quickly.

(Adverb + sentence) جملة كاملة

- Interestingly, he won the first medal.
- Unfortunately, they missed the last train to Cairo.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

A) Adverbs of Manner

ظروف الطريقة

How to form Adverbs from Adjectives صياغة الحال من الصفة

① صفات تحول إلى أحوال بإضافة ly، ولكن الشكل يتغير حسب نهاية الصفة كالآتى:

١- إضافة ly فقط

- bad/badly quick/quickly loud/loudly slow/slowly

٢- إضافة ly للصفات المنتهية بـ l

- beautiful/beautifully careful/carefully real/really

٣- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ e نضيف ly

- extreme/extremely nice/nicely brave/bravely safe/safely

٤- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ y تقلب إلى ily

- happy/happily heavy/heavily hungry/hungrily

٥- إذا انتهت بـ (le) فنحذف e ونضع (y)

- terrible/terribly horrible/horribly probable/probably

٦- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (ic) نضيف (ally)

- fantastic/fantastically automatic/automatically

لاحـــظ هناك بعض الاستثناءات:

بعض الصفات لا يضاف لها ly عند استخدامها حالًا.

good (adjective) – well (adverb)

- He is good at football. (adjective)
- **ex.** He plays football well. (adverb)

لاحـــظ (تستخدم well صفة عند السؤال عن الصحة فقط). I'm well/fine

- 'How are you?' 'Very well, thanks.'
- I don't feel very well.

② صفات لا يتغير شكلها فى الحال:

long/low/fine/high/straight/right/fast/past/last

- Ali is a fast swimmer. (Adj.) - Ali swims fast. (Adv.)
- Amal was our last guest. - She came in last.

١- صفات لا يتغير شكلها فى الحال، ولكن إذا أضيفت ly يكون لها معنى آخر بعيد عن الحال ولا يصف الفعل.

Adjective		Adverb		Adverb	
late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا	lately	مؤخرًا (منذ وقت قريب)
hard	صلب/صعب/شديد	hard	بجد/بشدة	hardly	بالكاد/تقريبًا لا
wrong	خاطئ/مخطئ	wrong	بشكل خاطئ	wrongly	بظلم
near	قريب	near	بالقرب	nearly	تقريبًا

- She hardly ever goes out of the house. (She almost never goes out of the house).
- You wrongly accused him. = (Unfairly بظلم) not incorrectly

٢- صفات تنتهى بـ ly ولا تتغير عند التحويل إلى حال، ومنها:

hourly	daily	weekly	monthly	yearly	early

- My father is reading his daily newspaper. (Adj.)
- My father reads the newspaper daily. (Adv.)

٣- الصفات التى تنتهى بـ ly يكون تحويلها إلى حال كالآتى:

in a/an + adj-ly + way/manner

- She was lovely.
- He is a friendly man.

- She welcomed us in a lovely way/manner.
- He behaves in a friendly way.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The meeting was very ..... organised.
   a) bad b) worse c) worst d) badly
2. We didn't go out because it was raining ..... .
   a) heavy b) heaviest c) heavily d) heavier
3. He looked at me ..... when I interrupted him.
   a) angrily b) angry c) anger d) angered
4. Alaa is a friend to our family and he treats us ..... .
   a) friendly b) in a friendly way c) friend d) friendship
5. The witness ..... recounted everything that had happened during the robbery.
   a) accurately b) accurate c) accurateness d) accuracy

Answers: 1) d 2) c 3) a 4) b 5) a

B Adverbs of degree ظروف الدرجة

هى الظروف التى تبين درجة الصفة والظروف الأخرى.

very جدًا	extremely للغاية	quite تمامًا	fairly/slightly إلى حد ما

- I feel slightly better today.
- I was quite angry with her.
- It had been a long day and he was very tired.
- I always walk very quickly.
- It is extremely important to record everything that happens.

نستخدم الأحوال الآتية قبل الصفات الشديدة ونستخدم very قبل الصفات العادية.

(terribly – absolutely – awfully – really – completely – totally – awfully – pretty – entirely – incredibly)

- Mr. Ahmed is a very good teacher. - Mr. Ahmed is an absolutely amazing teacher.

ومن أمثلة الصفات العادية والشديدة ما يلى:

Ordinary	Extreme	Ordinary	Extreme
big	enormous/huge	tired	exhausted منهك
bad	awful/terrible فظيع	frightened	terrified هلع
angry	furious حانق	happy	delighted مُغتَبِط
surprised مندهش	amazed مذهول	cold	freezing متجمد
clean	spotless نظيف جدًا	good	wonderful, excellent ممتاز
crowded مزدحم	packed مكتظ	hot	boiling مُغْتاظ/حانِق
hungry	starving يموت جوعًا	old	ancient عتيق
interesting	fascinating خلّاب	small	tiny دقيق
clever	brilliant بارع	pretty جذّاب	gorgeous رائع

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Extra Points

تنقسم الأحوال التى تصف الفعل إلى:

١ الطريقة (manner) تجيب عن السؤال بـ How

٢ المكان (place) تجيب عن السؤال بـ Where

٣ الزمن (time) تجيب عن السؤال بـ When

٤ التكرار (frequency) تجيب عن السؤال بـ How often

- They are eagerly بشوق/بلهفة waiting for the email.
- There is a cinema nearby بالقُربِ .
- I'll meet you tomorrow.
- She is always ready to help.
- He often complains about the salary.

لاحظ

عندما يأتى اثنان أو أكثر من الأحوال يكون الترتيب كالآتى:

(manner + place + time)

- Ali is studying quietly in his room now.

لو كان فى الجملة فعل من أفعال الحركة مثل go/come/leave يكون الترتيب كالآتى:

(place + manner + time)

- He came to work by bus this morning.

Check Point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He worked ..... hard throughout his career.
   a) very b) terribly
   c) completely d) totally
2. Sara thought that the film was ..... interesting.
   a) terribly b) extreme
   c) extremely d) absolute
3. My friend is the captain of a hockey team. He is ..... brilliant at hockey.
   a) an absolute b) absolutely
   c) very d) absolute
4. Your decision is ..... easy, isn't it?
   a) terribly b) seriously
   c) absolutely d) quite
5. In 2015, Messi was ..... famous and had scored most of the goals for his team.
   a) incredibly b) a little
   c) rather d) a bit

Answers 1) a 2) c 3) b 4) d 5) a

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There was a/an ..... change in the weather; people are advised to stay at home.
a) suddenly b) sudden c) terribly d) normal

2 Kamal isn't a rash driver. He always drives ..... .
a) careful b) care c) a careful way d) carefully

3 I haven't eaten for 5 hours, so I'm getting quite ..... .
a) hungrily b) hungriest c) hungry d) hunger

4 As Ali loves nature, he paints forests and trees ..... .
a) well b) better c) good d) best

5 My daughter is ..... in English and wants to work as an interpreter.
a) the best fluent b) fluent c) fluently d) more fluent

6 Everyone admires Osama as he always works ..... .
a) hardness b) hardly c) hard d) harden

7 He gave her a beautiful ..... ring. She doesn't like things made of silver.
a) goldy b) goldenly c) golden d) gold

8 She looked ..... at the children when she met them.
a) happy b) happily c) happiness d) happiest

9 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off ..... .
a) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically

10 As there was much time, we walked ..... to school.
a) slowly b) a slowing c) in a slowly way d) slowing

11 After the first exam, which was easy, all students looked ..... and were ready for the next.
a) happiest b) happily c) happy d) happiness

12 They performed the experiment ..... in order to get the best results.
a) scientific b) scientifically c) science d) scientifical

13 The cost of living has risen ..... these days.
a) dramatic b) dramatically c) dramatical d) drama

14 Although he arrived an hour ....., he started work immediately.
a) late b) lately c) latent d) latest

15 The young woman spoke to us ..... .
a) mother b) motherly c) in a motherly way d) motherhood

16 The child waited ..... for his mother to arrive, so she gave him a chocolate cake.
a) more patient b) patience c) patient d) patiently

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

17 You don't have to answer so ..... if I ask you a simple question.
a) sharp b) sharply c) sharpness d) sharpen

18 Hossam was ..... with the waiter who was very slow.
a) anger b) angrily c) angry d) in an angrily way

19 Ahmed is polite, but he was surprisingly ..... to Yasser last night.
a) ruder b) rudeness c) rudely d) rude

20 Amgad's teachers aren't pleased with him as he always gives ..... answers.
a) wrongs b) wrongful c) wrong d) wrongly

21 I don't know why she behaves so ..... sometimes.
a) bad b) badly c) worse d) worst

22 Some mushrooms are edible while others, which look almost identical, contain ..... poisons.
a) deadly b) dead c) death d) deadness

23 He was wrong when he took it ..... and returned to work before recuperation.
a) easier b) easily c) easy d) easiest

24 As he was found ..... the dead man, he was accused of killing him.
a) nearly b) near c) nearby d) nearest

25 Ali has got the permanent job as he speaks ..... English.
a) in a fluently way b) more fluent c) fluently d) fluent

26 ....., Omar joined the basketball team despite being short.
a) Interestingly b) Interesting c) Interest d) Interested

27 They carried out a ..... attack on a defenseless man.
a) cowardliness b) coward c) cowardly d) a cowardly way

28 That ..... temple was constructed by the pharaohs.
a) fifty-centuries-old b) fifty-century's-old
c) fifty-century-olds d) fifty-century-old

29 Fast-food restaurants are popular because many people want ..... .
a) to eat quickly and cheaply
b) eating quickly and cheaply
c) eating quickly and cheap
d) quick and cheaply eating

30 Everybody congratulated him for the ..... party.
a) well-organized extremely
b) extremely well-organised
c) well-extremely organised
d) extreme well-organised

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(C) Writing

Invitation Writing

كتابة دعوة

1. One invitation is from you to a friend you want to invite to your birthday party next Saturday.

Hi Ahmed,

I'm having my birthday party next Saturday. It will be at my house starting at 8 p.m. I invited all our friends who are going to be there. I hope you come earlier than 8 p.m. as I may need your help before the party starts. The programme of the party is all set by my father. I'm sure you will enjoy it much.

Let me know by tomorrow evening if you can come. Hope to see you there!

Bye

Hassan

2. One invitation is from the head teacher of your school to all the students. The head teacher wants to invite all students to an event to celebrate the opening of a new school library.

Dear Students,

We are glad to invite you all to the ceremony for the opening of the new school library. The evening will begin at 6 p.m. with a speech from the principal of our school about the new library and how it was built. The guests will be taken on a tour by the librarian through the sections of the library. We need some students to help us receive the guest and entertain them.

We are sure that this will be a very enjoyable evening where we can meet all with some guests from the ministry. After the ceremony, there will be a party where you can all have a good time with your friends.

Please use the attached R.S.V.P form to whether or not you can attend and send it to Mr. Kareem Walid, the school secretary by tomorrow.

Yours sincerely,

Mohamed Emad,

Head teacher

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Thanks to Giana Farouk, Hedaya Malak and Ferial Ashraf's ....., many young women were encouraged to do sports.
a) devices b) achievements c) resentments d) appliances

2 Mohamed Salah won the ..... for the best player in England in 2018.
a) present b) trophy c) award d) souvenir

3 Nearly all cultures ..... a good harvest because it means they'll have food for the next year.
a) remind b) celebrate c) commemorate d) separate

4 The issue of human ..... receives great attention from different international organisations.
a) rights b) votes c) duties d) allowances

5 The writer's speech at the ceremony was full of ..... phrases such as metaphor and irony.
a) inventive b) fixed c) social d) rhetorical

6 A/An ..... aid is a picture or video used in teaching to help people to learn or understand something.
a) tactile b) auditory c) intended d) visual

7 The manager gave ..... reports to the employees about their work progress.
a) in b) for c) out d) up

8 Teachers must keep a record of students' ..... throughout the school year.
a) attend b) attendance c) attended d) attentive

9 You look very ..... . What's the matter?
a) unhappily b) happily c) angrily d) unhappy

10 They play the guitar ..... .
a) a lot beautiful b) beautiful c) beautifully d) very beautiful

11 The divorce rate has gone up ..... in many countries.
a) dramatically b) dramatic c) dramatics d) to be dramatic

12 **A:** What do you think of the result of the exam?
B: Oh, I find it really ..... . He couldn't get high marks.
a) depress b) depressing c) be depressed d) depressed

13 I'm going to ..... next term, because the exams are getting closer.
a) studying hard b) study hardly c) hardly study d) study hard

14 Fleming discovered penicillin ..... .
a) accident b) on accident c) accidentally d) accidental

15 The weather changed ..... . There was an ..... change in the weather.
a) expectancy/unexpected b) unexpectedly/unexpected
c) unexpectedly/expectation d) unexpected/unexpectedly

16 Her condition improved ..... . There was ..... improvement in her condition.
a) steadily/steady b) steady/steadiness
c) steadiness/steady d) steady/steadily

17 Which sentence uses commas correctly?
a) You may have, hot chocolate, hot tea, or coffee to drink.
b) You may have hot chocolate, hot tea, or coffee to drink.
c) You may have hot chocolate; hot tea; or coffee to drink.
d) You may have hot chocolate or hot tea or coffee, to drink.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 What is an essay?

a) A series of paragraphs about one main idea, or point.
b) The final stage in the writing process.
c) An excellent way to get a lot of information down on paper.
d) The sentence that expresses the main point, or idea, of a paragraph.

19 Which of the following sentences would make a good topic sentence for this paragraph?
You run up and down the court. You have to be able to chase down the ball. Sometimes you play for five or six minutes straight without a time out.

a) Exercise is hard.
b) Zamalek is my favourite basketball team.
c) I played basketball last Thanksgiving.
d) Basketball is an athletic sport.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Life without an aim is useless, aimless and pointless. It should be spent on a purpose, with a certain aim. Otherwise, there will be no difference between the life of man and that of animals. Life in olden times was simple. Man had to hunt for food, nothing more. But, now is a different time. We have new challenges to meet. We have new problems to solve. So, one should be ready for all these things. One can face life and its problems with a plan. Without a plan, life would be difficult to lead. I want to become a teacher. The question is why so. There are many other professions. One can be a doctor, earning a lot of pounds daily. One can be an engineer, getting thousands of pounds as salary. One can be a shop-keeper earning lots of profits. One can also be a trader, selling things and earning lots of profits. Why then a teacher? I want to become a teacher because I love this profession. Not only that I love it, but also for its greatness. I know teachers in our country who are low-paid. I also know that people don't think this profession is a great one. They think that teachers are merely teachers, with no high status in life. I admit, teachers are not given proper value in our society. But, all the same, I like this profession. I think teaching is the highest job to do. It is because teachers bring the light of knowledge to the lives of the people. They take them out of ignorance. They teach them good values. This is what I think, I believe. In my opinion, a poor literate man is better than an illiterate rich man. So, that is why I want to be a teacher. This is my aim in life.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 The most useful thing in life is ..... .

a) to have much money to spend
b) to be a low-paid teacher
c) to have a goal to achieve
d) to be free and do nothing

21 Life in the past was ..... than today.

a) more complicated
b) simpler
c) with problems
d) more difficult

22 The writer wants to be a teacher ..... .

a) to have a low-paid salary
b) to have a good aim in life
c) to teach poor literate people
d) to teach people good values

23 The thing that makes life easy to lead is ..... .

a) having a plan
b) teaching people
c) being a shop-keeper earning lots of profits
d) being a doctor, earning a lot of pounds daily

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

24 What should societies do for teachers?
a) They should give teachers proper status.
b) They should give teachers proper salaries.
c) They should change their opinion concerning the profession.
d) All of these.

25 It's ..... to have life without teachers.
a) easy b) comfortable c) impossible d) possible

26 The best title to the passage is ..... .
a) Being a teacher is the only and best aim
b) The importance of having an aim in life
c) It's great to be a doctor or a shop-keeper
d) The problems of today's world

27 The word "ignorance" gives the same meaning as ..... .
a) lack of knowledge b) knowledge c) awareness d) experience

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 Online and distance learning is becoming more and more important. Most countries have resorted to it in the novel Coronavirus crisis so that students could complete their education at home.

a) يصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت والتعلم البعيد أكثر وأكثر أهمية. ولقد لجأت معظم البلدان إلى ذلك فى أزمة قصة فيروس كورونا، لذلك يتمكن الطلاب من إكمال تعليمهم فى منازلهم.

b) يصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت والتعلم عن بعد أكثر وأكثر أهمية. ولجأت معظم البلدان إلى ذلك فى أزمة فيروس كورونا المستجد لكى يتمكن الطلاب من إكمال تعليمهم فى منازلهم.

c) يصبح التعلم عن بعد عبر الإنترنت أكثر أهمية. ولقد لجأت معظم البلدان إلى ذلك فى أزمة فيروس كورونا، لذلك يمكن أن يتمكن الطلاب من إكمال تعليمهم فى منازلهم.

d) يصبح التعلم عبر الإنترنت والتعلم عن بعد أكثر أهمية. ولجأت معظم البلدان إلى ذلك فى أزمة فيروس كورونا المستجد، ولذلك يمكن أن يتمكن الطلاب من إكمال تعليمهم فى منازلهم.

29 الحياة المدرسية مهمة جدًا فى حياة المرء، لأنها توفر فرصة للدراسة والانضباط. يتعلم الطالب أيضًا كيفية التكيف على الحياة مع أشخاص من بيئات مختلفة.

a) School life is very important in a person's life, as it provides an opportunity for study and discipline. A student is also learned how to adapt to live with people from different environments.
b) School life is very important in one's life, as it provides an opportunity for study and discipline. A student is learned how to adapt to living with people from different environments.
c) School life is very important in one's life, as it provides an opportunity for study and discipline. A student also learns how to adapt to living with people from different environments.
d) School life is very important in one's life, as it shows an opportunity for study and discipline. A student also learns how to adapt to live with people from different environments.

30 لقد قرر والدى أن يحجز تذكرتى قطار إلى أسوان ويأخذ أخى الصغير معه.

a) My father decided to book two train tickets and take my younger brother with him.
b) My father decided to book two tickets train and take my younger brother with him.
c) My father has decided to book two train tickets and taken my younger brother with him.
d) My father has decided to book two train tickets and take my younger brother with him.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Great Expectations
Exercises Chapter (7)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She ..... her grandchildren and is always buying them presents.

a) fears b) humiliates c) hates d) adores

2 I feel really ..... about forgetting her birthday again.

a) proud b) pleased c) guilty d) happy

3 It'll ..... your father's heart if you tell him you're giving up college.

a) recover b) break c) cure d) repair

4 You don't have to ....., no one can hear us.

a) whisper b) shout c) say d) tell

5 Maybe he's ..... because I got the job but he didn't.

a) jealous b) asleep c) proud d) afraid

6 He was a tall, ... man, silver-haired and beautifully dressed.

a) unfashionable b) elegant c) dated d) old-fashioned

7 It was a ..... room with one small window.

a) bright b) cheerful c) gloomy d) sunny

8 I want to think about it a bit longer before I ..... a decision.

a) pay b) bring c) do d) make

9 Her son ..... me of myself when I was his age.

a) appears b) likes c) remembers d) reminds

10 It has become clear that the internet ..... children's behaviour.

a) threatens b) rises c) influences d) weights

11 I thought it was very ..... of her not to answer my question.

a) correct b) rude c) polite d) civil

12 I'll ..... early to avoid the traffic jams because of the bad weather.

a) set off b) turn over c) put out d) come across

13 The house is not really ..... for a large family.

a) suitable b) small c) inappropriate d) corrupt

14 He left as a poor, working-class boy and returned as a/an ..... man.

a) insignificant b) wealthy c) trivial d) unimportant

15 He neither came to my party ..... sent an excuse.

a) and b) or c) nor d) than

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 At her husband's funeral, the poor woman was ..... with grief and couldn't speak.
a) challenged b) gained c) won d) overcome

2 We all hope that our book will be of ..... to both teachers and students.
a) value b) price c) cost d) rent

3 On her last birthday, we ..... our mother to dinner at a famous restaurant.
a) respected b) cured c) treated d) inspected

4 To protect the historic site, the authorities limited the number of ..... which carry tourists there.
a) trainers b) coaches c) planes d) guides

5 The farmers complain that the new factories can change the ..... of the area around them.
a) character b) hero c) route d) direction

6 This heat sensor works well according to accurate ..... of the temperature.
a) aspect b) decision c) patience d) determination

7 We were sad to sell grandfather's country house as we've grown very ..... to it.
a) attacked b) attached c) related d) contacted

8 Without ....., the woman slammed the door shut in my face.
a) festival b) celebration c) ceremony d) funeral

9 The storm became stronger by ..... until the rain was pouring down.
a) grades b) time c) degrees d) classes

10 My nephew has ..... from baby food to solid food.
a) graduated b) degraded c) devalued d) progressed

11 The guards won't let anyone ..... the building.
a) leaving b) to leave c) left d) leave

12 She wrote her phone number down ..... forget it.
a) in case b) so that c) so as not to d) for not

13 ..... strong your determination and will is!
a) What b) How c) What a d) Such a

14 Your money ..... safer in the bank than at home.
a) is b) were c) are d) be

15 Although he is my neighbour, I ..... know him.
a) nearly b) always c) hardly d) usually

16 It was ..... heavy luggage that we couldn't carry it.
a) so b) such a c) much d) such

17 ..... is the faster of the two; a cheetah or a tiger?
a) Who b) Which c) Where d) What

18 I'm sorry; but I haven't got ..... advice to give you.
a) an b) some c) any d) no

19 Tarek and Alaa played well in the final match because ..... of them had practised a lot.
a) both b) neither c) all d) either

20 I've got several pens– you can use one of ..... .
a) my b) me c) myself d) mine

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 1

Based on Unit 7

لترجمة الكلمات الصعبة يرجى الرجوع إلى القاموس فى نهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On 6th October, our army was able to ..... the enemy and restore the land.
   a) overcome b) award c) reply d) overuse
2. My best friend's mother ..... me like a member of their family.
   a) cures b) treats c) defies d) dislikes
3. After 10 years at work, Salma got a higher salary and a more ..... position at the company.
   a) affecting b) preferable c) available d) responsible
4. We visited many places of ..... on our vacation in Luxor and Aswan.
   a) plight b) joy c) interest d) sorrow
5. During his long ..... in football, Ahmed Hassan won numerous awards and honours.
   a) job b) career c) work d) hobby
6. The police say that there is nothing to ..... that the two crimes are connected.
   a) indicate b) refer c) deny d) point
7. The previous president was buried with great official ..... last year.
   a) festival b) feast c) ceremony d) memorandum
8. I watched a movie celebrating the life and work of Nelson Mandela. The synonym of the word "celebrate" is ".....".
   a) mourn b) doubt c) assure d) commemorate
9. She can't do the housework. She ..... her arm.
   a) breaks b) broken
   c) has recently broken d) is always breaking
10. My uncle lives in a marvelous house. I ..... it, but I have always dreamt about it.
    a) have never seen b) have never been seen
    c) never saw d) have never been seeing
11. He ..... English for three years.
    a) learns b) learn
    c) is learning d) has been learning
12. **A:** Why are you late? **B:** Sorry. I ..... for my glasses.
    a) have looked b) have been looking c) looked d) had looked
13. I agree. I get terribly ..... when people talk about politics.
    a) depression b) depressing c) be depressed d) depressed
14. I find people who spit in the street ..... .
    a) offender b) offensive c) offensively d) offence
15. They were ..... delighted with the service in this hotel.
    a) very b) a bit c) absolutely d) extreme
16. At the end of the school year, some students try ..... to make up for the lost time.
    a) hard b) hardly c) hardness d) harden
17. What are supporting sentences in a paragraph?
    a) True and false sentences. b) Sentences about the conclusion.
    c) Short sentences. d) Details about the topic sentences.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 The following can help a paragraph flow and become more high level.
a) Slang words
b) Improperly used transition words and phrases
c) Inventive and informal spelling
d) Properly used transition words and phrases

19 What is missing from the following sentence?
The day which happens to be Tuesday is hot and windy.
a) An exclamation mark
b) A semi-colon
c) Commas: one after "happens" and one after "hot"
d) Commas: one after "day" and one after "Tuesday"

20 Choose the correctly punctuated sentence.
a) Samy asks "If the bell rings, why should we run?"
b) Samy asks, "If the bell rings, why should we run?"
c) Samy asks; "If the bell rings, why should we run?"
d) Samy asks: "If the bell rings, why should we run?"

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Helen Keller was born in Alabama in 1880. When she was 19 months old, after a severe fever, Helen became very sick. After she got well, her parents discovered that she could no longer see or hear. She was so young when she became sick that she had not yet learned to talk. Because she could not hear or see, Helen did not learn to speak until she was an adult. Her parents learned about the new ways to teach students with a disability. In 1887 when Helen was 7, her parents contacted the Perkins School for the Blind in Boston, Massachusetts. The school asked a former student, Anne Sullivan, to go to Alabama to teach Helen. Anne Sullivan taught Helen sign language, a way to spell out letters using hand signs. Helen became very good at sign language and went on to be an excellent student. She graduated from Radcliffe College in 1900, the first deaf and blind person to earn an arts degree at Radcliffe. Helen became a world-famous author and speaker. She wrote 12 books and many articles. She travelled to 40 countries, often raising money for the blind. She helped start Helen Keller International, an organisation that researches the issues of vision and health. Helen also promoted many charities, including the American Foundation for the Blind. She met many presidents, authors and celebrities. In 1964 President Lyndon Johnson awarded her the Presidential Medal of Freedom. Helen Keller died in 1968. She is still honored for her perseverance, her generosity, and her ability to touch people's lives.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Helen Keller was ..... .
a) only deaf
b) dumb and blind
c) deaf and dumb
d) deaf and blind

22 Her teacher Anne Sullivan taught her to ..... .
a) dance
b) read and write
c) read
d) write

23 The word 'author' means the same as ..... .
a) writer of books
b) one who has authority
c) one who is deaf and blind
d) one who is famous

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

24 Which of the following is the reason Helen Keller became deaf and blind?
a) She fell from a wagon when she was 2 years old.
b) She was born deaf and became blind from an accident.
c) She had a high fever when she was 19 months old.
d) She fell down a flight of stairs at her house when she was 3 years old.

25 Which of the following is the state where Helen Keller was born?
a) Maryland
b) Alabama
c) Massachusetts
d) New York

26 In which of the following cities was the Perkins School for the Blind located?
a) Atlanta
b) New York
c) Chicago
d) Boston

27 Which of the following famous inventors helped Helen Keller?
a) Alexander Graham Bell
b) Thomas Edison
c) Benjamin Franklin
d) Samuel Morse

28 People still remember Hellen for her ..... .
a) books
b) perseverance
c) riches
d) blindness

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Smiles are good for your health. Studies have shown that when you smile your heart rate slows down, your blood pressure goes down and the body begins to relax. This happens whether you are feeling happy or not. In fact, if you are feeling unhappy, the simple act of smiling is the first step of feeling better.

A smile makes you attractive. According to some dentists, an attractive smile should show most of the upper teeth, at least two thirds of the length, just the tips of the lower teeth.

When you smile a real smile, two things happen to your face: your lips move towards your cheeks, and your cheeks themselves go up and gather in the skin around the eyes. And a real smile will usually only last for up to four seconds. False smiles are seen on the faces of politicians who have just lost an election, people who fake they're happy to see you, and door to door salesmen. False smiles usually appear slightly too early or too late, and they tend to go on for too long.

But if you really want to know if a smile is real or false, look at the eyes. They brighten up. In a false smile they don't change — however much the person has practiced smiling.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 What is the characteristic of a real smile?
a) A real smile is longer than a false one.
b) A real smile is shorter than a false one.
c) A real smile makes the person ugly.
d) A real smile causes a lot of trouble.

30 What should you do if you are feeling unhappy?
a) Try the simple act of smiling.
b) Try to join other unhappy persons.
c) Try to make others unhappy too.
d) Try to stay alone until you become happy again.

31 To judge a real smile, we should look at the ..... .
a) hair
b) teeth
c) cheeks
d) eyes

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

32 What does the author wish to convey in the last paragraph?
a) The author wants to warn us against the false smile.
b) The author wants us to show real smiles.
c) The author wants to show how one can spot a real smile.
d) The author wants to show how one can avoid a false smile.

33 A smile slows down your ..... .
a) movement
b) sleep hours
c) heart rate and blood pressure
d) food digestion

34 The passage mentioned two types of people who usually put on a false smile. They are ..... .
a) Teachers and doctors
b) Politicians and salesmen
c) Presidents and farmers
d) Athletes and actors

35 The word from the passage which is the antonym of repulsive is "..... ".
a) false
b) brighten
c) simple
d) attractive

36 The best title to the passage is ..... .
a) The effect of the smile
b) Dentists and the smile
c) People with false smiles
d) Signs of real smiles

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

37 Not only is tourism threatened by terrorism but also by the lack of awareness of population and the wrong policies.

a) لا تتأثر السياحة فقط بالسائحين، ولكن أيضًا بزيادة التلوث وعدم معاقبة البوليس للمخطئين.
b) لا تتأثر السياحة فقط بالإرهاب، بل أيضًا بنقص الوعى وزيادة التلوث والشرطة المخطئة.
c) لا تتأثر السياحة فقط بالإرهاب بل أيضًا بنقص الوعى لدى السكان والسياسات الخاطئة.
d) لا تتأثر السياحة فقط بالإرهاب بل أيضًا بزيادة التلوث والسياسات الخاطئة.

38 If you have the right to do what you like, don't be negative towards others. You ought to respect the person you are dealing with. Let everyone express their opinions freely.

a) إذا كان لديك الحق فى أن تفعل ما تريد، فلا تكن سلبيًا تجاه الآخرين. يجب أن تحترم الشخص الذى تتعامل معه. دع الجميع يعبرون عن آرائهم بحرية.
b) لو أنك محق فيما تفعل فلا تنفى وتعارض ما يفعله الآخرون. يجب أن تحترم الشخص الذى تتعامل معه. دع الجميع يعبرون عن آرائهم بحرية.
c) لو أنك محق فيما تفعل فلا تعارض ما يفعله الآخرون. يجب أن تحترم الشخص الذى تتواصل معه. دع كل شخص يعبر عن رأيه بحرية.
d) إذا كان لديك الحق فى أن تفعل ما تريد فلا تنفى وتعارض ما يفعله الآخرون. يجب أن تحترم الشخص الذى تتعامل معه. دع الجميع يعبرون عن آرائهم بحرية.

39 لقد ساهمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى جعل العالم قرية كونية صغيرة، ومكنت جميع الدول من تبادل المنتجات الزراعية والصناعية بسهولة ويسر.
a) Modern technology has contributed to make the world a small global village and enabled all countries to exchange the agricultural and industrial products easily.
b) The modern technology has contributed to make the world a small global village and enabled all countries to exchange the agricultural and industrial products easily.
c) The modern technology has contributed to making the world a small global village and has enabled all countries to exchange the industrial and agricultural products easily.
d) Modern technology has contributed to making the world a small global village and enabled all countries to exchange agricultural and industrial products easily.

40 يحذر الأطباء الناس من التدخين، إذ إنه السبب فى كثير من الأمراض المزمنة.
a) Doctors warn people from smoking, as it is the cause for many chronic diseases.
b) Doctors warn people against smoking, as it is the cause of many chronic diseases.
c) Doctors warn people for smoking, as it is the cause of many chronic diseases.
d) The Doctors warn people against smoking, as it is the cause of many chronic diseases.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Unit 8

Work experience

Objectives

- **Reading** : Student CV; An excerpt from Notes on Nursing: What it is, and What it is not (1859)
- **Writing** : Write a CV and an online professional profile
- **Listening** : A presentation on finding the right work experience
- **Speaking** : Role-play an interview for an internship
- **Language** : Passive forms
- **Life skills** : Self-management and productivity: setting goals and making achievable plans

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

candidate (n)	مرشح	intern (n)	موظف متدرب
colossal (adj)	ضخم/هائل	internship (n)	فترة تدريب
curriculum vitae (cv) (n)	سيرة ذاتية	in charge	مسئول عن
disaster (n)	كارثة/مصيبة	measures (n)	إجراءات
full-time (adj)	بدوام كامل (وظيفة فى وقت كامل)	part-time (adj)	بدوام جزئى (وظيفة فى جزء من الوقت)
human resources (HR) (n)	موارد بشرية		

Vocabulary on Reading

advanced (adj)	متقدم	nursing (n)	التمريض
area (n)	منطقة	orchestra (n)	فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا)
audience (n)	جمهور	organised (adj)	منظم
base (v) (d) (n)	يؤسس/ قاعدة / أساس	participate (v) (d)	يشارك
basically (adv)	بشكل أساسى	pave (v) (d)	يمهد
colleague (n)	زميل عمل	personal statement	بيان شخصى
company (n)	شركة	procedures (n)	إجراءات
create (v) (d)	يبدع/ينتج	proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
customer (n)	عميل	qualification (n)	مؤهل
department (n)	قسم	résumé (n)	سيرة ذاتية/مختصرة/خلاصة
digital (adj)	رقمى	service (n)	خدمة
economics (n)	علم الاقتصاد	specific (adj)	خاص/محدد
education (n)	التعليم	strategy (n)	استراتيجية
excellence (n)	امتياز	training (n)	التدريب
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/تجربة/ يجرب	understanding (n)	فهم/ إدراك
habit (n)	عادة	violin (n)	آلة الكمان
level (n)	مستوى	volunteer (v) (ed) (n)	يتطوع/متطوع
marketing (n)	التسويق		

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Workbook Vocabulary

accept (v) (ed)	يقبل	lack (n) (v) (ed)	عجز-نقص/ينقصه
charity (n)	عمل خيرى/ مؤسسة خيرية	point (n) (v) (ed)	نقطة/يشير
date (n)	تاريخ	position (n)	موقع/مكانة
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	practise (v) (d)	يمارس/يتدرب
improve (v) (d)	يحسن/ يتحسن	professionally (adv)	باحترافية

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

by post	بالبريد	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	lack a skill	لديه نقص فى مهارة
do an internship	يقوم بالتدريب	take part in	يشارك فى
get work experience	يحصل على خبرة العمل	waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
in charge	فى المسئولية	stay in contact	يبقى على اتصال
able to	قادر على	participate in	يشارك فى
base ... on	يؤسس ... على	popular with	مشهور لدى
come up	يظهر/يتضح	strategy for	استراتيجية لـ
hear of	يسمع عن	take on	يتحمل مسئولية/يقبل عمل
interested in	مهتم بـ		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
advance	يتقدم	advance	تقدم	advanced	متقدم
base	يؤسس	basis	أساس	basic	أساسى
		base	قاعدة		
create	يبدع/ينتج	creator	منشئ/مبدع	creative	مبدع
		creation	إبداع		
educate	يعلم	education	تعليم	educational	تعليمى
excel	يتميز	excellence	امتياز	excellent	ممتاز
participate	يشارك	participation	مشاركة	participative	تشاركى
		participant	مشارك		
qualify	يتاهل	qualification	مؤهل	qualified	مؤهل
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteer	متطوع	voluntary	تطوعى
		volunteering	تطوع		

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	Meaning
advanced	متقدم	leading/progressive	primitive	بدائى
basically	بشكل اساسى	fundamentally/mainly	additionally/extra	إضافى
disaster	ازمة/كارثة	tragedy/catastrophe	safety	أمان
			comfort	راحة
colossal	ضخم	enormous/huge	small/tiny	صغير/ضئيل
excellence	امتياز	superiority	inferiority	عدم تميز
measure	إجراء	act/action	idleness/inaction	كسل/تقاعس
participate	يشارك	take part/share	block/hinder	يعوق
proper	مناسب	correct/precise	improper/incorrect	غيرمناسب/غير صحيح
specific	خاص/محدد	definite/particular	indefinite	غير محدد

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It will be a ..... for farmers if the crops fail in this bad weather.
   a) festival b) ceremony c) comfort d) disaster
2. He is the best ..... for the job because he has many years of experience.
   a) employer b) candidate c) voter d) interviewer
3. You should send a full ..... with your job application.
   a) IT b) CV c) BA d) DOB
4. The writer hired a young ..... to help her when she had too much work to handle herself.
   a) intern b) boss c) director d) customer
5. She's looking for a ..... job only to be able to complete her university studies.
   a) full-time b) permanent c) part-time d) total

Answers 1) d 2) b 3) b 4) a 5) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

Emma Day

1. Contact information:

- 25 Oak Lane, Manchester, M1 3AL 07159 135 118
  emma.day@gmail.com
- I am currently looking for an internship[1] in digital marketing[2] in the Manchester area.

2. Personal Statement:

- An organised person, with a good understanding of social media.

3. Education:

- September 2013 – July 2021 Bridgetown High School, Manchester.
- 3 Advanced level qualifications[3] at grade A in Business Studies, Economics[4] and English.
- Awarded the school prize for excellence in Economics in my final year

4. Work experience:

March 2020 – Present Social media assistant, Manchester Evening News (part-time)[5]

- Designing social media posts for news stories.
- Working with colleagues to develop a social media strategy[6] for the newspaper.
- Participating in a project to research social media habits with colleagues from other countries.

January 2019 – December 2019 Waitress, Clive's Café (part-time).

- Worked as part of a team.
- Developed customer service skills.

5. Skills:

- Able to design and build websites.
- Skilled photographer.
- Able to give presentations to large audiences.

6. Interests and hobbies:

- Playing the violin in the school orchestra.
- Volunteer in an old people's home at the weekend.
- Taking photographs and making videos.

(1) فترة تدريب
(2) التسويق
(3) مؤهلات
(4) علم الاقتصاد
(5) بدوام جزئى
(6) استراتيجية

Reading Text (2)

From the most colossal[1] disasters[2], down to the smallest accidents, results are often poor because someone 'in charge[3]' was not 'in charge' or did not know how to be 'in charge'.

To be 'in charge' is certainly not only to carry out the proper measures[4] yourself but to see that everyone else does so too.

Notes on Nursing: What it is, and What it is not (1859) (Florence Nightingale)

(1) هائل
(2) كوارث
(3) مسلول
(4) إجراءات

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (3)

Hello and welcome. Today I'm going to be giving advice about internships. First, I'll talk about what most companies will expect from you. After that, I'll give advice about how best to put yourself in a position where you might be offered a job. My final point will be what to do when your internship finishes.

To start with, remember to always act professionally.

If you hope to get a full-time job at the company where you will be an intern, find out what kinds of skills you will need for the job. If you lack any of these skills, try to improve. For example, if the job wants someone who can give presentations, see if you can practise this by giving talks to your team.

Watch people at the company, too. Who is successful and why? Ask them how they got their jobs and try to learn from them. Don't be afraid to ask questions, and don't be afraid to take on challenges. If something difficult comes up, accept the challenge; employees will like this.

Finally, after your internship has finished, try to stay in contact with important people at the company.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I didn't really ..... to come first in the race and win a gold medal.
   a) expect b) accept c) except d) respect
2. Experts say that a healthy lifestyle can ..... your mental health in general.
   a) prove b) approve c) improve d) disprove
3. When we were in the shop, I asked my little daughter to ..... at the ice cream that she wanted.
   a) point b) paint c) aim d) shoot
4. Put the ball in the right ..... to make it easy to hit.
   a) situation b) mark c) site d) position
5. Most new parents complain about ..... of sleep because of their babies.
   a) leak b) lack c) lake d) leaking

Answers 1) a) 2) c) 3) a) 4) d) 5) b)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

candidate مرشح	a person who is interested in getting a specific job
colossal ضخم/هائل	very large
curriculum vitae (CV) سيرة ذاتية	a summary of a person's education, experience and skills

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

disaster مصيبة/كارثة	big problem or accident
full-time بدوام كامل	a job someone does for the whole of the working week
human resources (HR) موارد بشرية	the department that finds people to work and organises training at a company
intern موظف متدرب	a person who is working at a company for a short time to get work experience
internship فترة تدريب	when someone works for a company for a period of time to get work experience
part-time بدوام جزئى	a job someone only does for some of the working week
measures مقاييس/إجراءات	ways or procedures
in charge مسئول عن	being responsible for

Notes on Vocabulary

1 candidate
مرشح (فى الانتخابات/لوظيفة وتنطبق عليه المواصفات المطلوبة) متقدم لامتحان ما

- One candidate must receive a majority of the vote.

applicant
متقدم)بطلب(للحصول على شىء) وظيفة/جنسية/تأشيرة)

- Ten women were selected from over 30 applicants.

2 apply (for)
يتقدم بطلب (للحصول على وظيفة/ تأشيرة/جنسية/مكان فى الجامعة، ... إلخ)

- We advertised three jobs, and over 50 people applied.
- How many jobs had you applied for before you were offered this one?

apply in person
يتقدم بالطلب شخصيًا

- You should apply immediately, in person or by letter.

apply to + inf.
يتقدم بطلب لكى

- Hesham is applying to join the Armed Forces.

apply to + noun
ينطبق على

- Do the same rules apply to part-time workers?

apply to + noun
يتقدم بطلب إلى

- You have to apply to the passport office for a visa.

apply ينفذ/يستعمل/يدهن

- Apply the cream in the morning and the evening.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

3 **habit**

عادة (شىء يفعله شخص ما بشكل منتظم)

- Smoking is a bad habit which many men usually do when they are teenagers.

mannerism

لازمة (طريقة تحدث أو حركة وجه خاصة بشخص ما)

- When they speak, Leila and her twin have the same mannerism.

custom

عادة مجتمعية (شىء يفعله الناس فى مجتمع لأنه تقليدى)

- In most societies, it is the custom for a bride to be married in white.

practice

ممارسة/طقس (شىء يفعله الناس كجزء من عملهم أو كجزء من اعتقاد دينى)

- The hotel has ended the practice of leaving chocolates in guests' rooms.

4 **base (n)**

١- قاعدة / أساس) الجزء الأسفل الذى يحمل فوقه باقى الشىء

- The sculptor's name can be found at the base of the statue.

٢- قاعدة (لشركة/ عسكرية)

- After the attack, the aircrafts returned to base.

٣- فكرة أساسية لشىء

- She used her family's history as a base for her novel.

basis (n)

أساس/قاعدة (الأفكار والحقائق الهامة التى منها يمكن للشىء أن يتطور)

- The scientist's work forms the basis of all modern physiology.

basic (adj)

(أساسى/جوهرى) أهم جزء فى الشىء الذى بدونه لا يمكن لهذا الشىء أن يوجد.

- Rice is the basic ingredient of this dish.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Around 20% of the ..... in the elections are women.

a) applicants b) candidates c) writers d) viewers

2 My brother suggested applying ..... a bank loan to buy a car.

a) in b) at c) about d) for

3 Everyone knows it is good business ..... to listen to your customers.

a) exercise b) custom c) practice d) mannerism

4 The Memorial نصب تذكارى is built on a hard ..... made of concrete.

a) base b) basic c) basis d) bases

Answers 1) b 2) d 3) c 4) a

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The company received over 100 ..... from interested applicants.

a) DVDs b) ITs c) CVs d) TVs

2 Mr. Fouad is a friendly and straightforward man who is respected by all his ..... at work.

a) investors b) participants c) students d) colleagues

3 It is hard to combine study in a good college with a ..... job.

a) time out b) time c) timed d) full-time

4 If you had a ..... plan, you wouldn't waste your time like that.

a) proper b) proof c) fool d) minor

5 I phoned the airline's customer ..... and they said the seats were available.

a) project b) service c) capital d) branch

6 My father works in the sales ..... of a small software company.

a) station b) bookshop c) department d) apartment

7 The ..... Ramses II statue was moved to the New Grand Egyptian Museum.

a) tiny b) colossal c) closed d) modern

8 While at college, Wafaa got an ..... at the city newspaper to get experience.

a) internship b) entrance c) advantage d) identity

9 Nabawiya Musa's success in education ..... the way for Egyptian women to complete their education.

a) depicted b) replaced c) paved d) spoiled

10 You must meet the human..... director before being employed in a company.

a) sources b) resources c) standards d) levels

11 ..... is the study of how a society organises its money, trade and industry.

a) Economics b) Physics c) Anthropology d) Ecology

12 Online ..... has broken down barriers between cities and countries. You can buy goods from any country now.

a) blog b) phishing c) marketing d) theft

13 I think you must reconsider this decision. You've ..... your opinion on faulty information.

a) released b) thought c) depended d) based

14 If you have a ..... in computer skills, you won't have a good job nowadays.

a) lack b) leak c) lock d) lick

15 The official apologised for the client as he doesn't have time to take ..... any new job right now.

a) off b) on c) in d) down

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

16 As a young man, Mr Wael had worked as a/an ..... for the Red Crescent, helping injured people.

a) professor b) officer c) volunteer d) innovator

17 To get better at any sport, you have to ..... hard and follow the trainers' instructions.

a) respect b) accept c) achieve d) practise

18 You're putting me in rather a difficult ..... by your bad behaviour.

a) profession b) procession c) position d) possession

19 The Americans established a naval ..... on the island of Haiti in the 1960s.

a) base b) basis c) basic d) basics

20 I couldn't ..... in contact with many of my secondary school friends because I joined a university in America.

a) expect b) return c) stay d) break

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 The money was collected for a specific purpose. The word " specific" is similar in meaning to the word ..... .

a) general b) definite c) common d) spread

22 New software such as Photoshop makes it easy to ..... colourful graphs.

a) create b) creation c) creative d) created

23 Our school always encourages students to ..... activities inside and outside school.

a) make b) defy c) do d) challenge

24 My father complains that my brother never participates ..... sports competition in his school.

a) by b) for c) on d) in

25 Our school is known for the ..... of its teachers.

a) excel b) excellence c) excellent d) expanded

26 Mariam is taking an advanced course in English. The word "advanced" is the opposite of the word ..... .

a) high-tech b) modern c) primitive d) elevated

27 When I didn't like the meal, I asked to speak to the person in ..... at the restaurant.

a) advance b) common c) change d) charge

28 This cooking TV progamme is especially popular ..... women.

a) with b) at c) by d) of

29 All kinds of cheese are made in basically the same way. The antonym of the adverb "basically" is "..... ".

a) additionally b) mainly c) probably d) helplessly

30 I think that 10 p.m. isn't a proper time to visit someone. The synonym of the adjective "proper" is ..... .

a) inaccurate b) relieved c) correct d) major

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

(B) Language

Active & Passive

المبنى للمعلوم و المبنى للمجهول

Active

المبنى للمعلوم

- We use the active form when the agent is more important than the action. (who or what did it):

نستخدم المبنى للمعلوم عندما يكون الفاعل (سواء العاقل أو غير العاقل) اكثر اهمية من المفعول .

- Hesham visited his neighbour last week.

نحن نعرف هشام ولا نعرف جاره

وتتكون الجملة فى المعلوم من:

Subject S	+ Verb V	+ Object O
The mechanic	repairs	cars.

Passive

المبنى للمجهول

- We use the passive form when the action is more important than the agent (who or what did it):

نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون الحدث أكثر أهمية من الفاعل (من أو ماذا فعل):

- The International Space Station is seen in the sky every night. (It is not important who sees it.)

المبنى للمجهول: هو الجملة التى نبدأ فيها بالمفعول فربما لا نعرف من الفاعل أو لا نريد ذكره أو هو معروف جدًا:

- Ahmed's mobile phone was stolen last night. (We don't know who stole it.)
- The thieves were arrested yesterday.

قُبِضَ على اللصوص أمس (معروف من الذى يقبض على اللصوص فلا داعى لذكر الشرطة)

How to form the passive

Object	+ Verb to be	+ P.P.
المفعول يصبح فاعلًا	am/is/are/was/were/be/being/been على شكل الفعل فى المعلوم	التصريف الثالث

Passive forms: present and past

1 Present simple passive

(am/is/are(not) + past participle)

- We always take the bottles for recycling. (active)
- The bottles are always taken for recycling (by us). (passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Ahmed waters the plants every week.	The plants are watered by Ahmed every week.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Are the plants watered by Ahmed every week? When are the plants watered?	The plants aren't watered by Ahmed.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

2) Present continuous passive

(am/is/are(not) + being + past participle):

- The chef is preparing lunch now. (active)
- Lunch is being prepared now. (passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
The porter is carrying the bag.	The bag is being carried by the porter.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Is the bag being carried by the porter? Why is the bag being carried by the porter?	The bag isn't being carried by the porter.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A short story competition ..... by our school every year.
   a) will be organising
   b) organises
   c) is organised
   d) is being organised
2. Look! A stage ..... in the square.
   a) is being built
   b) is built
   c) was built
   d) will be built
3. Spanish ..... in our school. We learn English, German and French.
   a) taught
   b) isn't taught
   c) doesn't teach
   d) teaches
4. Repairs ..... to the car at the moment.
   a) are made
   b) are making
   c) will be made
   d) are being made
5. Many films ..... in Hollywood.
   a) will produce
   b) are producing
   c) are produced
   d) had been produced

Answers 1) c) 2) a) 3) b) 4) d) 5) c)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Past simple passive

(was/were (not) + past participle):

- The government built a new school in the village last year. (active)
- A new school was built in the village last year. (passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Fatma sent the email.	The email was sent by Fatma.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Was the email sent by Fatma? When was the email sent?	The email wasn't sent by Fatma.

4 Present perfect passive

(has/have (not) + been + past participle):

- Actors have used this hotel in many famous films. (active)
- This hotel has been used in many famous films. (passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Mona has bought much food.	Much food has been bought by Mona.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Has much food been bought by Mona? Who has much food been bought by?	Much food hasn't been bought by Mona.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The fax machine ..... by Alexander Bain.
   a) was inventing b) has been invented c) was invented d) invented
2. Ahmed is very polite. He ..... well brought up.
   a) will be b) was being c) had been d) has been
3. The party invitations ..... to all my friends yesterday afternoon.
   a) were sent b) sent c) have been sent d) were sending
4. The dog ..... fed yet.
   a) wasn't b) has not been c) won't be d) can't be
5. Where was the first Football World Cup .....?
   a) holding b) hold c) held d) being held

Answers 1) c 2) d 3) a 4) b 5) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Past continuous passive

(was/were (not) + being + past participle):

- They were decorating my house all day yesterday. (active)
- My house was being decorated all day yesterday. (passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Reem was cleaning the room at 7 am yesterday.	The room was being cleaned by Reem at 7 am yesterday.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Was the room being cleaned at 7 am yesterday? When was the room being cleaned?	The room wasn't being cleaned by Reem at 7 am yesterday.

6 Past perfect passive

(had (not) + been + past participle):

- Mother had not made the bread before we went to bed. (active)
- The bread had not been made before we went to bed. (passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Ali had sent the email by yesterday.	The email had been sent by yesterday.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Had the email been sent by yesterday? When had the email been sent?	The email hadn't been sent by yesterday.

Check Point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My friend took me in his car while mine ..... .
   a) was repairing b) was being repaired c) was repaired d) had been repaired
2. Ahmed was punished because many mistakes ..... by him.
   a) had been made b) had made c) will make d) has been made
3. The window ..... painted when it fell over the boy.
   a) has been b) was c) was being d) is
4. Had many fish ..... by 9 o'clock yesterday?
   a) being caught b) been catching c) caught d) been caught
5. Were the bags ..... when they were dropped?
   a) been carried b) being carried c) carry d) carrying

Answers 1) b 2) a 3) c 4) d 5) b

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A lot of money ..... on food, medicine and education every year.
   a) are spent b) is spending c) had been spent d) is spent
2. The children ..... to the park today.
   a) are taken b) are being taken c) are taking d) will take
3. Look at all the dust in here. It looks as if this room..... for a month.
   a) hasn't cleaned b) isn't cleaned
   c) hasn't been cleaned d) has cleaned
4. This picture ..... in the nineteenth century.
   a) was painted b) was painting c) is painted d) could paint
5. The story ..... by the boy when the light went out. So, he couldn't complete it.
   a) is being read b) was being read c) was reading d) had been read
6. After the letter....., it was posted.
   a) written b) had written c) has written d) had been written
7. This museum ..... by over 1,000 people every day.
   a) is visiting b) is being visited c) is visited d) will visit
8. I can see dust coming out of the window. Are the rooms .....?
   a) being dusted b) dusted c) dusting d) be dusted
9. New bridges ..... in Cairo recently.
   a) have been built b) have built c) were building d) were being built
10. Yesterday evening, the TV programme ..... by nearly a million people.
    a) had been watched b) was being watched
    c) was watching d) has been watched
11. I ..... since the last time I was ill.
    a) haven't visited b) haven't been visited c) was visited d) have visited
12. The hotel ..... before the bridge was built.
    a) has been opened b) was opening
    c) will be opened d) had been opened
13. In Japan, buildings ..... to withstand earthquakes.
    a) have constructed b) are constructing
    c) are constructed d) had been constructed
14. Many new ways of saving energy ..... by scientists nowadays.
    a) will be developed b) are being developed
    c) are developed d) are developing
15. Many trees ..... by the gardener since he was employed.
    a) have been planted b) were planted c) have planted d) were planting
16. When we arrived at the theatre, we ..... to our seats immediately.
    a) had been taken b) were being taken
    c) have been taken d) were taken

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

17 The TV ..... so I turned it off.
a) was watching b) watched
c) wasn't being watched d) didn't watch

18 Why ..... before selling the house?
a) hadn't I told b) I hadn't told c) I wasn't told d) hadn't I been told

19 Most children are strongly ..... by their parents.
a) influence b) influenced
c) influencing d) being influenced

20 Don't touch that electric stove while it ..... .
a) was being repaired b) being repaired
c) is being repaired d) will be repairing

21 He ..... at tennis since he came to the K.S.A.
a) isn't beaten b) hasn't beaten
c) hasn't been beaten d) wasn't beaten

22 The 1990 World Cup for football ..... in Italy.
a) was played b) was being played
c) played d) will be played

23 The man who ..... by a snake was given a serum.
a) is bitten b) has been bitten
c) had bitten d) had been bitten

24 No one ..... because the teacher forgave all students.
a) punished b) was punished
c) wasn't punished d) was punishing

25 He noticed that the room ..... recently.
a) hadn't been cleaned b) was not cleaned
c) hasn't been cleaned d) won't be cleaned

26 I hate it when my cooked meat ..... properly.
a) isn't doing b) wasn't done
c) isn't done d) won't be done

27 Look, Adel's car ..... over there.
a) is being appeared b) appears c) is appeared d) appearing

28 They couldn't find the woman who ..... .
a) was disappearing b) had been disappeared
c) was disappeared d) disappeared

29 Was he ..... when he saw his exam results?
a) delighted b) being delighted c) been delighting d) delight

30 **A:** Who discovered penicillin? **B:** ..... .
a) Penicillin was discovered by him
b) It was discovered by Alexander Fleming
c) It has been discovered by Fleming
d) Alexander Fleming may discover penicillin

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There was a series of debates between the two main ..... for the American elections.
a) applicants b) candidates c) invoices d) voters

2 COVID-19 may be the most serious ..... the world has ever faced since the Second World War.
a) change b) delight c) festival d) disaster

3 My aunt has been employed in ..... for several years now and she has a long experience in hospitals.
a) nursing b) finance c) nursery d) security

4 The Ministry of Transport is taking more safety ..... to stop railway accidents.
a) directions c) foundations c) pressures d) measures

5 The government is trying to develop a/an ..... for dealing with unemployment.
a) infinity b) allergy c) strategy d) deal

6 To make the room look better, her pictures were hung at different ..... on the walls.
a) steps b) grounds c) floors d) levels

7 All governments must take strict ..... to protect the world from climate change.
a) measures b) taxes c) laws d) options

8 The Summer Olympics ..... every four years.
a) are held b) hold c) are holding d) will be held

9 Is the exercise ..... now?
a) going to do b) doing c) done d) being done

10 Naguib Mahfouz's books ..... into many languages.
a) have translated b) had translated
c) were translating d) have been translated

11 Lots of buildings ..... in the fire last night.
a) destroyed b) have been destroyed
c) had destroyed d) were destroyed

12 I fell asleep while the film ..... .
a) was being watched b) watched
c) was watching d) is watched

13 The car was bought as soon as the money ..... .
a) had been saved b) had saved c) is saved d) has been saved

14 I didn't realise that someone was listening to us. The passive form is ..... .
a) Someone wasn't realised to listen to us
b) I didn't realise that we were being listened to
c) We weren't realised to be listened to
d) We were being realised by someone

15 Choose the sentence that gives the best sense in English:
a) The dustmen are collecting the rubbish every morning at 7 a.m.
b) The rubbish is collected every morning at 7 a.m.
c) They collect it every morning at 7 a.m.
d) It is collected every morning at 7 a.m.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A clever person used to mean a person who would exert efforts to achieve a legitimate aim. Hence, a clever pupil is a bright one who makes the best of his educational chances. A clever lawyer is one who handles the law so as to prove that his client is innocent. A clever doctor gives the right diagnosis for his patients and prescribes the right medicine for them. This is perfectly feasible in a simple society, which will allow a good number of people to do their best to succeed in their pursuits or better their life conditions.

But in a society that has grown in complexity so that only the fittest can survive the term has taken a new meaning. If two persons have one chance, the cleverer of them is the one who can push the other out of the way to secure the chance for himself.

Worse still a clever person might twist it wrong to make it look right. A clever lawyer in the sense of the word is the one who manages to prove the innocence of a wrongdoer. A doctor who entices more patients to go to him and consequently makes more money out of them would be a clever doctor. A company whose products are not much in demand, employs a clever propagandist to increase its sales. There are clever men both in commerce and in politics. Even in government offices there are clever social climbers that get all gains with the fewest efforts although they aren't efficient. Yet, there are still honest people in society who have a reputation for doing what they are convinced is right.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 What does an honest doctor do?

a) Makes as much money as he can from his patients.
b) Entices more patients to go to him.
c) Prescribes the wrong medicine.
d) Gives the right diagnosis.

17 Why is competition in complex societies unfair?

a) Because the smartest can survive.
b) Because only the strongest can survive.
c) Because the best can survive.
d) Because the fattest can survive.

18 What does the underlined word "entices" mean?

a) Take.
b) Tempts.
c) Prove.
d) Demand.

19 What is the best title for the passage?

a) A simple society.
b) Honest and dishonest people.
c) A chance for oneself.
d) Life conditions.

20 Those who aren't efficient and get high posts are ..... .

a) good leaders
b) brilliant
c) successful workers
d) social climbers

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

21 In simple societies, a clever doctor ..... .
a) prescribes the right medicine for his patients
b) gives the wrong diagnosis for his patients
c) lies to their patients
d) earns much money without making efforts

22 The lawyer who manages to prove the innocence of a wrongdoer ..... .
a) is clever
b) twists the truth
c) earns much money
d) does the right thing

23 The antonym of the word "feasible" is "..... ".
a) achievable
b) possible
c) impossible
d) practical

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

24 Many people support space exploration because we may need to live in space in the future.

a) يمانع الكثير من الناس اكتشاف الفضاء؛ مع أننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش فى الفضاء فى المستقبل.
b) يدعم الكثير من الناس البحث عن الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش فى الفضاء فى المستقبل.
c) يدعم الكثير من الناس السفر الى الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش فى الفضاء فى المستقبل.
d) يدعم الكثير من الناس استكشاف الفضاء؛ لأننا قد نحتاج إلى العيش فى الفضاء فى المستقبل.

25 Students should take part in the conversations inside the classroom to feel more confident in themselves.

a) يجب أن يشارك الطلاب فى المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر فى أنفسهم.
b) يجب أن يأخذ الطلاب جزءًا فى المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر فى أنفسهم.
c) يجب أن يشارك الطلاب فى المحادثات خارج الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر فى أنفسهم.
d) لا يجب أن يشارك الطلاب فى المحادثات داخل الحجرة الدراسية ليشعروا بثقة أكبر فى أنفسهم.

26 يقوم العلماء بأبحاث عديدة للاستفادة من مصادر الطاقة المتجددة كالماء والرياح والطاقة النووية.

a) Scientists do many researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.
b) Scientists do much research to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.
c) Scientists perform many researches to benefit from renewable energy sources such as water, wind and electronic energy.
d) Scientists do much researches to benefit from keep energy sources such as water, wind and nuclear energy.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

Vocabulary on Reading

achieve (v) (d)	ينجز/يحقق
appropriately (adv)	بشكل مناسب
attention (n)	اهتمام/انتباه
currently (adv)	حاليًا/فى الوقت الحالى
finalist (n)	متأهل للدور النهائى
follow-up (n)	متابعة
goal (n)	هدف
graduate (v) (d) (n)	يتخرج/خريج
including (prep)	بما فيه/مشتملًا على
interviewer (n)	المحاور (من يقوم بالحوار)
long-term (adj)	طويل المدى
management (n)	إدارة
motivate (v) (d)	يحفز
multinational (adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
organisational (adj)	تنظيمى
permanent (adj)	دائم
present (v) (ed) (n)	يقدم/هدية
professional (adj)	احترافى/محترف
profile (n)	ملف شخصى
reward (n) (v) (ed)	مكافأة/يكافئ
role (n)	دور
step (n) (v)	خطوة/يخطو
style (n)	أسلوب
task (n)	مهمة

Workbook Vocabulary

benefits (n)	فوائد
bullets (n)	نقاط
captain (n)	قائد فريق
charity (n)	عمل خيرى/مؤسسة خيرية
communication (n)	اتصال
concise (adj)	مختصر
editorial (adj)	تحريرى (خاص بكتابة جريدة)
expenses (n)	نفقات
expertise (n)	خبرة
helmet (n)	خوذة
hockey (n)	لعبة الهوكى
impress (v) (ed)	يترك انطباعًا/يؤثر على
journalism (n)	صحافة
object (n) (v) (ed)	شىء/يعترض على
overlook (v) (ed)	يطل على/يتجاهل
pandemic (n)	جائحة
protective (adj)	واقٍ
publisher (n)	ناشر
residential (adj)	سكنى
seatbelt (n)	حزام أمان (فى سيارة)
site (n)	موقع

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

achieve his goal	يحقق هدفه	have communication skills	لديه مهارات اتصال
around the country	فى كل أنحاء البلاد	set a goal	يحدد هدفًا
give training online	يوفر تدريبًا على الإنترنت	interview for	مقابلة لـ
candidate for	مرشح لـ	learn from	يتعلم من
good at	جيد فى	sort of	نوع من
impressed with	متأثر بـ	bring to	يجلب لـ
impression on	انطباع على	focus on	يركز على
have a career as	له حياة مهنية كـ	relevant to	ذو صلة

Special collocations

to award someone a prize	يمنح جائزة	to have a long-term goal	لديه هدف طويل الأمد
to be a team player	يصبح لاعب فريق	to look for an internship	يبحث عن تدريب لمهنة
to cover news stories	يغطى قصصًا إخبارية	to make a good impression	يترك انطباعًا جيدًا

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	قابل للتحقيق
attend	يحضر/ينتبه	attention attendee	انتباه حاضر	attentive	يقظ
graduate	يتخرج	graduation graduate	تخرج خريج	----------	
manage	يدير	management manager	إدارة مدير	managerial	إدارى
motivate	يحفز	motivation	حافز/تشجيع	motivating	محفز/مشجع
reward	يكافئ	reward	مكافأة	rewarding	مكافئ
impress	يترك انطباعًا/يؤثر	impression	انطباع	impressed impressive	متأثر مؤثر
protect	يقى/يحمى	protection	حماية/وقاية	protective	واقٍ

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	accomplish/realise	fail/lose يفشل/يخسر
attention	اهتمام	consideration/care	disregard/negligence عدم تقدير/إهمال
communication	اتصال	connection/link	disconnection عدم اتصال
impress	يؤثر على	influence/affect	depress/neglect يحزن/يهمل
management	إدارة	administration	mismanagement سوء إدارة
motivate	يحفز	inspire/stimulate	discourage/disappoint يثبط/يحبط
permanent	دائم	constant/durable	temporary/interim مؤقت
reward	يكافئ	honour	punish/penalise يعاقب
volunteer	يتطوع	offer	take back يسترد withdraw يسحب

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 ....., I'm preparing for important exams. Then, when I finish, I am going on holiday.
- a) Currency
- b) Current
- c) Previously
- d) Currently

2 My cousin ..... in physics from Cambridge University.
- a) learned
- b) graded
- c) graduated
- d) taught

3 Our English teacher is very good at ..... her students, so we all like her.
- a) motivating
- b) discouraging
- c) depressing
- d) oppressing

4 The young couple were sure that their new flat should be decorated in modern ..... .
- a) behaviour
- b) theory
- c) style
- d) route

5 I can't go out until I've finished doing my housework ..... .
- a) works
- b) tasks
- c) careers
- d) missions

Answers 1) d 2) c 3) a 4) c 5) b

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

Youssef El Badawey

I've recently graduated[1] from high school and I'm currently looking for an internship at a multinational[2] company where I can learn more about international project management.

My long-term goal is to have a successful career as a project manager where I work on projects with teams from many different countries. I've had some experience of working on and managing projects at school and I enjoyed the experience so much that I decided that this was the only career for me.

While I was at school, I was awarded[3] a prize for excellence in foreign languages. The fact that I'm able to speak several different languages will help me to succeed in an international role[4]. I also have very good organisational[5] skills and I'm a great team player, after spending seven years playing volleyball at school and playing for my school for five of those years.

(1) يتخرج
(2) متعدد الجنسيات
(3) يمنح جائزة
(4) دور
(5) تنظيمى

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Azza Nakhla 07159 125 147 azzanakhla.day@gmail.com

I've recently finished secondary school. I'm currently looking for an internship at a website where I can learn more about writing online news stories.

My long-term goal is to have a successful career as a journalist where I can work on websites covering national and international news. I have some experience of journalism after working on the school's online magazine.

I enjoyed the experience so much that I decided that this was the best career for me. While I was at school, I was awarded a prize for a writing project.

The fact that I'm able to write well will help me to succeed in journalism. I also have very good communication skills and I'm a great team player, after spending five years as captain of the school hockey team. Finally, I also volunteer at a local charity which helps poor families in the area.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I think the e-books and ..... newspapers and magazines will replace traditional ones.
   a) online b) offline c) Inline d) outline
2. International ..... has been developed a lot by the invention of the internet.
   a) addition b) communication c) separation d) presentation
3. ..... students are giving out copies of the leaflets of the new campaign.
   a) Engineer b) Pioneer c) Volunteer d) Breeder
4. We passed our free time helping in a/an ..... for the poor and needy.
   a) division b) firm c) association d) charity
5. The students who come first in the test will be ..... a prize.
   a) received b) awarded c) taken d) rewarded

Answers 1) a 2) b 3) c 4) d 5) b

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

attention اهتمام	the interest that people show in someone or something
multinational متعدد الجنسيات	a multinational company has factories, offices, and business activities in many different countries
profile ملف شخصى	a short description that gives important details about a person, a group of people, or a place
style أسلوب	a particular way of doing, designing, or producing something

Notes on Vocabulary

1 attention

تستخدم كلمة attention بمعانٍ مختلفة مثل:

١- انتباه (الإنصات أو النظر أو التفكير الحريص على شىء ما)

٢- اهتمام (إظهار الرغبة فى شىء أو أداء شىء)

٣- حرص (على إنجاز أو تنظيف أو إصلاح شىء)

٤- رعاية (جهد لرعاية أو مساعدة شخص أو شىء)

- Although he was tired, Sami tried to pay attention to what the speaker was saying.
- The train accident attracted a great deal of media attention.
- The bike's in fairly good condition, but the gears need a bit of attention.
- Anyone who comes into contact with these chemicals should seek urgent medical attention.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

2 **interview** مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة)/مقابلة (إذاعية/تليفزيونية/صحفية)
- I've got an interview for a Job as an Interpreter.

interviewer المُحاوِر (الشخص الذى يُجرِى المقابلة)

Interviewee المُحاور (الشخص الذى تُجرى معه المقابلة)

appointment موعد/ميعاد (ترتيب لرؤية شخص فى وقت معين)
- I have an appointment to see my lawyer next Saturday.

conference مؤتمر
- The president arrived for a conference with local officials.

meeting اجتماع
- They organised meetings on a number of important political issues.

3 **present** هدية
- I'm going to buy a wedding present for my sister.

prize جائزة
- You can win a prize if you practise harder for the race.

reward مكافأة
- The young clerk has received a reward for being hardworking at the office.

award وسام/جائزة رسمية
- Mohamed Salah received the Player of the Year Award in England in 2018.

4 **site** موقع
- The worker has worked on various building sites.

sight بصر/منظر
- Anne's sight is very good for someone of her age.
- As he reached the front door, he saw a strange sight.

sights مواقع أثرية
- We saw all the important sights on our first day in Rome.

Notes on sentences from Reading Texts

- ..... and I enjoyed the experience so much that I decided that this was the only career for me.
  أداة الربط (so ... that) هى بمعنى (جدًا لدرجة أن).
- While I was at school, I was awarded a prize for excellence in foreign languages.
  لاحظ استخدام ماضى بسيط (was) بعد (while).
- I have some experience of journalism after working on the school's online magazine.
  لاحظ استخدام (experience) كاسم غير معدود بمعنى (خبرة).

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My uncle is a clever engineer and has worked on various building ..... .
a) sights b) views c) sceneries d) sites

2 The police offered a/an ..... for any information about the robbery.
a) present b) award c) reward d) prize

3 It gives a very bad impression if you're late for a job ..... .
a) interview b) appointment c) seminar d) conference

4 My little sister loves being the centre of attention. Attention here means ..... .
a) attenuation b) interest c) treatment d) expectancy

Answers 1) d 2) c 3) a 4) b

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 You should wear ..... for a job interview because it leaves a good impression.
a) strangely b) appropriately c) freely d) helplessly

2 Our local basketball team was one of the ..... in the championship, but we only came third.
a) beginners b) starters c) finalists d) finals

3 All new systems must have a ..... plan to make sure of its efficiency.
a) strange b) result c) late d) follow-up

4 My grandfather has ten grandchildren ..... me and my sister.
a) including b) intending c) expanding d) relieving

5 My daughter ..... with a BA in English last year and now works as a teacher in a primary school.
a) learnt b) employed c) taught d) graduated

6 The factory is now under new ..... and is making some profits.
a) management b) settlement c) establishment d) argument

7 Shell and British Petroleum are two of the biggest ..... companies which trade in oil in many parts of the world.
a) tiny b) multinational c) local d) national

8 It's important to update your Facebook ....., but you must take care of your privacy.
a) image b) post c) profile d) blog

9 Doctors sometimes use antibiotics because they play an essential ..... in controlling infection.
a) role b) rule c) roll d) roller

10 The head teacher asked the new teacher to plan the ..... of the lessons well.
a) stairs b) steps c) ladders d) stops

11 One of the important qualities of a customer service clerk is having good ..... skills.
a) separation b) collection c) connection d) communication

12 I was offered an internship at a/an ..... department in our local newspaper.
a) tutorial b) doctorial c) editorial d) pictorial

13 The businessman always travels first-class regardless of travel ..... .
a) expenses b) profits c) interests d) attractions

14 The candidate ..... all the interviewers with his excellent qualifications.
a) expressed b) impressed c) depressed d) defected

15 A ..... is a person or company whose business is to arrange the writing, production, and sale of books or newspapers.
a) publisher b) journalist c) writer d) programmer

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

16 We spent the holiday in a hotel which ..... the Nile.

a) depicts b) ignores c) outlooks d) overlooks

17 The World Health Organisation declared coronavirus as a ..... in 2020.

a) ceremony b) pandemic c) disease d) festival

18 We had to look for a camp ..... before deciding to start the picnic.

a) sight b) scene c) view d) site

19 Although the 6th of October city is far, it is a quiet ..... area.

a) agricultural b) residential c) prohibited d) infected

20 My brother has strong ..... skills. He was captain of his football team.

a) educational b) language c) organisational d) moving

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 My parents always motivate me to be better. The synonym of the word "motivate" is "....."

a) inspire b) neglect c) depress d) oppress

22 My family were really impressed ..... the success of my sister in her final exams.

a) at b) with c) in d) of

23 One of the most important equipment at a building site is ..... boots.

a) protect b) protection c) protective d) protected

24 Looking smart really ..... a good impression on most people we meet.

a) reaches b) has c) does d) makes

25 The new management staff is doing great efforts. The noun "management" is similar in meaning to the noun "....."

a) sale b) purchase c) administration d) production

26 At the end of the year, you should ..... a goal for yourself to reach by the end of it.

a) set b) get c) arrive d) damage

27 Our football team has made a great ..... by winning the League last year.

a) achieve b) achievement c) achievable d) achieved

28 Old people always need much attention. The antonym of the word "attention" is "....."

a) effort b) interest c) care d) negligence

29 I had an interview ..... the job of an executive director in a small company yesterday.

a) in b) for c) at d) with

30 Our teacher rewarded us for our good exam results. The verb "reward" is the opposite of the verb "....."

a) arrest b) award c) punish d) infect

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

Passive (Future tenses and modal verbs)

1 Future simple (will)

will (not) + be + past participle

- The teachers will mark the exams tomorrow. (active)
- The exams will be marked tomorrow. (passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
Ayman will build a house in Assuit.	A house will be built in Assuit by Ayman.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Will a house be built in Assuit by Ayman? Where will a house be built by Ayman?	A house won't be built in Assuit by Ayman.

2 Future simple (be going to)

be going to + be + past participle

- The government is going to build a new road. (active)
- A new road is going to be built. (passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
They are going to invite Samy to the party.	Samy is going to be invited to the party.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Is Samy going to be invited to the party? Who is Samy going to be invited to the party by?	Samy isn't going to be invited to the party.

3 Future perfect

will/won't + have been + past participle

- By tomorrow, I will have written the reports.
- By tomorrow, the reports will have been written.

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
By 9 pm, she will have cleaned the flat.	By 9 pm, the flat will have been cleaned.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Will the flat have been cleaned by 9 pm? What will have been done by 9 pm?	The flat won't have been cleaned until 9 pm.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new library ..... by the prime minister next month.
   a) will be opened b) is opened c) is being opened d) is opening
2. By the end of this century, most of the world's oil supplies ..... .
   a) have been used up b) will have been used up
   c) will have used up d) have used up
3. The house ..... tomorrow.
   a) will paint b) was being painted
   c) is going to be painted d) is painted
4. I'll do everything. Everything ..... done.
   a) is b) was c) has d) will be
5. **A:** Who's going to meet him at the airport?
   B: He ..... by our ambassador.
   a) will meet b) is met c) is going to be met d) will have been met

Answers 1 a) 2 b) 3 c) 4 d) 5 c)

4 Modal verbs

Modal verb + be + past participle

- We could see many tourists in the pool. (active)
- Many tourists could be seen in the pool. (passive)

Active المبنى للمعلوم	Passive المبنى للمجهول
They can solve this problem.	This problem can be solved.
Interrogative استفهام	**Negative النفى**
Can this problem be solved?	This problem can't be solved.
How can this problem be solved?	

الأفعال التى يأتى بعدها المصدر فى المبنى للمعلوم يأتى بعدها (be + P.P.) فى المبنى للمجهول.

would	كان سوف	has/have to	يجب أن	appear to	يبدو
may	ربما	had to	وجب أن	(be) about to	على وشك
might	ربما	will have to	سيجب أن	(be) supposed to	مفروض
can	يستطيع	am/is/are to	يجب أن	needn't	لست فى حاجة
could	يمكن	was/were to	وجب أن	want to	يريد
must	يجب أن	used to	اعتاد أن	let + obj + inf.	يدع
ought to	يجب أن	need to	يحتاج	expect ... to	يتوقع
should	يجب أن	seem to	يبدو	hope to	يأمل

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Examples

- The problem may be solved in a number of different ways.
- This question can't be easily answered.
- His room should be regularly cleaned.
- A visit had to be paid to the wounded soldiers.
- I'm to be rewarded for my great efforts.
- Many exams were to be answered before the final one.
- The building appears to be used as a post office.
- Our car is supposed to be checked before travelling.
- I expected her to be severely punished.

لاحظ

- If we want to say who or what did the action, we use *by*:

إذا أردنا ذكر الفاعل فى الجملة المبنى للمجهول نضعه آخر الجملة مسبوقًا بـ by.

- I think the new park will be used by all the children in the area.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The machine ..... for cutting bread.
   a) can use b) can be used c) is using d) have been used
2. These tablets ..... before meals.
   a) should take b) are being taken
   c) should be taken d) are taking
3. This building ..... as it is very old.
   a) was demolished b) is demolished
   c) should demolish d) ought to be demolished
4. Something ..... to solve the problem of pollution.
   a) has to be done b) must do c) should do d) is going to do
5. Coloured clothes ..... separately.
   a) must wash b) must be washed
   c) should wash d) has been washed

Answers 1) b 2) c 3) d 4) a 5) b

5) Passive constructions starting with (It ..... & الفاعل الثانى)

الأفعال الآتية تحول بطريقتين إلى المبنى للمجهول:

١- طريقة It ٢- طريقة الفاعل الثانى

think, believe, say, report, know, expect, consider, understand, fear, predict, agree, hope, allege. etc.

Active: People think that money brings happiness.

يعتقد الناس أن المال يجلب السعادة وهذا اعتقاد عام، وعند المبنى للمجهول يكون المعنى يُعتقد أن المال يجلب السعادة فتكون الجملة:

Passive: a) It is thought that money brings happiness.

- فى الطريقة الأولى لم نغير إلا الفعل think

b) Money is thought to bring happiness.

- إذا بدأنا بالفاعل الثانى money فإننا نحول think إلى المبنى للمجهول ثم نضع to + inf. إذا كان الفعل الثانى مضارعًا.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Active: People believe that he lied in court.
Passive: a) It is believed that he lied in court.
b) He is believed to have lied in court.

- فى الطريقة الأولى لم نغير إلا الفعل believe
- عند البدء بالفاعل الثانى He فإننا نحول believe إلى المبنى للمجهول ثم نضع to + have + P.P. إذا كان الفعل الثانى ماضيًا.

Check Point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People think he is guilty. He ..... guilty.
   a) thought to be
   b) is thought to be
   c) thinks he is
   d) thought he was
2. A cease-fire وقف إطلاق النار is expected to ..... later this month.
   a) be declaring
   b) declare
   c) be declared
   d) to have been declared
3. People say that Cairo is one of the world's most interesting cities. Cairo ..... one of the world's most interesting cities.
   a) said to be
   b) told to be
   c) was said to be
   d) is said to be
4. Long ago, people thought that the earth was flat. Long ago, the earth ..... flat.
   a) was thought to have been
   b) thought to be
   c) is thought to be
   d) was thinking to be
5. "They say he robbed the bank." means: ..... .
   a) They say he's been robbed in the bank.
   b) He is said to rob the bank.
   c) He said he'd robbed the bank.
   d) He is said to have robbed the bank.

Answers 1) b 2) c 3) d 4) a 5) d

Extra Points

Heat and light come from the sun.

I have a shower every morning. (Not: ~~A shower is had by me.~~)

I hate people telling me lies.

He doesn't let others laugh at him.

The lock is being broken with a hammer.

The kite will be made by Omar. It will be made with paper, paint and string.

The tiger is going to be shot with a gun.

Who takes your children to school?

Who are your children taken to school by?

١ الأفعال اللازمة (التى لا تأخذ مفعولًا) لا تحول إلى المبنى للمجهول.

٢ بعض الأفعال المتعدية لا تحول للمجهول وهى: have, fit, suit, etc.

٣ فى حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (v.+ ing) نستخدم (being + P.P.)
- I hate being told lies.

٤ إذا كان الفاعل والمفعول واحدًا مع الفعل (let) نستخدم ضمير منعكس ثم (be) ثم (P.P.)
- He doesn't let himself be laughed at.

٥ نستخدم with ثم المادة المصنوع منها الشىء أو الأداة المستخدمة أو المقادير.

٦ عند استخدام المبنى للمجهول فى الأسئلة نستخدم by مع who, whom, which فى آخر السؤال.
(active)
(passive)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

٧ إذا كانت الجملة مبنية للمجهول وبها ضمائر الوصل who/which فيمكن حذف who/which + v. to be ويترك التصريف الثالث فقط.

- The meat which was eaten yesterday was delicious.
- The meat ~~which was~~ eaten yesterday was delicious.
- The boy who was punished yesterday was mistaken.
- The boy ~~who was~~ punished yesterday was mistaken.

٨ الأفعال الآتية تأخذ المصدر فى المبنى للمعلوم (hear, help, see and make) ويسبق المصدر بـ to فى المبنى للمجهول.

- They saw him leave the building.
- He was seen to leave the building.

ولكن إذا جاء بعد hear, see, watch الفعل به ing فإن الفعل يظل كما هو به ing.

- They saw him running down the stairs.
- He was seen running down the stairs.

٩ بعض الأفعال تأخذ مفعولين (عاقل/غير عاقل) فيمكن البدء بأيهما ولكن إذا بدأت بغير العاقل نضع قبل العاقل to/for

- He sent me an email.
- I was sent an email.
  - An email was sent to me.
- He bought me a bike.
- I was bought a bike.
  - A bike was bought for me.

ونستخدم (to) مع الأفعال الآتية:

bring	يحضر	lend	يقرض	pass	يمرر/يناول	show	يظهر/يعرض
give	يعطى	offer	يعرض	pay	يدفع	tell	يخبر
hand	يعطى/يناول	owe	يدين	sell	يبيع	write	يكتب

نستخدم (for) مع الأفعال الآتية:

book	يحجز	call	ينادى/يتصل	find	يجد	leave	يترك
build	يبنى	cut	يقطع	get	يحصل على	make	يصنع
buy	يشترى	fetch	يذهب ليحضر	keep	يحافظ على	save	يوفر

١٠ هناك أفعال فى التصريف الثالث تستخدم صفات بعد v. to be وهنا لا تكون مجهول.

amazed, broken, interested, pleased, worried, scared, exhausted, delighted, bored, etc.

- The last time I went to the dentist, I was scared. (adjective)
- She was worried all day after hearing the news. (adjective)
- She was exhausted after cleaning the house all day. (adjective)
- She was delighted with all her birthday presents. (adjective)

١١ يمكن أن نستخدم الفعل (get) بدلًا من (verb to be) عند التحويل إلى المبنى للمجهول خاصة مع التصريف الثالث من الأفعال الآتية:

(catch/arrest/damage/destroy/kill/marry/burn/beat)

- The police caught/arrested the bank robbers.
- The bank robbers got caught/arrested.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The hotel rooms ..... next month.
a) will decorate b) need to decorate c) will be decorated d) are decorated

2 The new supermarket chain ..... in May.
a) will launch b) is going to be launched
c) is launching d) is launched

3 The amount of energy we use every year ..... .
a) can reduce b) are reduced c) must reduce d) must be reduced

4 Meat ..... well before it is eaten.
a) should be cooked b) is cooking c) should cook d) have to be cooked

5 Passengers' seat belts ..... on a plane.
a) have to fasten b) have fastened c) have to be fastened d) has to be fastened

6 A new space station ..... in the future.
a) will build b) will probably be built
c) is built d) should build

7 I've seen the plans. Two new hotels ..... near the beach next year.
a) are going to be built b) are built
c) are building d) will be built

8 My brother wants ..... by someone when he paints the house.
a) to help b) to helping c) help d) to be helped

9 Could your maths problem .....?
a) be solved b) solve c) be solving d) being solved

10 All the questions ..... on the paper.
a) has to be answered b) must be answered c) must answer d) have to answer

11 A new airport ..... in this area.
a) must build b) has built
c) will be building d) will have to be built

12 The windows ..... today.
a) are washing b) going to wash c) are going to be washed d) will wash

13 He ..... where to park the car when he gets there.
a) will be told b) is telling c) will tell d) is told

14 In the future, computers ..... smaller.
a) are made b) will be making c) will have made d) will be made

15 Our team is expected ..... the next match.
a) to win b) to will win c) to have won d) to be won

16 It is terrifying, we ..... .
a) may kill b) might kill c) might be killed d) must be killed

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

17 A lot of sweets ..... when I was younger.
a) were used to eat
b) were used to be eaten
c) used to eat
d) used to be eaten

18 Plans to develop cars on methanol are likely ..... in the future.
a) will be realised
b) to be realised
c) will have been realised
d) being realised

19 We can't get there in time. By the time we get there, the papers ..... .
a) have been destroyed
b) would be destroyed
c) will be destroyed
d) will have been destroyed

20 "Did someone throw those letters away?"
- "Yes, but it was a mistake. They ..... away."
a) shouldn't have been thrown
b) shouldn't be thrown
c) need to be thrown
d) mustn't be thrown

21 The men ..... after the explosion.
a) are said to have been arrested
b) are said to being arrested
c) are said to be arrested
d) are said to arrest

22 Some patients shout in pain while ..... an injection.
a) giving b) being given c) was being given d) given

23 He ..... empty the contents of his suitcases onto the counter yesterday.
a) was made b) will be made to c) was made to d) had made

24 Don't worry. The mail ..... in two hours.
a) will arrive
b) will be arrived
c) is arrived
d) is being arrived

25 Because of his bad health, ...
a) the doctor was advised to lose weight
b) the patient was advised by the doctor to lose weight
c) the doctor wants to lose weight
d) the patient advised the doctor to lose weight

26 I remember ..... to the national theatre when I was young.
a) to take b) taking c) taken d) being taken

27 I wouldn't like ..... given instructions.
a) to be b) being c) has been d) had been

28 Don't let yourself ..... .
a) to cheat b) be cheated c) cheating d) cheated

29 My brother is looking forward to ..... as the best student at school.
a) be chosen b) choose c) choosing d) being chosen

30 Many spaceships ..... to the moon before Apollo 11 in 1969.
a) have flown b) were flying c) had flown d) were being flown

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(C) Writing

Online Professional Profile

Write up an online professional profile. Write about 200 words. Include the following points:

- What do you want to achieve in your career?
- Why do you think you will be good at this?
- What do you have at school that will help this? Say how and why this will help.
- Any other things you have done that will help this. Say how and why this will help.

Yasser Kamal 07159 125 147 yasserkamal.day@gmail.com

I'm in the last year of my study at the Faculty of Arts, English Department. I'm currently looking for an internship at a website where I can learn more about translation from and into English.

My long-term goal is to have a successful career as a translator or an interpreter where I can work on translating books. I have some experience of translation after studying on a course in the Faculty of Arts.

I enjoyed the experience so much that I decided that this was the best career for me. While I was at secondary school, my teacher of English always praised me for doing the translation exercises so well.

The fact that I like translation will help me to succeed in this career. I also have very good communication skills and I speak English and French very well. Finally, I also volunteer at a local charity which helps poor families in the area.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have decided to have a career ..... a journalist since I was at secondary school.
   a) like b) for c) as d) at
2. The job ..... made the candidates feel relaxed with simple questions.
   a) interviewee b) interviewer c) resource d) source
3. Although he is poor, the factory worker refused to accept ..... .
   a) charity b) wage c) salary d) fee
4. There were three ..... in the box: a comb, a pen, and a button.
   a) topics b) tips c) machines d) objects
5. As an architect, my job requires careful ..... to detail.
   a) intention b) attention c) invention d) exception
6. I have done boxing for 5 years, but I was never good enough to go ..... .
   a) lifter b) amateur c) professional d) apprentice
7. I achieved success in life through hard work and patience. The antonym of the verb "achieve" is "..... ".
   a) gain b) fail c) devise d) progress
8. My duty as a journalist started with ..... news stories at some remote places.
   a) making b) doing c) uncovering d) covering
9. I think fewer letters ..... in the future.
   a) are written b) will be written c) will write d) can write
10. The authorities will make him pay off all his debts. He ..... pay all his debts.
    a) will be made to b) is going to be c) was made to d) will be made
11. This secret should not ..... to anyone.
    a) reveal b) being revealed c) have revealed d) be revealed
12. I ..... a ride if Ali had a car.
    a) would give b) will give c) would be given d) was given
13. Hany ..... for his bad behaviour.
    a) is punishing b) is to be punished c) has punished d) must punish
14. The bottles ..... by the careless servant.
    a) seem to be broken b) are seemed to break
    c) seem to break d) should be broken
15. The pilot ..... thought to ..... in the crash.
    a) was/be dying b) has/would die c) had/have died d) was/have died
16. I don't like ..... at.
    a) people laughing b) having laughed c) being laughed d) people laughed
17. Which of the following sentences uses capital letters CORRECTLY?
    a) Labour day is celebrated on 1st May every year.
    b) Labour Day is celebrated on 1st may every year.
    c) Labour Day is celebrated on 1st May every year.
    d) Labour Day is celebrated on 1st May every Year.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 Choose the sentence with the correct punctuation.

a) The car has a number of extras: sun roof, tinted windows, leather seats, and electric mirrors.
b) The car has a number of extras; sun roof tinted windows, leather seats, and electric mirrors.
c) The car has a number of extras, sun roof, tinted windows, leather seats, and electric mirrors.
d) The car has a number of extras: sun roof: tinted windows: leather seats, and electric mirrors.

19 What transition word or phrase couldn't you use to express contrasting ideas?

a) however b) in addition c) On the other hand... d) yet

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A Japanese professor has produced evidence to show that computer games can have a bad effect on children. Many parents and grandparents have been saying this for years, but they were largely ignored, being regarded as technophobes. Parental worries about computer games are often related to their effect on their children's health and on their own social skills. They feel that they should be outdoors; getting exercise and enjoying the fresh air while playing with their friends. Since many of them usually play by themselves, they live rather isolated lives, with little opportunity to interact with other people. As a result, they may be very poor at communication. Parents are also worried in case the violence of many of the games will cause their children to become more aggressive and violent themselves. This anxiety also applies to television, which often shows scenes of extreme cruelty.

On the other hand, many scientists and psychologists find that computer games could actually have many benefits – the main one is making kids smart. Computer games may actually teach kids high-level thinking skills that they will need in the future. When your child plays computer games, it gives his brain a real workout. In many computer games, the skills required to win involve abstract and high-level thinking. These skills are not even taught at school.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 "Poor at communication" means ..... .

a) unable to use their mobile phones b) clever at making fewer phone calls
c) having difficulty in socialising with others d) having the ability to speak in public

21 Violence, cruelty and aggressiveness can be caused by ..... .

a) computer programmes b) parental worries
c) technophobes d) TV scenes and computer games

22 After reading the passage, we conclude that computer games ..... .

a) are a double-edged weapon b) have a lot of advantages
c) have a lot of disadvantages d) do much harm to people and animals

23 The underlined word "since" here means ..... .

a) from the time when b) because
c) although d) later

24 Parents worry about computer games because ..... .

a) they have an effect on their children's health
b) they have an effect on their children's social skills
c) they have an effect on their children's behavior
d) all of these

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

25 Enjoying the fresh air and playing are kinds of ..... .
a) hobbies
b) outdoor activities
c) indoor activities
d) social media

26 Those who are in favour of computer games think that they ..... .
a) make kids smart
b) are cheap for them to buy
c) make them happy
d) are better than outdoor activities

27 The best title for the passage is "..... ".
a) The cons of computer games
b) The pros of computer games
c) The pros and cons of computer games
d) Different computer games

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 Taking the necessary precautionary medical measures is still the most important way to combat COVID-19. It is also an effective method to protect ourselves against this serious pandemic.

a) إن القيام بالإجراءات الاحترازية الطبية سيظل الطريقة الأهم لمكافحة كوفيد-١٩ وهى أيضًا وسيلة فعالة لحماية أنفسنا ضد هذه الجائحة الخطيرة.
b) إن إهمال الإجراءات الاحترازية الطبية سيظل الطريق الأهم لمكافحة كوفيد-١٩ وهى أيضًا وسيلة غير فعالة لحماية أنفسنا ضد هذه الجائحة الخطيرة.
c) إن القيام بالإجراءات الاحترازية الطبية سيظل الطريق الأهم لمكافحة كوفيد-١٩ وهى أيضًا وسيلة فعالة لحماية أنفسنا ضد هذا الميكروب الخطير.
d) أن القيام بالإجراءات الجراحية الطبية سيظل الطريق الأهم لمكافحة كوفيد-١٩ وهى أيضًا وسيلة فعالة لحماية أنفسنا ضد هذه الجائحة الخطيرة.

29 لقد حل التليفون المحمول محل القراءة وممارسة الرياضة مما أثر على صحة الشباب ومعارفهم العامة.
a) The mobile phone has participated reading and practising sports, which affected young people's health and their public knowledge.
b) The mobile phone has placed reading and rehearsing sports, which affected young people's health and their private knowledge.
c) The mobile phone has replaced reading and practising sports, which affected young people's health and their private knowledge.
d) The mobile phone has replaced reading and sports, that impressed young people's health and their general knowledge.

30 لقد تم إنشاء العديد من المساكن بأسعار مناسبة وذلك يساهم فى حل مشكلة الإسكان وتعمير الصحراء.
a) Many houses were built at reasonable prices. This contributes to solve the problem of housing and reconstruct the desert.
b) Many houses are built at reasonable prices. This contributes in solving the problem of housing and reconstructing the desert.
c) Many houses have been built at fictional prices. This contributes to solving the problem of housing and reclaiming the desert.
d) Many houses have been built at reasonable prices. This contributes to solving the problem of housing and reconstructing the desert.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Great Expectations
Exercises Chapter (8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I really ..... the way she brings up all those kids on her own.

a) ignore b) admire c) imagine d) agree

2 While Nabil expressed ..... thoughts about his parents, he was also clearly in conflict with them.

a) cold b) aggressive c) affectionate d) available

3 Every young man dreams of a good position and a ..... job.

a) well-paid b) temporary c) worthless d) useless

4 Since he is ..... in most things, he spends a lot of money on ties.

a) sensible b) sensitive c) thoughtful d) extravagant

5 A ..... is someone who has been proved to be guilty of a crime and sent to prison.

a) guard b) convict c) judge d) benefactor

6 A ..... has donated $100,000 towards building the hospital.

a) convict b) prisoner c) benefactor d) servant

7 During the ten years he worked in Germany, he accumulated a ..... .

a) fortune b) job c) mission d) fame

8 ..... seas are very rough, with big waves that are caused by strong winds.

a) Quiet b) Blue c) Clean d) Stormy

9 This man is so ..... that he ignores all criticism.

a) sensitive b) arrogant c) polite d) rich

10 As he had no friends or relatives in the town, the traveller tried to find ..... somewhere.

a) place b) life c) lodging d) room

11 Be quiet! It's rude to ..... people when they are speaking.

a) interrupt b) wait c) see d) respect

12 The fishermen said that the high wind had made the sea very ..... .

a) clear b) salty c) clean d) rough

13 Being ill, my father could not attend his old friend's ..... .

a) birth b) funeral c) anniversary d) sleep

14 He never let us down, for he always ..... his promises.

a) broke b) lost c) kept d) fell

15 The authorities will make him pay off all his ..... .

a) debts b) visits c) money d) wealth

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

بقية هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is said that the young writer's novel must be a/an ..... for the first award.
a) applicant b) candidate c) enemy d) sponsor

2 The museum manager is expecting large ..... this week after reopening the mummy roon
a) business b) office c) present d) company

3 The company has its ..... in Cairo, and branch offices all over Egypt.
a) base b) basics c) path d) route

4 According to the American constitution, the ..... of Foreign Affairs is responsible f dealing with world political problems.
a) Management b) Administration c) Department d) Section

5 After a period of care at home, the old woman was first admitted to hospital, then to the ..... home.
a) nursing b) nursery c) drug d) attention

6 The team ensured its ..... for the finals with a win over the competing team.
a) finalism b) qualification c) affection d) reflection

7 Experts say that exam results are not necessarily a true ..... of a student's abilities.
a) fixture b) meter c) measure d) fracture

8 The deal with the famous American company will certainly raise our company's international .....
a) lose b) debt c) painting d) profile

9 The local newspaper has been taking minister to ..... over the terrible train accident.
a) responsibility b) duty c) task d) mission

10 The rich man built up the business at the ..... of his health.
a) expense b) sale c) benefit d) income

11 Is Omar going to school? No, ...
a) he doesn't b) to the club c) he's reading d) he gets by bus

12 This is the bike I ..... .
a) like so much b) am liking much c) like it much d) am liking it muc

13 Aren't they friends .....?
a) to yours b) of you c) of yours d) to you

14 When you go to the supermarket, bring me two ..... .
a) bread loaves b) breads loaves c) loaves of breads d) loaves of bread

15 He is a good footballer, but he plays tennis ..... .
a) quite well b) much better c) very good d) too hardly

16 Leila has travelled to many European countries and so ..... .
a) have her parents b) her parents have c) did her parents d) had her parents

17 When I was asked about the age of my son, I said, "he .....".
a) has been born since three years ago b) was born since three years
c) is born for three years ago d) was born three years ago

18 She ..... be Italian because she has got an Egyptian passport.
a) doesn't need b) mustn't c) can't d) isn't able to

19 I'll be 18 years old next month, ...?
a) am I b) won't I c) aren't I d) will I

20 I can't find the keys ..... .
a) everywhere b) nowhere c) anywhere d) somewhere

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 2

Based on Unit 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The war in Syria is considered one of the most serious ..... in the Arab World.
   a) discoveries b) innovations c) achievements d) disasters
2. After finishing his university studies, Medhat is looking for a/an ..... in the field of journalism only to get experience.
   a) internship b) location c) advantage d) merit
3. The human ..... department is responsible for all the staff's records at the office.
   a) activists b) resources c) workers d) clerks
4. As Michael isn't very hard-working, he took six years to ..... from the Faculty of Arts.
   a) devise b) germinate c) graduate d) learn
5. The new coach is famous for his way of ..... the players to do better.
   a) motivating b) harming c) destroying d) firing
6. The people who work in archaeological ..... must be trustworthy.
   a) signs b) views c) sceneries d) sites
7. Patients who recover from COVID-19 must have a/an ..... record to make sure they are cured completely.
   a) experiment b) reason c) late d) follow-up
8. Old people always need much attention. The synonym of the word "attention" is ".....".
   a) effort b) pleasure c) care d) negligence
9. We always eat when the food ..... .
   a) is prepared b) was prepared c) prepares d) prepared
10. The TV programme about space ..... at the moment.
    a) is being shown b) is shown c) is showing d) will be shown
11. The electric light bulb ..... by Thomas Edison in 1879.
    a) was being invented b) invented c) had been invented d) was invented
12. What ..... by Tamer on the desk when the teacher saw him?
    a) wrote b) was writing c) written d) was being written
13. When you arrive at the hotel, you ..... to your room.
    a) will show b) are shown c) will be shown d) are showing
14. Don't put those old batteries in the bin. They ..... to a special place.
    a) are taking b) should take c) can take d) should be taken
15. Our car ..... before travelling.
    a) is suppose to check b) is checking
    c) is supposed to be checked d) supposed to be checked
16. It has been predicted that within the next 50 years, scientists ..... a drug to prolong life up to 150 years or more.
    a) are producing b) to be produced
    c) will be produced d) will have produced
17. Which of the following punctuation marks is used to connect sentences that are closely related?
    a) Quotation marks. b) Colon. c) Semicolon. d) Hyphen.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 Which sentence below uses quotation marks appropriately?

a) Nour said Alla wants to go to the cinema tonight.

b) Nour said, "Alla wants to go to the cinema tonight.

c) "Waleed said, "Alla wants to go to the cinema tonight.

d) Nour said, "Alla wants to go to the cinema tonight."

19 Which of these is NOT a rule to follow when sending a formal email?

a) Including a subject line.

b) Using greeting.

c) Using receiver's first names.

d) Signing your full name.

20 "Our TVs are all smart. You will also get a guarantee for 10 years on buying one of them."
This could be a part of a/an ..... .

a) narrative b) introduction c) advertisement d) topic sentence

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What is an ideal holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant one for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied.

If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool.

Even if the sportsman and his lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me. Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety of foods.

But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language talked around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious foreign city that comes to my mind.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 A sportsman is fond of ..... .

a) playing games b) reading books c) eating much food d) sleeping early

22 The utmost pleasure of a sea holiday is ..... .

a) coming to new states b) coming to new harbours

c) meeting people d) going shopping

23 The underlined word "one" refers to ..... .

a) the lazy man b) the passenger

c) the sportsman d) anyone

24 The best title for this text is ..... .

a) Sportsmen b) Lazy people

c) A passenger ship d) An ideal holiday

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

25 One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage:
a) Coming to new ports in strange lands is an enjoyable moment.
b) A voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool would suit the sportsman and his lazy friend .
c) The writer seems to like the sea.
d) A voyage in a modern passenger ship would be noisy.

26 The writer seems to be ..... concerning trying foods.
a) adventurous b) timid c) selfish d) worried

27 The antonym of the word "unsatisfied" is "..... ".
a) unhappy b) disappointed c) contented d) unconvinced

28 The writer likes to be ..... on a ship to enjoy his voyage.
a) in company b) alone c) Lonely d) single

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Yasser's mother was very ill. She had been in and out of hospitals for the past six months. At first, the doctors could not find out what was wrong with her. They tested her for common diseases but the results all turned out negative. Finally, one doctor diagnosed her with cancer. The family reeled in shock when they heard this. They sought two other doctors' opinions and both of them confirmed the diagnosis. Finally, it was Yasser's mother herself who pulled herself together and faced the truth.

Last week, Yasser's mother collapsed at home in severe pain. His father immediately called for an ambulance. She was sent to the nearest hospital and underwent emergency surgery. The surgery took nearly five hours. Finally, a doctor in scrubs came out of the operating theatre. The family saw his grim face and their hearts sank. The doctor explained that he had removed as much of the tumor as he possibly could. However, there were certain parts that were too difficult to remove. On one hand, the family were relieved that she was alive. On the other hand, they were disappointed that the surgery was not a complete success. The family felt heartbroken to see her in that state.

Over the next three months, Yasser's mother underwent intensive treatment to fight the disease. It was not easy but she was very strong-willed. She refused to let her illness get her down. Her positive attitude affected the rest of the family and they all were very supportive of her. Yasser's father would accompany her for each and every of her medical checkups. Every family member pitched in with the housework so that she need not do anything. It made them stronger and more united.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 Yasser's mother herself who pulled herself together and faced the truth. This means that she was very ..... .
a) frustrated b) afraid c) strong d) pleased

30 Which one of the following pieces of information is not true?
a) Yasser's mother learnt to be strong from her family.
b) Yasser's mother had to undergo emergency surgery.
c) Yasser's mother accepted that she was suffering from cancer.
d) Yasser's mother was sent to the hospital because she had collapsed at home.

31 What does "this" in paragraph one refer to?
a) Yasser's mother being diagnosed with cancer
b) Yasser's mother being very ill
c) Yasser's family being in denial
d) Yasser's mother being in and out of hospital

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

32 Why was the doctor's face grim?
a) The family members were waiting anxiously. b) The surgery took nearly five hours.
c) The surgery had not been very successful. d) The family members were disappointed.

33 Why was Yasser shocked?
a) The family was heartbroken. b) His mother could not breathe properly.
c) He knew that there were still parts of the tumor in her.
d) He had never seen his mother in such a fragile state before.

34 How did the whole family show Yasser's mother their support?
a) They did not let her out of bed.
b) They took care of the household responsibilities.
c) They adopted a positive attitude.
d) They accompanied her for all her medical checkups.

35 The word "confirmed" is the same meaning as ..... .
a) weakened b) approved c) refused d) disagreed

36 The last paragraph teaches us to ..... .
a) Study medicine to treat ourselves b) Appreciate the work of doctors
c) Be positive and cooperative d) Take medicine regularly to avoid diseases

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

37 Money can be used for building new industrial plants, improving health care and solving t problems of housing and transport.

يمكن استخدام الأموال لتكوين نباتات صناعية وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل.
يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل الإسكان والنقل.
يمكن استخدام الأموال لبناء نباتات صناعية وتحسين الرعاية الصحية وحل مشاكل المنازل والنقل.
يمكن أن يستخدم المال لبناء مصانع جديدة وتحسين العناية الصحية وحل مشاكل المنازل والسفر.

38 If children have good manners, they should keep quiet while grown-ups are talking.

إذا كان الأطفال يتمتعون بالأخلاق الحميدة، يجب عليهم التزام الهدوء عندما يتحدث الكبار.
لو يمتلك الأطفال طرقًا جيدة، يجب عليهم التزام الهدوء عندما يكبروا ويتحدثون.
لو يمتلك الصغار عادات اجتماعية، يجب عليهم الهدوء عند الكبر والحديث مع الكبار.
لو يتمتع الأطفال بالأخلاق الحميدة، يجب عليهم الهدوء ليحترمهم الكبار أثناء الحديث.

يستخدم الإنترنت بواسطة المحترفين لتبادل المعلومات وبواسطة الهواة للكتابة أو الدردشة مع بعضهم البعض إلكترونيًا.
a) The internet is used by professionals to change information, and by amateurs to write or chat to each other electronically.
b) The internet is using by experts to exchange information, and by amateurs to write or ch to each other electronically.
c) The internet is used by applicants to exchange information, and by amateurs to write or chat to each other electrically.
d) The internet is used by professionals to exchange information, and by amateurs to write chat to each other electronically.

عندما يختار أصحاب الأعمال الموظفين، فهم غالبًا يفضلون الأشخاص المهرة الموثوق بهم على المهملين الجاهلين.
a) When employers choose the employees, they usually prefer clever and reliable persons t careless and ignorant ones.
b) When employees select the employers, they usually prefer skilled and reliable persons to careless and ignorant ones.
c) When employers select the employees, they usually prefer clever and reliable persons tha careless and ignorant ones.
d) When employees choose the employers, they usually prefer clever and reliable persons than careless and ignorant ones.

Scanned with CamScanner

Unit 9

Starting again

Objectives

- **Reading** : Read an article about three people who have experienced a big change in their lives
- **Writing** : Write an opinion persuasive essay
- **Listening** : An interview with a businessman who helps entrepreneurs to start their own companies
- **Speaking** : Discussing the lessons that can be learnt from older people
- **Language** : Quantifiers: a few, few, a little, little, none, each, every, all
- **Life skills** : Resilience

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

banking procedures (n)	إجراءات بنكية
common sense (n)	تفكير/منطق سليم
contribution (n)	مساهمة/مشاركة
(career) direction (n)	اتجاه/توجه وظيفى
employment (n)	توظيف
life experience (n)	خبرة الحياة
life-changing (n)	تغير الحياة
reinvent (v) (ed)	يحسن/يصلح/يعيد اكتشاف
wisdom (n)	حكمة
working knowledge (n)	معرفة العمل

Vocabulary on Reading

banking (n)	الصرافة/أعمال مصرفية
basic (adj)	أساسى
creative writing (n)	كتابة إبداعية
decision (n)	قرار
entrepreneurs (n)	رواد أعمال
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
experience (v) (d) (n)	يمر بتجربة/تجربة
impact (n)	تأثير
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يوحى بـ
passion (n)	شغف
perfect (adj)	مثالى/تام
positive (adj)	إيجابى
potential (n)	مقدرة/إمكانية
practical (adj)	عملى
procedure (n)	إجراء
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر
question (v) (ed)	يتساءل عن
realise (v) (d)	يدرك
regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
share (v) (d)	يشارك
situation (n)	موقف
surprise (v) (d) (n)	يفاجئ/مفاجأة
title (n)	عنوان/لقب

Workbook Vocabulary

bubble (n)	فقاعة
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
energy (n)	طاقة
fashionable (adj)	مساير للموضة
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
fountain (n)	نافورة مياه
hold (v)	يمسك/يتسع لـ
ingredients (n)	مكونات/مقادير
instructions (n)	إرشادات/تعليمات
major (adj)	رئيسى
pollution (n)	تلوث
public (adj)	عام
recipe (n)	وصفة للطهى
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
seaweed (n)	أعشاب البحر
second-hand (adj)	مستعمل
solar-powered (adj)	مدار بالطاقة الشمسية
sports science (n)	العلوم الرياضية
stressed (adj)	مجهد/مضغوط
transport (n) (v) (ed)	النقل/المواصلات/ينقل
tuk-tuk (n)	التوك توك (وسيلة مواصلات)
value (v) (d) (n)	يقدر/قيمة
vehicle (n)	مركبة
recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

around the world	حول العالم
change direction	يغير اتجاه
gain knowledge	يكتسب المعرفة
have the potential to	لديه المقدرة لـ
help ... with	يساعد فى
prepared to	معد/مجهز لـ
successful as	ناجح كـ
talk to	يتكلم مع
make a difference to	يحدث فرقا فى
make a good decision	يتخذ قرارًا جيدًا
over my life	عبر حياتى
to my surprise	لدهشتى
tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
unable to	غير قادر على
work with	يعمل مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
create	يبدع	creation	إبداع	creative	مبدع
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
direct	يوجه	direction	اتجاه	directive	توجيهى
employ	يوظف	employment	توظيف	employed	موظف
				employable	مناسب للتوظيف
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
instruct	يرشد	instruction	إرشاد	instructional	إرشادى
pollute	يلوث	pollution	تلوث	polluted	ملوث
publish	ينشر	publication	نشر	published	منشور
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recycled	معاد تدويره
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced/ replaceable	مستبدل/يمكن استبداله

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
contribution	مساهمة/مشاركة	participation	negligence تجاهل
direction	اتجاه	course/route	misdirection تضليل/خداع بصرى
encourage	يشجع	boost/inspire	discourage/depress يثبط/لا يشجع
exist	يوجد	live/survive	die/fade يموت/يذبل
major	رئيسى	main/important	minor/secondary فرعى/ثانوى
passion	شغف	feeling/affection	disinterest/indifference عدم اهتمام/لامبالاة
regret	يندم/يأسف	repent/apologise	approve/be content يستحسن/يكون راضيًا
replace	يستبدل	change	hold/keep يحفظ/يبقى
value	يقدر	appreciate	disrespect/despise يزدرى/لا يحترم
wisdom	حكمة	insight	stupidity غباء

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 1

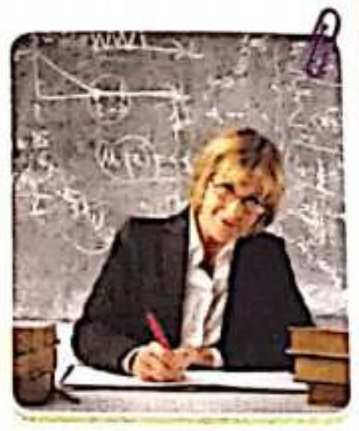
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Young men should learn to value their elders' ..... and advice.
   a) health b) disability c) wisdom d) inspection
2. More and more young people are leaving rural areas to find ..... in factories in big cities.
   a) refreshment b) employment c) relaxation d) tiredness
3. What was the ..... of the flight when the plane crashed?
   a) inspection b) direction c) respect d) instruction
4. Due to COVID-19, world countries ..... that the disease in any country can spread easily to other ones.
   a) retreated b) reflected c) inspected d) realised
5. My uncle, Professor Essam, teaches .....writing at Cairo University.
   a) creative b) ordinary c) strange d) imaginary

Answers 1 c) 2 b) 3 b) 4 d) 5 a)

Reading Text (1)

Nabila, 52



I've always loved writing stories, but I never thought that writing was something that I would get paid to do. In my twenties, I got married and had children, which kept me very busy. When my children grew up, I realised that I hadn't done any writing for years. I decided to take a creative writing(1) class and a year later, at the age of 49, I won first prize in a short story competition.

Then I started writing my first novel and, much to my surprise, quickly found a company that wanted to publish it. The whole experience has been life-changing(2) and I like to think that I can share some of the wisdom(3) I've gained over my life through my books.

Amira, 39

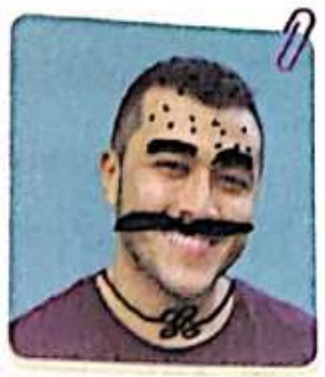
A week after I left school, I started working in a bank and gained a good working knowledge(4) of banking procedures(5). Although I enjoyed helping customers, I never felt that banking was the career for me. I started thinking about what I really wanted to do and I realised it was teaching maths, so I decided to change direction(6) and go to university. It was a huge change in my life and I had to reinvent myself(7) several times, but after having completed my first year as a teacher, I don't regret it at all.

(1) الكتابة الإبداعية
(2) تغير/تغيير الحياة
(3) حكمة
(4) معرفة العمل
(5) إجراءات بنكية
(6) اتجاه
(7) أعيد اكتشاف نفسى

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Sami, 28



Up until I was sixteen, I didn't work very hard at school. My mum was always telling me to do my homework, but I just wanted to play football. Then a teacher told me that I can study sports science at university and become a sports teacher or a football coach, both of which sounded like perfect jobs to me. After that, I tried a lot harder at school and I got into university to study sports science. Now I teach sports at a school and my contribution[8] to my students' lives is to inspire them to enjoy sports. However, I use my life experience[9] to show them that, even though sport is amazing, you also need to work hard at school.

(8) مساهمة/مشاركة

(9) خبرة الحياة

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

The Young Inventor

Many people had a lot of time during the Coronavirus pandemic of 2020 and 2021, but few of them had much time to invent something new! But that is what happened to Suntharalingam Piranawan, when he was unable to go out for many days because of the pandemic. The 15-year-old boy spent almost every day for eight months developing a solar-powered tuk-tuk.

These are small vehicles with three wheels that some people use for transport in Sri Lanka, where he is from.

Suntharalingam's family did not have any money to buy new parts for his tuk-tuk, so the boy's grandfather helped him to buy second-hand pieces of metal from shops for little money. Now, the tuk-tuk works very well using the energy from the sun.

The success of the tuk-tuk has not stopped Suntharalingam. Every day, Suntharalingam tries to think of new things that he can invent. He says that the work helps him not to feel stressed about the Coronavirus or other problems. Next, he wants to build a solar-powered car, but this will need much more money. None of his family can help him with this, so he hopes the government will help him with his plans.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The government pays great attention to producing nuclear ..... for peaceful purpo
   a) energy b) authority c) bomb d) reaction
2. Although my cousin isn't very rich, she buys the most ..... clothes she can afford
   a) fashion b) fashionable c) old-fashioned d) fashionably
3. Could you give me the ..... for that chocolate cake?
   a) list b) remark c) recipe d) recall
4. The players were given strict ..... not to leave the hotel.
   a) knowledge b) experiment c) experience d) instructions
5. Drivers must carry a valid driving licence when operating a motor ..... .
   a) way b) machine c) vehicle d) equipment

Answers (1 c) (2 b) (3 c) (4 d) (5 c)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

banking procedures إجراءات بنكية	steps that workers need to follow to complete a process in a bank
contribution مساهمة/مشاركة	doing something to make a difference to a situation
common sense الفطرة السليمة	a simple understanding of how something works
direction اتجاه	the way something or someone moves, faces, or is aimed/ the general way in which someone or something changes or develops
employment توظيف	when someone is paid to do a job
life experience خبرة الحياة	the knowledge you gain from life
life-changing تغير الحياة	the way that someone is changing or developing their working life
reinvent يحسن/ يصلح	change who you are, e.g. by starting a different job
wisdom حكمة	the ability to use your knowledge of life to make good decisions
working knowledge معرفة العمل	a basic level of practical knowledge

Scanned with CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

1 يستخدم الفعل (employ) بمعنى يوظف ومع إضافة بادئة أو لاحقة قد يتغير المعنى مثل:

employable (adj)	صالح للتوظيف	unemployable (adj)	غير قابل للتوظيف
employee (n)	موظف	employer (n)	صاحب العمل
employment (n)	توظيف/ عمالة	unemployment (n)	البطالة
employed (adj)	موظف	unemployed (adj)	غير موظف

2

instructions
إرشـادات/تعليمات (يجب اتباعها لتشغيل جهاز أو أداء مهمة)

- The salesman advised me to read the instructions carefully before using the new microwave.
- You must obey your coach's instructions to develop your skills.

directions
توجيهات (يجب اتباعها للوصول إلى مكان ما)

- I followed my father's directions, so I reached the new sports centre easily.

3

recipe
وصفة (لطهى نوع محدد من الطعام)

- I enjoy trying out new recipes which some chefs show on their programmes.

prescription
وصفة طبية (روشتة)

- Some drugs are only sold with a prescription.

4

experience

١- خبرة (فى العمل مثلا) ويعتبر اسمًا غير معدود.
٢- تجربة حياتية ويعتبر اسمًا معدودًا.
٣- يمر بتجربة (فى الحياة/العمل).

- The best way to learn is by experience.
- The young woman had some frightening experiences when she was kidnapped by a gang.
- The day I failed the test was one of the worst days I've ever experienced.

experiment

١- تجربة علمية أو معملية.
٢- يقوم بتجربة (لاختبار أو إثبات نظرية أو مفهوم علمى).

- In science classes, students carry out simple laboratory experiments.
- I am totally against researchers experimenting on animals.

Scanned with CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Reading Texts

- In my twenties, I got married and had children, ...
  (twenties) للتعبير عن العقد (العشرينيات) (twenty) استخدام جمع كلمة
- Then I started writing my first novel and, ...
  (start) بعد الفعل (verb + ing) استخدام
- The 15-year-old boy spent almost every day .....
  وليس الجمع فى مثل هذه التعبيرات. (year) استخدام صيغة المفرد
- I started thinking about what I really wanted to do and I realised it was teaching maths.
  هنا كتكملة للجملة بمعنى الاسم (تدريس) وليس تكملة المضارع المستمر. (verb + ing) استخدام
- After that, I tried a lot harder at school and I got into university to study sports science.
  للتعبير عن الاختلاف الكبير فى درجة المقارنة بمعنى (بجد أكثر بكثير). (harder) قبل مقارنة الظرف (a lot) استخدام

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't recommend trying this ..... because it contains lots of fat.
   a) prescription
   b) research
   c) recipe
   d) consequence
2. Excuse me, could you please give me ..... to the movie theatre?
   a) instructions
   b) directions
   c) guides
   d) outlines
3. The children in primary 3 did some ..... with magnets.
   a) experiences
   b) exams
   c) explorations
   d) experiments
4. In the future world of work, you have to develop your skills to remain .....
   a) employable
   b) employer
   c) unemployed
   d) employment

Answers 1) a 2) b 3) d 4) a

Scanned with CamScanner

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. Dr Zewail was awarded the Nobel Prize for his ..... in chemistry and medicine.
   a) affection b) contribution c) preference d) priority
2. Some kinds of jobs don't require much training because they are based on .....sense.
   a) common b) strange c) bad d) odd
3. It is very hard to change ..... and start a new career at the age of fifty.
   a) instruction b) collection c) direction d) perfection
4. The former factory worker has ..... himself as a respectable office clerk.
   a) innovated b) proclaimed c) reclaimed d) reinvented
5. Mr. Sami has a good working ..... of accounting, so he was employed by a big company.
   a) intention b) application c) knowledge d) perfection
6. As a grandparent, your life ..... is one of the greatest things you have.
   a) experiment b) experience c) relaxation d) disaster
7. A/An ..... is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.
   a) entrepreneur b) explorer c) proclaimer d) director
8. The young woman left her job to pursue her lifelong ..... for painting and became a successful artist.
   a) fiction b) passion c) perfection d) detention
9. I really admire people who can turn a negative situation into a ..... one.
   a) defective b) detective c) terrible d) positive
10. Applicants of the job should have training and ..... experience in electronics.
    a) practical b) valueless c) horrible d) terrible
11. Tourist authorities are trying to exploit يستغل our full ..... as a tourist destination.
    a) desire b) potential c) demerit d) disadvantage
12. New employees are taught the proper safety ..... in the building.
    a) tactics b) results c) procedures d) roles
13. I ..... lending him the money. He never paid it back.
    a) expect b) regret c) prospect d) admire
14. The discovery of oil has ..... in the development of industry.
    a) split b) divided c) shared d) detected
15. The crowd gathered around the ..... of water in the middle of the square.
    a) fountain b) machine c) hole d) closet

Scanned with CamScanner

16 By law, smoking is currently prohibited in most ..... places such as cinemas and theatres.
a) general b) private c) public d) remote

17 This company's products are organic as they use only natural ..... .
a) quantities b) consumers c) graduates d) ingredients

18 ..... is a plant that grows in the sea, or on rocks at the edge of the sea.
a) Seaweed b) Cucumber c) Cactus d) Acacia

19 People should be encouraged to use public ..... if we want to reduce our carbon emissions.
a) transplant b) transport c) transfusion d) transmission

20 The government is encouraging people to ..... their rubbish to help the environment.
a) remake b) replace c) cycle d) recycle

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 When I saw Mr. Ayman, I regretted thinking badly of him. The synonym of the verb "regret" is "..... ".
a) rejoice b) refresh c) repent d) reply

22 It is hard for women to combine paid ..... and care for their families.
a) employ b) employment c) employee d) employer

23 Dr Magdy Yacoub's works have ..... a difference to heart surgery.
a) done b) devised c) designed d) made

24 Because he had excellent qualifications, he was successful ..... a computer programmer.
a) as b) in c) at d) for

25 We all value our parents' efforts to make us better persons. The antonym of the word "value" is "..... ".
a) award b) reward c) honour d) disrespect

26 Most newspapers and magazines are made of ..... paper to save money.
a) cycled b) remarkable c) recycled d) refused

27 We all ..... valuable knowledge at the course we attended in the language centre.
a) won b) gained c) beat d) lost

28 Good friends are those who always encourage you to succeed. The verb "encourage" is similar in meaning to the verb "..... ".
a) boost b) detest c) depress d) impress

29 ..... my surprise, the whole family was at my cousin's wedding.
a) In b) At c) To d) For

30 It is said that the English have a passion for gardens. The opposite of the noun "passion" is "..... ".
a) affection b) disinterest c) admiration d) exception

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

Quantifiers المحددات

المحددات هى كلمات أو عبارات توضع قبل الأسماء لبيان الكمية أو العدد وهناك محددات للأسماء المعدودة وأخرى لغير المعدودة.

Countable and Uncountable nouns with some adjectives and determiners

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة مع بعض الصفات والكلمات المحددة مثل some/much/all, etc.

Countable		Uncountable	Examples
✓	all	✓	e.g. All cats are mammals ثدييات. They have eaten all the food.
✓	most	✓	e.g. Most students are absent. I like most Egyptian food.
✗	much	✓	e.g. I don't need much tea. How much time have we got?
✓	many	✗	e.g. He doesn't need many shirts. How many books did you buy?
✓	a lot of lots of	✓	e.g. There were a lot of people at the meeting. There was a lot of rain.
✓	plenty of	✓	There is plenty of evidence that he is guilty. There are plenty of opportunities to improve your skills.
✓	some	✓	e.g. Some of his books are exciting. We need some butter. Would you like some tea? العرض (offer)
✓	any	✓	e.g. Do you want any books? فى السؤال I don't need any books/water. فى النفى
✓	several	✗	e.g. Several buildings were damaged by the explosion.
✗	a little	✓	e.g. They have a little money. (قليل ولكن يكفى)
✗	little	✓	e.g. They have very little money. (not enough لا يكفى)
✓	a few	✗	e.g. I've read a few of her books that's why I like her style of writing. = some قليل ويكفى للعدد
✓	few	✗	e.g. Few people came to the meeting, so we postponed it. قليل ولا يكفى
✓	none of	✓	e.g. None of the trains is/are going to Assuit. لا أحد None of the information given to me was helpful. لا شىء

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is ..... cheese in the fridge.
   a) any b) many c) a little d) a few
2. They managed to complete the project without ..... help.
   a) any b) some c) many d) a lot
3. It was hard but we have done ..... of the work finally.
   a) several b) any c) many d) much
4. She doesn't speak English well. She knows only ..... expressions.
   a) many b) a few c) much d) a little
5. How ..... food do we need for ten people?
   a) much b) more c) little d) many

Answers 1) a 2) d 3) b 4) b 5) a

لاحظ

نستخدم most بمعنى معظم للمعدود وغير المعدود وهى صفة التفضيل من many/much/a lot of ويمكن استخدام most of the

- She had the most money of all of them.
- Most classical music sends me to sleep.
- It was Sunday and most of the shops were shut.

نستخدم the most of something بمعنى يستغل أحسن استغلال.

- It's my first trip abroad so I'm going to make the most of it.

نستخدم much/many فى الإثبات والنفى والسؤال ويأتى قبلها so, too ويستخدمان بعد How للسؤال عن الكمية أو العدد.

- I don't have many friends.
- Do you get many visitors?
- You've put too much salt in the soup.
- There are too many cars on the road.
- How much sugar would you like in your tea?
- How many books have you read so far?

نستخدم a lot of/lots of مع المعدود وغير المعدود فى الإثبات ولا يأتى قبلها so, too ولا يستخدمان بعد How .

- A lot of salt is harmful to your health.
- There were a lot of people at the wedding.
- The internet gives us lots of information on everything.
- The bus is late and lots of people are waiting for it.

Scanned with CamScanner

٤- تستخدم some فى الجملة المثبتة بمعنى بعض وتستخدم فى السؤال فى العرض والطلب ولا تستخدم فى النفى.

- The doctor gave her some medicine for her cough.
- Some people believe in life after death.
- Would you like to have some juice?

٥- تستخدم any غالبا فى الجملة المنفية والسؤال بمعنى أى، وهى كلمة مثبتة ولذلك تحتاج إلى نفى الفعل المساعد معها على العكس من no التى هى نفى بذاتها ولا تحتاج إلى نفى الفعل المساعد.

- Do you need anything else to buy?
- I don't need to buy anything.
- I walked to my shop because I had no money to take a taxi.

وتستخدم فى الجملة المثبتة أيضا بمعنى أى.

- Any child who breaks the rules will be punished.

٦- تستخدم several للعدد بمعنى بضع أو عديد لأكثر من اثنين ولكن ليس للكثير.

- Several of her colleagues agreed with her decision.

٧- تستخدم little بمعنى قليل ولا يكفى وa little بمعنى قليل ويكفى لغير المعدود.

- If you are tired, why don't you have a little sleep in the car?
- I'm sorry I can't understand you. I speak little French.

٨- تستخدم few بمعنى قليل ولا يكفى وa few بمعنى قليل ويكفى للمعدود.

- I have to buy a few things at the supermarket.
- Few people knew he was ill.

٩- يمكن أن نستخدم little مع المعدود بمعنى صغير الحجم أو السن أو غير مهم .

- There are some little things to do this evening.

١٠- تستخدم none للمعدود بمعنى لا أحد، وبعدها الفعل جمع أو مفرد ولغير المعدود بمعنى لا شىء، والفعل بعدها مفرد وتشير إلى أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين.

- None of the juice was drunk.
- None of the trains is/are going to Aswan.
- None of her books has/have been read.

Narrative tenses ازمنة سرد الاحداث

- Narrative tenses are the tenses that we usually use to tell stories about things that have happened.

الأزمنة السردية هى الأزمنة التى نستخدمها عادة لرواية القصص حول الأشياء التى حدثت ونستخدم الأزمنة الآتية لسرد أحداث القصص:

The past simple الماضى البسيط

استخدم هذا الزمن للأفعال التى اكتملت فى الماضى ويتكون من التصريف الثانى للفعل:

- I started work when I was eighteen years old.

The past continuous الماضى المستمر

استخدم هذا الزمن لنشاط كان يحدث وتمت مقاطعته بحدث آخر فى الماضى.

- While I was working in that office, I met some very interesting people.

نستخدم هذا الزمن لنشاط كان يحدث فى وقت محدد فى الماضى.

- I was revising my lessons at 7 pm yesterday.

نستخدم هذا الزمن لحدثين حدثا فى نفس الوقت فى الماضى.

- While Ali was having an online lecture, his brother was playing video games.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

The past perfect الماضى التام

نستخدم هذا الزمن لأى حدث تم فى الماضى قبل فعل آخر مرتبط به.

- I was on the way to the job interview when I realised that I had forgotten my keys.

The past perfect continuous الماضى التام المستمر

نستخدم هذا الزمن لحدث كان يحدث لفترة من الوقت قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى.

- I had been waiting for half an hour when the train arrived.

The present perfect simple المضارع التام

نستخدم لحدث تم فى الماضى وما زال أثره باقيا أو لحدث بدأ فى الماضى وما زال يحدث.

- I've been at this school since 2019.

The present perfect continuous المضارع التام المستمر

نستخدم هذا الزمن للحدث الذى بدأ فى الماضى ولا يزال يحدث الآن والتركيز يكون على الحدث نفسه.

- We've been reading Taha Husien's books for years and we really enjoy them.

The present simple المضارع البسيط

نستخدم المضارع البسيط لسرد الأحداث لجعل الأحداث والأفعال أكثر دراماتيكية.

- The lion kills the knight and disappears into the forest.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Then his friend finds the diamonds, ... the girl and stops the criminal.
   a) saves b) saved c) saving d) save
2. While he was travelling across Europe, Akram ..... COVID-19.
   a) was catching b) caught c) catches d) had caught
3. When I arrived home, my father wasn't there. He ..... out.
   a) goes b) will go c) had gone d) has gone
4. It was raining when I ..... the house this morning.
   a) have left b) left c) leave d) had left
5. So, the invisible man came into the shop and ..... down.
   a) walks b) had been walking c) had walked d) walked

Answers 1 d) 2 a) 3 d) 4 b) 5 a)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to make a cake but I don't have ..... flour.
   a) many b) some c) much d) a few
2. It was the worst birthday that ever happened to me. ..... friends visited me.
   a) Many b) A few c) Much d) Few
3. I need ..... money. Could you lend me 5 pounds?
   a) a little b) many c) a few d) few
4. It's too dark in the room, I can hardly see ..... here.
   a) nothing b) anything c) something d) everything
5. How ..... questions are you going to ask in your interview?
   a) much b) a little c) any d) many
6. I couldn't buy anything as ..... of the shops were open.
   a) many b) none c) no one d) all
7. You needn't worry, there is ..... of time.
   a) plenty b) a few c) some d) a little
8. We cannot afford a meal in this restaurant. We have ..... pounds left.
   a) many b) a few c) few d) little
9. How ..... paper do we use in the office daily?
   a) much b) many c) some d) long
10. There is plenty of meat, but there is not ..... bread.
    a) plenty b) many c) a lot d) much
11. We need ..... fat in a healthy diet.
    a) many b) some c) a lot d) any
12. We have some bread, but we don't have ..... butter.
    a) some b) any c) few d) several
13. How ..... information have you got from the story?
    a) far b) many c) much d) lots
14. There are ..... books on the shelf. They are not enough.
    a) many b) any c) a lot of d) few
15. We live a boring life. We never go ..... .
    a) anywhere b) everywhere c) somewhere d) nowhere
16. I haven't seen my sister for ..... years.
    a) lots b) much c) every d) many
17. We may not finish repairs in time. We need ..... extra hands.
    a) a little b) few c) some d) much
18. We left a glass of water on the windowsill for some days. Now ..... of the water has evaporated.
    a) most b) many c) several d) any
19. We do not need to hurry, there is ..... time before the plane takes off.
    a) little b) lots of c) many d) a few
20. ..... of us has ever approved of playing football in the street.
    a) Little b) Any c) None d) Much

Scanned with CamScanner

21 ..... of the students in the class could solve the problem.
a) None b) No c) Little d) Every

22 You don't have to worry about lunch ..... plenty of restaurants nearby.
a) there is b) there are
c) there was d) there has been

23 Her husband is always busy. He never does ..... household tasks.
a) some b) every c) nothing d) any

24 There were so ..... people in the queue that it was impossible to get on the bus.
a) many b) much c) few d) a lot

25 The attack on the shop caused ..... damage.
a) a few b) few c) a lot of d) many

26 Oh! That's ..... rice! I don't want to put on more weight.
a) not enough b) too little c) little d) too much

27 There is ..... salt in this soup. It's tasteless.
a) few b) hardly any c) many d) several

28 Can you count how ..... grains of sand are on a beach?
a) much b) any c) many d) some

29 He needs ..... bread to make a sandwich.
a) a few b) a lot of c) many d) a loaf of

30 There are two or three ..... things to look at.
a) few b) little c) a few d) many

31 I was watching TV while the kids ..... in the garden.
a) had played b) played c) were playing d) playing

32 The boy was listening to music when the door bell ..... .
a) ringed b) rang c) was ringing d) had rung

33 I was doing exercise while my dog was playing in the garden. Now I ..... it.
a) haven't seen b) wasn't seeing c) am not seeing d) don't see

34 They ..... everything out of the cupboards and thrown it on the floor.
a) have taken b) take c) took d) will take

35 My letter did not arrive because I ..... to put a stamp on it .
a) forget b) had forgotten
c) was forgetting d) have forgotten

36 When I opened the curtains this morning, I realised it ..... all night.
a) had snowed b) was snowing
c) snowed d) had been snowing

37 Then the prince ..... on the horse and quickly rides away.
a) gets b) had got c) got d) was getti

38 We ..... on the beach when it started to rain.
a) sat b) sit c) were sitting d) are sitting

39 While I was shopping, my purse ..... .
a) had stolen b) stole c) steals d) was stole

40 When Belal ..... the book, she lent it to me.
a) has read b) had read c) was reading d) reads

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Unfortunately, many young people fail to see the ..... in their parents' decisions.
a) practice b) wisdom c) experiment d) stupidity

2 The UN organisation fights for ..... human rights throughout the world.
a) cultured b) scientific c) basic d) natural

3 All national newspapers in Egypt such as Al Ahram are ..... daily.
a) published b) spread c) prevailed d) outdated

4 The wind changed ..... and started blowing in a southerly one.
a) affection b) description c) instruction d) direction

5 Due to the company's bad financial ....., there will be no salary increases this year.
a) profile b) post c) situation d) structure

6 Paper bags have been completely ..... by plastic bags in most supermarkets.
a) relied b) replaced c) replied d) defied

7 The new Al Ahly Stadium is expected to ..... more than sixty thousand spectators.
a) hold b) exclude c) involve d) carry

8 Ahmed Shawky is a major poet in modern Arabic poetry. The antonym of the adjective "major" is "....."
a) minor b) main c) necessary d) detested

9 I'm going to the supermarket to pick up food and drink. Is there ..... you need?
a) anything b) something c) nothing d) some things

10 The driver could see ..... because of the rain. The road was becoming more and more dangerous.
a) a lot b) many c) much d) little

11 ..... of my friends came to my birthday party, even though I invited them all.
a) Any b) Few c) Much d) A lot

12 He hasn't got ..... furniture in his house.
a) a lot b) much c) many d) some

13 There are ..... things you can do to help.
a) plenty b) much c) a little d) many

14 Will you bring me ..... sugar, please?
a) any b) some c) few d) a lot

15 I was relieved to hear that ..... of my friends was killed in the accident.
a) lots b) some c) many d) none

16 There ..... a lot of people at the party last night.
a) is b) was c) were d) are

17 The ..... is used to separate sentences in a complex sentence when we start with the conjunction.
a) apostrophe b) colon c) semicolon d) comma

18 Choose the sentence that is correctly punctuated.
a) The policeman said we had to make a U:turn after 100 metres.
b) The policeman said we had to make a U,turn after 100 metres.
c) The policeman said we had to make a U-turn after 100 metres.
d) The policeman said we had to make a U;turn after 100 metres.

Scanned with CamScanner

19 Choose the best topic sentence: [.....] It is still the main means of entertainment in our homes. It also shows some educational programmes which students can benefit from. It also can add to our general knowledge due to the cultural programmes it shows:

a) TV is the main source of wasting our time.
b) TV has a lot of merits nowadays.
c) Like all inventions, TV has its pros and cons.
d) I recommend that you don't watch TV much.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Man's life has been subjected to a lot of change during the last hundred years particularly in what is connected to his consuming habits. Sixty years ago, before the start of the consumer societies of today's world, people did not throw away so many of the things they used. They used and re-used bottles, jars, cardboard boxes, paper bags, etc. much more carefully than we do today. Now, more than fifty years later, we are returning to the same good idea which we now call "recycling".

We are again thinking about what we throw out. Why do we throw away so much food packaging, so many plastic supermarket bags, old newspapers, old books, bottles and cans? What is all this rubbish doing to our environment, to the world we live in? Can't we use some of it again? The answer is: Yes, we can. New industries - recycling industries are starting to re-use some of our rubbish. For example, the island of Taiwan now buys tonnes of waste paper from the USA and recycles it to make newspapers, and for use in offices and homes. Japan takes scrap metal from the USA and makes some parts of new cars with it. Most European and American cities now have " recycling centres" for people's old bottles and newspapers.

All this recycling is not only good for the environment but it is good for business, too. For instance, a recycled aluminium container is 20% cheaper to make than a new one. For both the environment and the economy, recycling makes very good sense.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 In what way can we describe our grandparents?
a) They were less careful than we are today.
b) They were more wasteful than we are today.
c) They were less wise than we are today.
d) They were more economic than we are today.

21 How can we call our society nowadays?
a) We are still a consuming society.
b) We are still a productive society.
c) We are still an advanced society.
d) We are still a civilised society.

22 What is the good idea we are returning to nowadays?
a) Using much more plastic containers.
b) Throwing away old newspapers.
c) Reusing what we throw away by recycling.
d) Making newspapers out of metal.

Scanned with CamScanner

23 In what way should we follow in other countries?

a) Playing new games.

b) Starting new recycling centres.

c) Spending much money on food.

d) Making wars everywhere.

24 What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

a) Car industry. b) Paper Industry. c) Scrap metal. d) Spare part.

25 For what is recycling useful?

a) Environment and business. b) Our neighbouring countries.

c) Education and politics. d) Our everyday habits.

26 Our grandparents weren't more ..... than us today.

a) wise b) wasteful c) generous d) careful

27 ..... is an industry that makes use of rubbish.

a) Consuming b) Making newspapers c) Economy d) Education

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 The smart car sounds like a great invention in our modern age. It can tell the motorist which way he/she should take. Moreover, it defines the problem and gives the solution.

a) إن صوت السيارة الذكية اختراع رائع فى عصرنا الحديث فهى تستطيع إخبار الموتور بالطريق التى يجب أن يسلكها وعلاوة على ذلك فهى تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.

b) تبدو السيارة الذكية اختراعًا رائعًا فى عصرنا الحديث فهى تستطيع إخبار الموتور بالطريق التى يجب أن يسلكها/تسلكها ومع ذلك فهى تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.

c) تبدو السيارة الذكية اختراعًا رائعًا فى عصرنا الحديث فهى تستطيع إخبار السائق بالطريق التى يجب أن يسلكها/تسلكها وعلاوة على ذلك فهى تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.

d) تبدو السيارة الجميلة اختراعًا رائعًا فى عصرنا الحديث فهى تستطيع إخبار السائق بالطريق التى يجب أن يسلكها/تسلكها وعلاوة على ذلك فهى تحدد المشكلة وتعطى الحل.

29 A good role model serves as an example for inspiring and motivating us to work hard to uncover our true inner potentials.

a) يعد القدوة الجيدة مثالًا يلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد للكشف عن إمكاناتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.

b) يعتبر دور النموذج الجيد مثالًا يلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد لمعرفة إمكاناتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.

c) يعد النموذج دورًا جيدًا يلهمنا ويحفزنا على العمل الجاد لمعرفة طاقاتنا الداخلية الحقيقية.

d) يعد القدوة دورًا جيدًا يلهمنا ويمكننا من العمل الجاد لمعرفة طاقاتنا الداخلية الصادقة.

30 تعد مبادرة «حياة كريمة» وتطوير الريف المصرى من أفضل المشروعات لترسيخ حقوق الإنسان.

a) The initiative "Haya Karima" and Egyptian Rural Development are one of the best projects to establish human rights.

b) The initiative "Haya Karima" Egyptian urban Development are one of the best projects to recognise human rights.

c) The start "Haya Karima" Egyptian Rural Development are one of the best projects to neglect human rights.

d) The treaty "Haya Karima" Egyptian urban Development Project are one of the best projects to understand human rights.

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

active (adj)	نشيط
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدٍّ/يتحدى
debate (n)	جدال/مناظرة
exception (n)	استثناء
factor (n)	عامل/عنصر
generation (n)	جيل
member (n)	عضو
necessarily (adv)	ضروريا
optimistic (adj)	متفائل
passionate (adj)	شغوف/متحمس
physically (adv)	جسديا
pointless (adj)	بلا هدف/غير مبرر
refreshing (adj)	منعش/مريح
remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/يظل
retire (v) (d)	يتقاعد
typical (adj)	نموذجي/مثالي
United Nations (n)	الأمم المتحدة

Workbook Vocabulary

adult (n)	بالغ
care home (n)	بيت رعاية مسنين
care for (v) (d)	يعتنى بـ
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر
contact (n) (v) (ed)	اتصال/يتصل
elderly (adj)	كبير السن
ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل
law (n)	قانون
mean (v)	يعنى/يقصد
mentally (adv)	عقليًا/نفسيًا
neighbour (n)	جار
possible (adj)	ممكن
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
rely (v) (~~x~~ied)	يعتمد
respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام/يحترم
suffix (n)	لاحقة
translate (v) (d)	يترجم

Scanned with CamScanner

Phrases & Expressions & Idioms & prepositions

after all	على أى حال	in turns	بتبادل الأدوار
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	keep you healthy	تبقيك بصحة جيدة
at that age	فى ذلك السن	make a contribution	يقوم بمساهمة
get useful advice	يحصل على نصيحة مفيدة	show them respect	يظهر لهم الاحترام
have a positive impact	لديه تأثير إيجابى	take it easy	يسترخى/يأخذ الأمور ببساطة
have very little contact	له اتصال قليل جدا	to some extent	إلى حد ما
contact with	اتصال مع	respect for	احترام لـ
passionate about	شغوف/متحمس بشأن	translate as	يترجم كـ
rely on	يعتمد على	typical of	نموذجى لـ

Special Phrases

a further reason	سبب آخر	in addition	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى	in my opinion	فى رأيى
owing to	بسبب	because of	بسبب
the first thing to consider	أول شىء يجب مراعاته	first of all	قبل كل شىء
to conclude	لكى نستنتج	in conclusion	فى الختام
we cannot ignore	لا يمكننا أن نتجاهل	don't forget that	لا تنس أن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	ينشط/يتصرف	action	فعل/تصرف	active	نشيط
consider	يعتبر	consideration	اعتبار	considerable	جدير بالاعتبار
except	يستثنى	exception	استثناء	exceptional	استثنائى
ignore	يتجاهل/يجهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل
----------		passion	شغف	passionate	شغوف
refresh	ينعش	refreshment	انتعاش	refreshing	منعش
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respected respectful respectable	محترم (بسبب أفعاله) محترم (مع الآخرين) جدير بالاحترام
retire	يتقاعد	retirement	تقاعد	retired	متقاعد
translate	يترجم	translation	ترجمة	translated	مترجم

Scanned with CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
consider	يعتبر	acknowledge/regard	neglect/reject يتجاهل/ينبذ
ignore	يتجاهل	overlook	regard/notice يلاحظ
mentally	نفسيا	psychologically	physically جسديا
necessarily	ضروريا	essentially	optionally اختياريا
passionate	شغوف	excited/enthusiastic	indifferent غير مبال
pointless	بلا هدف/غير مبرر	absurd/ridiculous	sensible عاقل
regularly	بانتظام	routinely/usually	uncommonly/irregularly بشكل عادى/غير منتظم
remain	يبقى	stay/persist	cease/depart يتوقف
respect	يحترم	admire/honour	disregard/disrespect لا يحترم/لا يقدر
typical	نموذجى/مثالى	classic/ideal	different/rare مختلف/نادر

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The appointment of a new coach for the Egyptian football team caused a lot of .....
   a) treaty b) debate
   c) inspection d) agreement
2. Poor organisation was certainly a main ..... to the bad economic situation in our company.
   a) fracture b) actor
   c) factor d) tractor
3. Youssef Shaheen is regarded as one of the most influential film directors of his .....
   a) generation b) acceleration
   c) contribution d) application
4. My grandfather had worked as an engineer in a company for 30 years before he ..... at the age of sixty.
   a) directed b) retrained
   c) relieved d) retired
5. Despite the big problem, we are still ..... that the factory can be saved.
   a) desperate b) pessimistic
   c) optimistic d) released

Answers 1) b 2) c 3) a 4) d 5) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

A @raufb: It's great that the writer's grandma is still able to do volunteer work and learn new things, but I don't think she's typical[1] of most people of her age, who just want to stay at home and take it easy. Our society is organised in such a way that the over-70s are asked to stay inactive and not to do much work. They retire and try to enjoy life. So I think the discussion about whether or not this group contributes to society is a bit pointless[2].

B @silvo: I really enjoyed this article. It was so refreshing to hear an optimistic[3] story about a member of the older generation who's keeping active and still looking for new challenges[4] and adventures. Maybe in the past, people thought that you were old when you were over 70, but now it isn't seen as being very old anymore and most people have to work until they're 67 or even older anyway.

C @thomato: I think it's an interesting debate[5] whether or not people can still make a contribution to society when they're older. One big advantage that many over-70s have is that they don't have to work anymore so they can spend their time on things that they're passionate[6] about and many of them help to look after their grandchildren too.

Of course, most people aren't as physically[7] active as they used to be at that age, but they can still contribute in other ways.

(1) نموذجي/مثالي
(2) يتقاعد
(3) بلا هدف
(4) متفائل
(5) تحديات
(6) جدال
(7) شغوف
(8) جسديا

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

How different societies around the world view older people

You probably see your grandparents every week, or maybe they live with you and your parents. However, in some countries, young people have very little contact with older people. Let's take a look at why this is, and how older people are seen around the world.

The United Nations has the International Day for Older Persons each October, which celebrates the contributions that older people make to society. In fact, many countries already show their respect for older people in the way they speak to them. For example, many African languages use the word mzee before an older person's name to show them respect. In Japan, the suffix –san is used in the same way. In Hawaiian, older people are called kupuna, which translates as something like wisdom.

In Egypt, many elderly people are cared for by their children or other family members. This is the same in countries such as China, Japan and Korea, where around 75% of elderly people live with their adult children. However, this situation has changed in recent years. In Egypt and other countries like India, many people have moved to the cities to find work, which means they do not live near their family home. As a result, some people are not able to look after their parents when they get older.

Scanned with CamScanner

A few countries like China have introduced laws to make sure that children visit their parents regularly to make sure they are cared for. There is a similar law in France. In other countries, such as the UK, few elderly parents live with their families. This can mean that many elderly people need to rely on neighbours or other members of society to help them. If they are ill or less able, elderly people have to live in care homes.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Why people over 65 should continue to work.

From my point of view, some people aged over 65 should continue to work if they want to, but not all of them. I'll explain why I think this.

The first thing to consider is the job that people do. Many people enjoy their work, so why should they stop when they get to 65? For example, in Scotland, 79-year-old Tom Swan has worked in a shop for 60 years. He enjoys meeting the people who come in.

A further reason is that work can keep you healthy. Brian Denney from England helps older people with their money, although he is 82! He thinks that he would be less healthy mentally and physically if he stayed at home all day.

However, we cannot ignore the fact that it is not possible for all people to continue working, for example, builders. Owing to the physical work they do every day, they would not be able to continue working into their 70s or older.

To conclude, I believe people should be able to continue working if they are able to and want to, but I also realise that this is not possible in some jobs and for some people.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The oil extracted from olive trees is ..... to be healthy.
   a) avoided b) rehearsed c) replied d) considered
2. Society has to be prepared to support its ..... people in their retirement.
   a) young b) elderly c) fresh d) eldest
3. Many working women ..... on relatives to help take care of their children.
   a) rely b) regard c) consider d) employ
4. We must ..... the freedom of other people around us. We don't live on our own.
   a) detest b) dislike c) respect d) neglect
5. I felt extremely comfortable, both physically and ..... after the trip to Hurghada.
   a) relatively b) scientifically c) mentally d) respectfully

Answers 1 d) 2 b) 3 a) 4 c) 5 c)

Scanned with CamScanner

Focus on Vocabulary

care home (n) بيت رعاية مسنين	a building where people who are old or ill live and are looked after
debate (n) جدال/مناظرة	discussion of a particular subject that often continues for a long time and in which people express different opinions
factor (n) عامل	one of several things that influence or cause a situation
retire (v) (d) يتقاعد	to stop working, usually because you have reached a certain age

Notes on Vocabulary

1 **retire** يتقاعد/يعتزل (العمل) I retired from teaching three years ago.

resign يستقيل من عمله The minister was forced to resign after the terrible train accident.

2 **optimistic** متفائل *believing that good things will happen*
I'm optimistic about our chances of winning a gold medal in the next Olympics. (an optimistic view of the future)

hopeful مفعم بالأمل *believing that what you hope for will happen*
The test results made him feel more hopeful about his chances of recovery.

positive إيجابى *thinking about what is good in a situation, rather than what is bad*
She has a very positive attitude to life.

3 **typical** نموذجى/مثالى *a typical person or thing is a good example of that type of person or thing*
With his camera around his neck, he looked like a typical tourist.

classic كلاسيكى *used to describe a very typical and very good example of something*
The book is a classic example of great teamwork.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The manager was forced to ..... his post after accusations of corruption الفساد.
a) resign b) retire c) employ d) promote

2 "Star Wars" is a ..... science fiction which started an era of films about space.
a) atypical b) classic c) old-fashioned d) vague

3 His family played a very ..... role in his life and success.
a) optimistic b) hopeful c) positive d) vain

4 By 2030, employees will ..... from work at the age of 61.
a) hire b) employ c) resign d) retire

Answers (1 a) (2 b) (3 c) (4 d)

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The actress is a big and ..... defender of women's rights.
a) depressed b) detested c) detected d) passionate

2 On the beach, the breeze was so cool and ..... that I felt very relaxed.
a) refreshing b) oppressing c) discouraging d) exhausting

3 The memory of that day will ..... with me for the rest of my life.
a) leave b) remind c) remain d) decease

4 Every staff ..... is offered training in customer care.
a) organ b) member c) enemy d) customer

5 Most of my family are sports enthusiasts, but my uncle is the ..... to the rule.
a) innovation b) perception c) exception d) inspection

6 The company is ready to meet the ..... of the next few years.
a) challenges b) earnings c) differences d) profits

7 The windows of the building are ..... of houses built during the last century.
a) alike b) different c) representative d) typical

8 A/An ..... home is a building where people who are old or ill live and are looked after.
a) school b) care c) nursery d) elderly

9 You can ..... the computer company for advice by phone or email.
a) contact b) conduct c) connect d) link

10 Stress affects nearly everybody in society from teenagers to ..... people.
a) disabled b) odd c) young d) elderly

11 The worker was ..... and physically exhausted after the accident in the mine.
a) fearlessly b) mentally c) uselessly d) vaguely

12 Not changing the oil ..... will shorten the life of the engine.
a) regularly b) uselessly c) helplessly d) defensively

13 We were taught to show ..... for older people.
a) detest b) disregard c) respect d) defence

14 If we continue to ..... problems they will only get worse.
a) deal b) tackle c) solve d) ignore

15 Most folk music songs haven't been written down. They pass through ..... .
a) arguments b) generations c) fights d) festivals

16 Studies have established that smoking is a risk ..... for cancer.
a) factor b) fiction c) mission d) prevention

Scanned with CamScanner

17 It's ..... telling Samir to go to bed early – he will never do it.
a) useful b) pointless c) intelligent d) hardly

18 Most charities completely ..... on donations from the public.
a) defy b) purify c) rely d) testify

19 Children must be accompanied by a/an ..... in this museum.
a) colleague b) assistant c) adult d) servant

20 The leaders of the most important parties had a televised ..... about their policies.
a) debate b) fight c) discussion d) dispute

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 Mr. Salah is a ..... person. He always tells the truth.
a) rely b) reliance c) relied d) reliable

22 The care of old people necessarily involves quite a lot of heavy lifting. The adverb "necessarily" can be replaced by the adverb "....."
a) optionally b) essentially c) gradually d) regularly

23 We should all appreciate the people who ..... a contribution to our society.
a) did b) took c) made d) gave

24 This is a Spanish word that mainly translates ..... 'unease'.
a) as b) into c) for d) at

25 My sister is very passionate about music. The synonym of the word " passionate" is "....."
a) tired b) depressed c) deceased d) enthusiastic

26 Sorrowfully, the office clerk showed a remarkable ..... of needful office skills.
a) ignore b) ignorance c) ignored d) ignorant

27 On a typical weekend, I get up late and visit my grandfather. The antonym of "typical" is "....."
a) perfect b) ideal c) different d) traditional

28 Working hard ..... a positive impact on everyone's success in life.
a) does b) has c) gives d) devises

29 The doctor advised me to ..... it easy and have fun for a few weeks.
a) play b) do c) make d) take

30 We all respect Mohamed Salah for his great achievements. The verb "respect" is the opposite of the verb "....."
a) admire b) disregard c) rely d) honour

Scanned with CamScanner

(B) Language

Quantifiers: all, each, every

1 All

e.g. All my hair is still black. All pupils are asked to bring their activity books.

We use all with a singular verb with uncountable nouns, but with a plural verb with countable nouns:

نستخدم all والفعل مفرد مع الأسماء غير المعدودة والفعل جمع مع الأسماء المعدودة.

All + uncountable noun + فعل مفرد

- All the food is in the fridge.

All + countable noun + فعل جمع

- All students are happy when the vacation comes.
- All Mona's money is at home, so all her friends are helping her.

لاحظ

١- إذا جاءت all أول الجملة تنفى بـ Not all.

- Not all my friends came to my party.

٢- كلمة whole بمعنى كل أيضا ولكن نستخدم the قبلها وبعدها اسم يعد.

- I had read the whole book, but I found it boring.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All my money ..... in the wallet which was stolen two days ago.
   a) were b) has been
   c) was d) have been
2. All of the products sold here ..... made by hand.
   a) was b) has been
   c) is d) were
3. It is disappointing to find that all the rooms in the hotel ..... booked.
   a) has been b) have been
   c) was d) had been
4. Huda wastes her time playing video games ..... day.
   a) all b) some
   c) the other d) any
5. I invited ..... my friends to my party, but only few of them came.
   a) some b) few of
   c) all d) none of

Answers 1) c 2) d 3) b 4) a 5) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Every - Each

Every and each are used with singular countable nouns.

We often use each when we talk about two people or things.

- نستخدم every وeach مع الأسماء المفردة التى تعد.

We often use every when we talk about three or more people or things.

- نستخدم each عندما نتحدث عن شخصين أو شيلين.

- نستخدم every عندما نتحدث عن ثلاثة أو اكثر من الأشخاص أو الأشياء.

- He was holding a pen in each hand.
- Every part of my body hurt after the accident.
- Every student was given a book.

We use every when we are thinking of people or things together, in a group to mean "all", "everybody" or "everything".

- نستخدم every عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًا، فى مجموعة تعنى «الكل» أو «الجميع» أو «كل شىء».

We use each when we are thinking of people or things separately, one at a time.

- نستخدم each عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، كل واحد على حدة.

- Every student has the right to take 30 days off. (all students)
- The teacher will ask each student in turn to give him/her the oral marks.

Everyone and each (one) can be followed by of.

- I have seen all of Ismael Yasin's films and I liked every one of them.
- It was the twins' birthday yesterday and I gave a present to each (one) of them.

We use every to show how often something happens.

- نستخدم every لبيان عدد مرات حدوث الشىء.

- There is a train every twenty minutes.
- I have to attend a meeting every two months.

We use every not each with the following expressions.

- Almost, nearly, practically and without exception.
- She has invited every person she knows, without exception.

لاحظ

١- هناك everyone المتصلة والتى بعدها الفعل مفرد والضمير العائد عليها جمع.

- Everyone wants to earn much money, don't they?

٢-إذا جاءت every أول الجملة تنفى بـ Not every.

- Not every student in my class wants to join the faculty of medicine.

Scanned with CamScanner

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's strange to see a man wearing a watch on ..... hand.
   a) every b) each c) all d) both
2. ..... the students in our class are from Cairo.
   a) Every b) Both c) Each d) All
3. It's strange to see a woman wearing a ring on ..... finger.
   a) some b) every c) both d) all
4. Hady was really generous to his two nephews; he gave ..... of them a gift.
   a) each b) every c) neither d) all
5. She spent nearly ..... her life at home.
   a) each b) both c) every d) all
6. She bought two new dresses and paid 500 pounds for ..... one of them.
   a) each b) every c) both d) either
7. The teacher told the class that ..... student had done very well that year.
   a) all b) every c) either d) both
8. ..... of the five tourists from the north of Europe had blond hair.
   a) Every b) Both c) Either d) Each
9. He was thirsty, so he drank ..... the juice.
   a) neither b) whole c) every d) all
10. To solve the economic problem, ... citizen must pay taxes.
    a) any b) all c) every d) both
11. The teacher told us to spend five minutes on ..... question.
    a) every b) each c) all d) both
12. The store gave a discount to ..... person in line.
    a) each b) all c) some d) everyone
13. Remember that ..... day of the week has its problems.
    a) whole b) some c) all d) every
14. Close your eyes. Now open ..... one slowly: first the left, then the right.
    a) each b) every c) both d) all
15. Each of the children ..... given a box of chocolate.
    a) were b) are c) was d) aren't
16. **A:** How did your class do in the exam? **B:** Luckily, we ..... passed.
    a) all b) whole c) each d) every
17. Each coat in the store ..... a tag with its price on it.
    a) have b) has c) have got d) was

Scanned with CamScanner

18 ..... the students in my class speak English very well.
a) Each b) Both c) Either d) All

19 Omar has seen a lot of films this month. He enjoyed ..... one of them.
a) both b) all c) every d) any

20 **A:** There are some very nice clothes in that shop.
B: Yes, I know, but ..... of them are very expensive.
a) both b) all c) none d) neither

21 In a game of cricket, ... team has eleven players.
a) each b) all c) every d) both

22 I was late. I found ..... awake in the house.
a) each b) every c) nobody d) any

23 Each team has received ..... new uniforms.
a) his b) them c) their d) its

24 ..... going to the party.
a) Everyone are b) Everyone is
c) Every people are d) Every people is

25 I can't find the book ..... .
a) anywhere b) everywhere c) nowhere d) somewhere

26 ..... in my class likes the teacher.
a) All persons b) Everyone c) All pupils d) All people

27 Are you going to stay in the bath ..... day?
a) each b) every c) all d) whole

28 My brother and my sister have ..... got one child.
a) all b) every c) some d) each

29 I spent a ..... week preparing for a philosophy examination.
a) whole b) all c) every d) each

30 I haven't had any sleep at all. The baby hasn't stopped crying ..... night.
a) each b) all c) every d) some

Scanned with CamScanner

(c) Writing

Opinion persuasive essay

Write an opinion essay with the title:
"People aged seventy or over can still contribute to society."

Model Essay

From my point of view, some people aged over 65 can still contribute to society and give it great services. I'll explain why I think this.

The first thing to consider is the experience that people have. Many elderly have a great experience they must share with other people in society. Surgeons, architects, and many other professional people have much experience in their fields. Through continuing work, they will pass their experience with young people in their fields which will also benefit their society.

On the other side, we cannot ignore the fact that those people are usually ill and may suffer from diseases. That's why they shouldn't work long hours as this will be exhausting to them. We also should try to create an exciting and healthy atmosphere which will help them do better.

To conclude, I believe people should be able to continue working if they are able to and want to, but I also realise that this is not possible in an atmosphere that makes it easier for them to share their experience and enjoy their life.

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The air hostess asked the passengers to ..... in their seats and fasten their seatbelts before take-off.
   a) leave b) survive c) remain d) decease
2. A civilised society is marked by their care of its ..... people who served it.
   a) disabled b) odd c) young d) elderly
3. Giving prizes and gifts is a way to show ..... for students' achievements.
   a) detest b) disregard c) respect d) defence
4. Taking precautionary measures is an important ..... of fighting COVID-19.
   a) factor b) fiction c) mission d) prevention
5. The young woman ..... on her family who really help her in caring for her children.
   a) defies b) purifies c) relies d) testifies
6. Using a mobile phone at school is really a matter of ..... in our society.
   a) debate b) fight c) war d) dispute
7. To some ....., I agree with what the government declared about the new law.
   a) step b) extent c) accent d) grade
8. It's pointless to say Ayman is a liar as all people trust him. The opposite of the adjective "pointless" is "....."
   a) useless b) homeless c) sensible d) hopeless
9. ..... candidate had to give a ten-minute speech.
   a) Each b) All c) Both d) Some
10. Tarek loves tennis and watches ..... match on television.
    a) all b) both c) every d) neither
11. It's not good for you to stay in bed ..... day. You should get up and do something.
    a) both b) each c) every d) all
12. Atef tried all three flavours of ice cream and loved ..... one of them.
    a) all b) every c) both d) either
13. ..... engineer in the factory was given a separate job to do.
    a) Each b) Every c) All d) Both
14. The human body has four jugular veins, two on ..... side of the neck.
    a) both b) every c) each d) all
15. Fatma sometimes feels as if she is working ..... minute of the day.
    a) all b) every c) half d) both
16. ..... of the students gave their views on the subject.
    a) One b) Each c) Every d) All
17. Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
    a) Some people work best in the mornings. others do better in the evenings.
    b) Some people work best in the mornings; others do better in the evenings.
    c) Some people work best in the mornings; Others do better in the evenings.
    d) Some people work best in the mornings! others do better in the evenings!

Scanned with CamScanner

18 Which type of essay would this topic sentence best go with:

I will never forget my graduation day which was the most exciting day of my life.

a) persuasive b) expository c) descriptive d) narrative

19 "To sum up, scientific research is one of the best ways to make progress in any society."

This could be part of ..... to an essay about scientific research.

a) an introduction b) a conclusion c) a topic sentence d) a title

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyday activities like listening to an iPod, playing loud video games and going to the movies can put your hearing at risk. Loud noises can damage the inner ear. This type of hearing loss can't be healed. But it can be prevented.

Block, walk and turn–that's what hearing safety experts want you to do when you come across a really loud noise. Block the noise from entering your ears; walk away from it; and turn it down. Those are your first steps in staying safe. On average, 15% of all school-age children live with some hearing loss. And it's a growing problem.

There are two types of harmful noises: sounds that are too loud and sounds that last too long. Both types can cause permanent damage to the sensitive hair cells in the inner ears that bring sound to the brain.

Most people don't know that listening to headphones at full volume puts your ears at risk. "If your iPod is on the maximum volume, it's too loud," says an expert. "If you listen to it at that level every day, it will cause hearing loss."

- When you can't avoid loud noises, wear earplugs or earmuffs to block out sound.
- Set your television or stereo to the lowest volume you can hear. If you are with a person who has trouble hearing, turn on the closed-captioning service to show the words on the screen.
- If your neighbours use noisy leaf blowers or lawn mowers, close your windows and doors to block the sound. This will also protect you from the sounds of sirens and construction. Add curtains to keep out noise, or carpets to absorb it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 How can loud noises affect us?

a) They can damage our sight.

b) They can affect our digestion.

c) They can affect our understanding.

d) They can damage the inner ear.

21 What do hearing safety experts want us to do when we come across a really loud noise?

a) Go, walk and run. b) Shake, take and go.

c) Block, walk and turn. d) Sleep, wake and turn.

22 When can listening to headphones put our ears at risk?

a) When we listen to it at a high level every day.

b) When we put it on our ears.

c) When we listen to it with others.

d) When we listen to it at a low level daily.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

a) Using noisy leaf blowers.
b) Using lawn mowers.
c) Closing our windows and doors.
d) Adding curtains to keep out noise.

24 What are the two types of harmful noises?
a) The sounds which are too big and too weak.
b) The sounds which are too loud and too long.
c) The sounds which are so sharp and loud.
d) The sounds which are too loud and too fast.

25 How can we avoid loud noises?
a) Wear earplugs or earmuffs.
b) Set your television or stereo to the lowest volume.
c) Add curtains to keep out noise.
d) All of these.

26 Listening to an iPod, playing loud video games and going to the movies ..... .
a) are very expensive
b) put our hearing at risk
c) make the person sensitive
d) endanger man's sight

27 The antonym of the word "permanent" is "..... ".
a) lasting
b) unending
c) temporary
d) everlasting

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 Bullying is generally cruel or violent behaviour towards an individual or even a group of various aged people. It can cause untold stress, anger and suffering.

a) إن التنمر بشكل خاص سلوك قاسٍ أو عنيف تجاه فرد أو جماعة ناس من أعمار مختلفة ويمكن أن يسبب السرور والغضب والمعاناة.

b) إن التنمر بشكل عام سلوك قاسٍ أو عنيف تجاه فرد أو جماعة ناس من أعمار مختلفة ويمكن أن يسبب التوتر والغضب والمعاناة.

c) إن التنمر بشكل عام سلوك قاسٍ أو عنيف تجاه فرد أو جماعة ناس من نفس العمر ويمكن أن يسبب التوتر والغضب والمعاناة.

d) إن التنمر بشكل عام سلوك قاسٍ أو عنيف تجاه المجتمع أو جماعة ناس من أعمار مختلفة ولا يمكن أن يسبب التوتر والغضب والمعاناة.

29 يجب أن يهتم الشاب كثيرا باختيار أصدقائه فى كل مراحل الحياة، الأصدقاء الحقيقيون يصعب إيجادهم، ويصعب تركهم.

a) A young man should care much about choosing his friends in all levels of life. Factual friends are hard to find and leave behind.
b) A young man should care much about choosing his friends in all stages of life. Fictional friends are facile to find and leave behind.
c) A young man should care much about choose his friends in all standards of life. Natural friends are hard to find and leave behind.
d) A young man should care much about choosing his friends in all stages of life. Real friends are hard to find and leave behind.

30 يتمنى أخى أن يستطيع الالتحاق بكلية الهندسة العام القادم ليشارك فى المشروعات الكبرى التى تنفذها الحكومة فى مصر.

a) My brother wishes he could join the Faculty of Engineering next year so as to take part in Egypt's great projects which the government carries out in Egypt.
b) My brother wishes he will join the Faculty of Engineering next year so that take part in Egypt's great projects which the government carries out in Egypt.
c) My brother wishes he joined the Faculty of Engineering next year so as to take part in Egypt's great projects which the government carries out in Egypt.
d) My brother wishes he could join the Faculty of Science next year so as to took part in Egypt's great projects which the government carries out in Egypt.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Great Expectations
Exercises Chapter (9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Local authorities have a ..... to keep the streets clean.
   a) sign b) homework c) work d) duty
2. I need the money as soon as ..... .
   a) probable b) necessary c) possible d) advisable
3. Her heart ..... when she saw the number of books she had to read.
   a) broke b) sank c) dropped d) fell
4. Ramy is serving a life ..... for murder.
   a) sentence b) word c) long d) like
5. She ran to the nearest house and ..... for help.
   a) offered b) acquired c) begged d) warned
6. He's ..... about how much money he has made.
   a) advising b) blaming c) regretting d) boasting
7. There were six people in the clearing, ... around the campfire.
   a) sleeping b) crouching c) playing d) running
8. Research has ..... that the risk is higher for women.
   a) confirmed b) denied c) recommended d) suggested
9. The price rise caused many readers to ..... the magazine.
   a) bury b) buy c) desert d) write
10. The accident left him ..... disabled.
    a) permanent b) temporary c) often d) permanently
11. Hany was ..... by what had happened.
    a) horrify b) horrified c) horrifying d) horrifyingly
12. A lot of smaller firms did not ..... the recession.
    a) survive b) sink c) leave d) live
13. I would have been here an hour ago, but ....., I missed the train.
    a) totally b) permanently c) fortunately d) unfortunately
14. Are you accusing me of being .....?
    a) honest b) dishonest c) sincere d) loyal
15. ..... is a piece of jewellery that you wear on your finger.
    a) A scarf b) A necklace c) A ring d) A wig

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Advanced & Open General Exercises

إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the works in the exhibition were produced by the students under the ..... of their art teacher.
   a) defection b) direction c) route d) opinion
2. In their infinite ....., the club administration closed the swimming pool at the busiest time of year.
   a) inspection b) invention c) innovation d) wisdom
3. The famous artist is well-known for the ..... of only local natural materials in his works.
   a) consumption b) unemployment c) employment d) reflection
4. We should be aware that a dirty kitchen is a/an ..... source of infection.
   a) potential b) impossible c) inspected d) bizarre
5. Experts believe that learning from experience is a/an ..... for continuous improvement.
   a) speck b) piece c) component d) recipe
6. Scientists agree that we should stop burning fossil fuels in electricity ..... in power stations.
   a) generation b) consumption c) device d) transport
7. After dinner, my father likes to ..... to his room for a cup of coffee and a cigarette.
   a) resign b) retreat c) retire d) fight
8. Mr. Alaa used his ..... to get his son a good job at a bank.
   a) communications b) contacts c) facilities d) faculties
9. Doctors say that it ..... to be seen whether my grandfather's operation was successful. We'll have to wait for three days at least.
   a) provides b) leaves c) stays d) remains
10. I hope that all our hard work at the company will ..... into good profits.
    a) translate b) transmit c) transplant d) transport
11. The criminal is expected to ..... in 24 hours.
    a) be caught b) catch c) being caught d) will be caught
12. It's nearly 10 years ..... I last ate fish with my friends in Port Said.
    a) while b) before c) when d) since
13. You'd better decide ..... you need to buy.
    a) that b) what c) which d) whom
14. It's planned that Helal ..... money to help the poor.
    a) is collecting b) will collect c) is going to collect d) had collected
15. Omar drinks ..... coffee. I think more than 10 cups every day.
    a) too many b) too much c) a few d) too little
16. ..... at the moment, I'll ask him to help me put up the shelf.
    a) As he isn't studying b) As he doesn't study c) For he isn't studying d) For he doesn't study
17. Although he is fat, he can't help ..... eating a lot of sweets.
    a) to enjoy b) enjoy with c) enjoying d) enjoying with
18. A person who talks to ..... is not necessarily mad.
    a) oneself b) himself c) yourself d) itself
19. Don't give up looking for the book, you will find it ..... .
    a) nowhere b) everywhere c) anywhere d) somewhere
20. If your shoes should be cleaned, ... and put on this clean pair.
    a) take it off b) take off them c) take them off d) take off it

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 3

Based on Unit 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The government has a special plan for providing thousands of ..... opportunities for young people.
a) refreshment b) employment c) relaxation d) tiredness

2 Although writing novels and plays is a special talent, it is useful to join ..... writing courses to boost your talent.
a) creative b) ordinary c) strange d) imaginary

3 My uncle changed ..... and retrained to work as a maths teacher which he liked much.
a) affection b) description c) instruction d) direction

4 Children are trained on ..... skills of defence in karate lessons.
a) cultured b) scientific c) basic d) natural

5 People in this remote village have very little ..... with people outside it.
a) contact b) conduct c) connect d) link

6 It is important to practise ..... to improve your performance.
a) defensively b) uselessly c) helplessly d) regularly

7 Being ..... is a good way which can help you achieve your goals in life.
a) desperate b) pessimistic c) optimistic d) released

8 For some elderly people, work is one of the ways that can ..... them healthy.
a) stay b) keep c) damage d) spoil

9 I have ..... CDs. I need some more.
a) little b) few c) a little d) a few

10 My brother has ..... experience, so he didn't get the job.
a) a little b) a few c) few d) little

11 Can I have ..... milk in my coffee, please?
a) some b) a lot c) many d) any

12 ..... of the students did well on their test.
a) Every b) Each c) Most d) Any

13 Each of the countries sent ..... representative to the international conference.
a) his b) its c) some d) their

14 ..... to get rich.
a) Not every young man try b) No every young man tries
c) No every young men try d) Not every young man tries

15 ..... like ice-cream.
a) Each child b) All of children c) All children d) Every child

16 They have visited ..... countries.
a) a lot of b) each c) the both d) every

17 Choose the correct punctuation mark:
Manal didn't attend the conference, did she ..... .
a) . b) ? c) ! d) ;

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?

a) It is a fine idea? let us hope that it is going to work.

b) It is a fine idea; let us hope that it is going to work.

c) It is a fine idea. let us hope that it is going to work.

d) It is a fine idea; let–us- hope that it is going to work.

19 The following sentence can be found in a ..... paragraph.

"It is said that Egypt has one third of the world's monuments."

a) argumentative b) discussion c) expository d) narrative

20 A message to a friend to invite him to your birthday party is a kind of ..... .

a) a formal e-mail b) an informal e-mail

c) an expository essay d) a persuasive essay

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

For decades the age of the Earth has been a major conflict between science and religion. The earth is a huge ball covered with water, rocks, soil, and it is surrounded by air. Throughout advances in science, geologists have learned more and more about the earth and have been able to unravel mysteries and expand our knowledge of our planet. We believe that Earth is about 4.6 billion years old. At present, we are forced to look at other bodies in the solar system to know what the early history of the Earth was like. Studies of our moon, Mercury, Mars, and the large satellites of Jupiter and Saturn have provided ample evidence that all these large celestial bodies were bombarded by smaller objects in a wide variety of sizes shortly after the larger bodies had formed. This same bombardment must have affected Earth as well. The liner record indicates that the rate of impacts decreased to its present low level about 4 billion years ago. On Earth, subsequent erosion and crustal motions have demolished the holes that must have formed during this period. Scientists estimate the Earth's age by measuring the ratios of various radioactive elements in rocks. The oldest Earth rocks tested so far are about 3 billion years old. But no one knows whether these are the oldest rocks on Earth. Tests on rocks from the moon and on meteorites show that these are about 4.6 billion years old. Scientists believe that this is the true age of the solar system and probably the true age of the Earth.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The Earth is a huge planet surrounded by ..... .

a) water b) soil c) rocks d) air

22 The word "demolished" means "..... ".

a) destroyed b) changed c) created d) eroded

23 According to this passage, how do scientists estimate the age of the Earth?

a) By measuring the ratios of radioactive elements in rocks.

b) By examining fossils.

c) By examining volcanic activity.

d) By studying the sun and the moon.

24 Scientists estimate the age of the Earth as ..... .

a) 4 billion years old. b) 3 billion years old.

c) 4.6 billion years old. d) 6 billion years old.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

25 Which of the following processes led to the destruction of the carts formed by the bombardment of the Earth by celestial bodies?

a) Gravity.
b) Solar radiation.
c) Crustal motions.
d) Volcanic activity.

26 What is the best title for this passage?

a) "Determining the Age of the Earth".
b) "Determining the Age of the Solar System".
c) "Erosion and Crustal Motion of Earth".
d) "Radioactive Elements in Rocks".

27 Which of the following bodies was not studied to give evidence that the Earth was bombarded in its early history?

a) Jupiter.
b) Mars.
c) Mercury.
d) Earth's moon.

28 The level of impacts of the bombardments of the Earth have ..... .

a) decreased to below normal level
b) increased after a periodic low level
c) increased to a current high level
d) decreased to the current low level

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

This is my fifth day at the summer camp. Life is not exactly what I expected. Everyone has to get up at 5:30 a.m. We have to make our beds before our leader comes to check the place. We have breakfast around 6:30 a.m. We have free time, so I have been going down to the nearby stream to fish for a couple of hours. But the only thing I caught was an old shoe. Great catch, Huh? Then when I was trying to hit a mosquito buzzing around my head, I fell in the stream and lost my fishing rod. That ended my fishing career. In the afternoon there are different activities to choose from, like archery and hiking. I thought archery would be the sport for me until I shot an arrow through Jeff's trousers' leg. As you can imagine, I haven't been invited back since.

In the evening everyone is assigned a different job to get dinner ready. Yesterday, I was to cook the hot dogs, but I accidently dropped them in the fire. So we had beans instead. At night, we make a fire. One night, while trying to find sticks for the fire, I got lost. After an hour of wandering, I finally found my way back, but no one seemed to have realised what had happened, thinking that I was asleep. A bear or wolf could have eaten me and no one would have known it. Well, today is another day and tomorrow I go home. I've learned that camping is just not for me.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 What was the writer doing when he got lost in the forest?

a) He was looking for the cabin.
b) He was running after a wolf.
c) He was running away from a bear.
d) He was searching for wood.

30 Why did they have beans instead of hot dogs?

a) Most of the boys wanted beans.
b) The hot dogs were dropped in the stream.
c) The hot dogs fell in the fire.
d) The writer preferred beans.

31 The writer started camping ..... .

a) a long time ago
b) only yesterday
c) less than a week ago
d) just today

Scanned with CamScanner

a) He didn't like it at all.
c) He liked it very much.
b) He will go camping every year.
d) He liked it to some extent.

33 The writer caught an old shoe, fell in the stream and lost his fishing rod. This shows that ..... .
a) he was stupid
c) he was unlucky
b) camping is not for the writer
d) it was a bad place for camping

34 The synonym of the word "accidently" is "..... ".
a) gradually
b) sadly
c) unexpectedly
d) predictably

35 "We have to make our beds before our leader comes to check the place." This shows that ..... .
a) the leader is very strict
c) the writer is very happy
b) camping is very bad
d) life in the camp is boring

36 The best title to the passage is "..... ".
a) An exciting summer camp
b) A bad experience with camping
c) A summer camp with bad friends
d) How to make a summer camp exciting

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

37 We must realise the value of science because it is the weapon of nations, the basis of their civilisation, and the source of their progress and prosperity.

a) يجب أن ندرك قيمة العلم لأنه سلاح الأمم وأساس حضارتها ومصدر تقدمها ورخائها.
b) يجب أن ندرك القيمة العلمية لأنها سلاح الأمم وأساس الحضارة ومصدر تقدمها وازدهارها.
c) يجب أن ندرك قيمة العلم فى تطور سلاح الأمم وأساس الحضارة ومصدر التقدم والازدهار.
d) يجب أن ندرك قيمة العلم لأنه سلاح الوطن وأصل حضارتها ومنبع التقدم والرخاء.

38 The world comes together to fight a disease. Can we stay united to tackle the other crises?

a) يأتى العالم معًا ليحارب مرضًا. فهل يمكننا البقاء متحدين لمعالجة الأزمات الأخرى؟
b) يجتمع العالم لمحاربة مرض. فهل يمكننا البقاء متحدين لمعالجة الأزمات الأخرى؟
c) يجتمع العالم لمحاربة مرض. فهل يمكننا الاتحاد لخلق القضايا الأخرى؟
d) يأتى العالم معًا ليحارب مرضًا. فهل يمكننا الاتحاد لمعالجة الأزمات الأخرى؟

39 لقد حان الوقت أن تقوى جهاز المناعة لأنه حائط الصد ضد جميع الأمراض.
a) It is time to strong the immune system because it is the wall against all diseases.
b) It is time to strengthen the prevention system because it is the wall to all diseases.
c) It is time to strong the prevention system because it is the wall of all diseases.
d) It is time to strengthen the immune system because it is the wall against all diseases.

40 تهدف السياسة التعليمية الجديدة إلى تحسين النظام التعليمى وخلق جيل جديد واعٍ بمشكلات بلده.
a) The new educational policy aims at improving the educational system and create a new generation aware of the problems of their country.
b) The new educational policy aims to improve the educational system and create a new generation aware of the problems of their country.
c) The new educational policy aims to improve the educational system and creating a new generation aware of the problems of their country.
d) The new educational politics aims to improve the educational system and create a new generation aware of the problems of their country.

Scanned with CamScanner

Revision (3)
Units 7, 8 & 9

Vocabulary on Reading

agenda (n)	اجندة/جدول اعمال	job title (n)	مسمى وظيفى
area (n)	منطقة/مجال	limit (n)	حد/قيد
assume (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن	miss out (v) (ed)	يفوته
balance (n)	توازن	presenter (n)	منيع/مقدم برامج
bank account (n)	حساب بنكى	purpose (n)	غرض
belief (n)	اعتقاد	pursue (v) (d)	يبحث عن
consequence (n)	نتيجة	regarding	بخصوص
define (v) (d)	يحدد/يعرف	senior (adj.)	أعلى مرتبة
extent (n)	حد/مدى	state (v) (d)	يعلن/يصرح
focus (v) (ed)	يركز	training (n)	تدريب
independently (adv.)	باستقلال	view (n)	وجهة نظر

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

career direction	الاتجاه الوظيفى/المهنى	take a day off	يأخذ يومًا إجازة
over time	بمرور الوقت	take into account	يضع فى الاعتبار
pay attention to	يهتم بـ	work-life balance	توازن بين العمل والحياة
put effort into	يبذل مجهودًا فى	have an influence	له تأثير
focus on	يركز على	limit to	يد

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

Is 'Follow your passion' good advice?

We see it on social media, hear it in online talks and some teachers say it to their students: "Follow your passion". In other words, decide what you really like doing and then find a job where you can do it. Is this a helpful piece of **wisdom** that helps people choose a **career direction**, or something which **common sense** shows to be bad advice?

The reason why we're told to follow our passion is the belief that if you do a job you enjoy, you'll be happy. However, few people today do the same job until they retire. Most will have to **reinvent** ourselves, so one passion isn't enough.

Also, if you focus on one passion and only apply for jobs connected to it, you could miss out on other opportunities. These may be more interesting than the ones you're pursuing or help you to gain valuable **life experience**.

We assume young people all have a passion, but many don't. While they're worrying that they don't have a passion, many people miss opportunities to make a **contribution** in other areas. Most of us need time and experience to realise what we love doing and this can change over time.

Reading Text (2)

Nehal : When I think of success, I think of being successful in the area I work in. I'm a news presenter, so for me, it's reporting the news and writing good news stories which tell people what is going on in the world.

Hassan : Success is something that's difficult to define, but for me, it's about having a good work-life balance. I need to work, but I also want to have enough time for my friends and to do things I enjoy outside work, like cycling.

Zeinab : A lot of people think that success is working as hard as you can, but, in my opinion, it's about being able to take a day off to be with your family if you want to or having enough time for your favourite hobby.

Omar : I feel like I'm a success when I look at my wife and my children. We're all healthy and happy and we have a nice home to live in. We make each other laugh and support each other.

Tarek : For me, success is about my job title. So, if you have a job title that shows you have a lot of responsibility, like 'Senior manager', that shows people that you're a success.

Emal : I think you know that you're successful when you have a lot of money in your bank account. Then you can buy anything you want and do anything that you want.

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (3)

The purpose of this essay is to discuss the extent to which parents should have an influence on young people's career choices. In my opinion, young people should listen carefully to their parents' opinions and take these views into account, but they should also use their own ideas to make their final decisions.

An important reason why young people should listen to their parents is that their parents have more life experience than they do. They have usually seen the consequences of doing a specific training course or taking a particular job so they can use their wisdom to give their children helpful advice.

Furthermore, young people should listen to their parents because these are the people who are most interested in helping them and really want them to succeed in life. Consequently, they will put a lot of effort into advising their children.

However, as I mentioned earlier, there are limits to the helpfulness of parents' career advice. Each young person has to decide for themselves which career to choose because they will have to work in this area for years. Therefore, they need to find a career direction which allows them to do work they enjoy and they are good at. Parents may also have their own agenda regarding their children's careers and want them to do a specific job because they had wanted to do or because they see a particular job as a good one to have.

In conclusion, I would state that although young people should pay attention to their parents' advice, they should make the final decision independently.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

complete the sentences:

1 ..... in education started when she got a job at a primary school.
a) interview b) balance c) career d) values

2 Ali has a disability, but he could ..... many different challenges in his life to become successful.
a) overcome b) aim for c) achieve d) jump

3 Good friends often share the same ..... .
a) employer b) debts c) valuable d) values

4 Salma has a ..... job at the museum. She only works at the weekends.
a) full-time b) part-time c) part d) small

5 Hassan is a/an ..... at a computer company. He hopes to get a paid job there in the future.
a) internship b) intern c) full-time d) worker

6 The car factory gives ..... to a lot of people in our area.
a) unemployment b) employment c) employer d) employees

7 We would like to thank Mrs Radwa for her generous ..... to our charity last week.
a) isolation b) precaution c) revolution d) contribution

8 Winning the writing prize was a ..... experience for Walid, who then became a famous author.
a) changing b) charging c) life-changing d) life saving

9 Let's be quick because we don't have ..... time.
a) little b) many c) much d) less

10 Fady broke his leg and has to stay in bed, so he ..... a lot of films recently!
a) is watching b) has been watching c) was watching d) will be watching

11 Dina lived in England for many years, so she can speak English ..... .
a) extremely well b) extremely good c) very good d) well extremely

12 Hania ..... all her exams and is going to start at university next month.
a) has passed b) has been passing c) passes d) will be passing

13 Archaeologists found a beautiful old statue, which ..... to a museum in Cairo next week.
a) was taken b) will take c) took d) will be taken

14 On the plane, all small bags should ..... under the seats in front of you.
a) put b) be put c) are put d) to be put

15 It was very sunny and hot, but ..... tourists wore hats or sunglasses.
a) little b) none c) few d) any

16 There's ..... petrol in the car, so we will be able to drive to our friend's house.
a) none b) much c) a few d) a little

17 When you are in ..... of doing something, you are responsible for it.
a) debt b) trouble c) need d) charge

18 You need to ..... Mr Adel's meeting tomorrow. Otherwise, he might not come.
a) dismiss b) confirm c) achieve d) crouch

19 Which of the following is structurally correct?
a) He is exhausted because he hadn't been working all day.
b) He was exhausted because he has been working all day.
c) He is exhausted because he has been working all day.
d) He is exhausted because he had worked all day.

Scanned with CamScanner

20 Which of the following is punctuated correctly?

a) Did you know that our neighbour s son had returned from London on Wednesday, Dalia
b) Did you know that our neighbour s son had returned from London on wednesday, Dalia?
c) Did you know that our neighbour's son had returned from London on Wednesday, Dalia?
d) Did you know that our neighbour's son had returned from London on wednesday Dalia?

21 Switzerland is .....European country where four languages are spoken.

a) an b) a c) the d) no article

22 Which of the following is used for an informal invitation?

a) Let me know if you're coming to the party by tomorrow morning.
b) Please use the following RSVP form to indicate whether you are going to attend the party or not.
c) It is our pleasure to invite you to our annual donation party.
d) We trust you will enjoy it.

23 Our players have played seriously and followed the tactics of the coach ..... . Which of the following completions shows result?

a) , but they lost the match. b) despite losing the match.
c) , so they won the match. d) as well as winning the match.

24 Which of the following is part of an opinion essay on "People over seventy can still contribute to society"?

a) For example, you need to balance your working hours and the time you assign to your family.
b) From my point of view, older people who remain active are able to contribute to society, making full use of their experience.
c) In conclusion, solving the problem of unemployment is the responsibility of the government as well as all sectors of society.
d) a lot of people believe that the private sector can play a great role in providing work chances for young people.

25 "My heart sank when I heard this news." The expression "my heart sank" ..... .

a) means that you have the happiest moment in your life.
b) means that you suddenly feel very worried or disappointed.
c) expresses a joyful dream you have just had.
d) expresses a feeling of suspicion at this moment.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

To : hamdi@mymail.com
From : uniinfo@edumail.edu

You are receiving this email because you have applied to do a course at our university. Places at the university will be given to the students with the best exam results. In addition, in some disciplines such as medicine, a university exam must also be passed before a student is accepted.

Successful new students will be given accommodation at the university for their first year if they want it. You will be shown the rooms on the university open day, which is on July 13th. Many of the rooms have their own bathrooms, and each room has its own sink.

We are extremely proud of our students and we strongly believe that we have some of the best students in the world studying here. Learning to respect other students is just one of our values. We believe that university is a life-changing experience and we want to make sure that ours is the right university for you. So please come to our open day to see if you can make a contribution to our student life in the future.

We trust that you will have an enjoyable day getting to know our wonderful university. Please use the attached form which needs to be completed if you want to come.

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

26 Who would receive an email like this?
a) university students
c) students who want to study at the university
b) students who are going to study at the university
d) students who are going to the university open day

27 What do you think the word disciplines means in the context of this email?
a) a university subject
c) a type of exam
b) a way to punish people who are not successful
d) a course for older people

28 There are sinks in ..... at the university.
a) most rooms
b) a few rooms
c) all rooms
d) none of the rooms

29 Learning to respect other students is one of the university's .....
a) courses
b) skills
c) awards
d) values

30 According to the passage, what kind of student is going to study medicine at this university?
a) The students who applied first.
c) The students with the best exam results.
b) The students coming from abroad.
d) The students who pay the university fees only.

31 According to the passage, attending the open day is .....
a) allowed for parents
c) not optional
b) a basic term for a student to be accepted
d) not obligatory

32 Those who receive the email are students who .....
a) have applied to do a course at the university
b) attended the open day at the university
c) inquire about terms of acceptance
d) are going to apply to do a course at the university

33 Accommodation in line four is a synonym for .....
a) evacuation
b) evaluation
c) farming
d) housing

34 What is the main idea of the passage?
a) Life-long learning.
b) Learning to respect other students.
c) Accommodation at the university is obligatory for accepted students.
d) Receiving newly accepted students at the university.

35 The underlined word they refers to .....
a) the students who have received emails.
b) successful new students.
c) the professors at the university.
d) the students who are going to apply for the course.

Scanned with CamScanner

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d.

36 Setting small goals that you will be able to achieve if you work hard can be very motivating and help you to move towards achieving bigger goals.

a) إن تحديد أهداف صغيرة ستتمكن من تحقيقها إذا عملت بجد قد يكون محفزًا للغاية ويساعدك على المضى قدمًا نحو تحقيق أهداف أكبر.

b) إن تحديد أهداف صغيرة ستتمكن من تحقيقها بمساعدة الآخرين قد يكون محفزًا للغاية ويساعدك على المضى قدمًا نحو تحقيق أهداف أخرى.

c) إن تحديد أهداف خاصة ستتمكن من تحقيقها إذا عملت بجد قد يكون محفزًا للغاية ويساعدك على المضى قدمًا نحو تحقيق أهداف عامة.

d) إن تحديد أهداف كبيرة ستتمكن من تحديدها إذا عملت بجد قد يكون محفزًا للغاية ويساعدك على المضى قدمًا نحو تحقيق أية أهداف.

37 Don't lose hope if you fail; it is never too late to start again. You should always learn from your mistakes and be ready to have a new start towards success.

a) لا تفقد الأمان إذا فشلت؛ لم يفت أبدا الأوان للمحاولة من جديد. يجب أن تعاود المحاولة وأن يكون لديه بداية جديدة نحو النجاح.

b) لا تفقد الأمانى إذا فشلت؛ لم يفت أبدا الأوان للبدء من جديد. يجب أن تتعلم دائمًا من أخطائك وأن يكون لديه بداية جديدة نحو النجاح.

c) لا تفقد الأمل إذا تم انتقادك؛ لم يفت أبدا الأوان للبدء من جديد. يجب أن تتعلم دائمًا من أخطائك وأن يكون لديه بداية جديدة نحو الطموح.

d) لا تفقد الأمل إذا تم انتقادك؛ لم يفت أبدا الأوان للبدء من جديد. يجب أن تتعلم دائمًا من أخطائك وأن يكون لديك الاستعداد لبداية جديدة نحو الطموح.

38 اكتساب خبرة العمل أمر هام جدًا. فهى تساعدك على اكتساب المهارات وتحديد ما يجب القيام به، كما يمكن أن تكون مفيدة لمن يغيرون حياتهم المهنية والأشخاص الذين يتطلعون إلى شغل مناصب أعلى.

a) Gaining work experience is very important. It helps you acquire skills and perfect what to do. Also, it can be useful for career-charging and people who hope to keep their positions.

b) Gaining work experience is easy. It helps you require skills and decide what to do. Also, it can be useful for career-changing and people who are looking for work.

c) Gaining work experience is very important. It helps you acquire skills and decide what to do. It can also be useful for career changers and people looking forward to occupying higher positions.

d) Gaining work knowledge is easy. It helps you acquire skills and perfect what you are asked to do. Also, it can be useful for career changers and people who look forward to occupying proper positions.

39 بالنسبة لكثير من الطموحين، النجاح الحقيقى له معان كثيرة وهو ليس فقط تحقيق ما تصبو إليه فى الحياة بل الحفاظ على مستوى النجاح الذى وصلت إليه وتعزيزه بقدر المستطاع.

a) For many ambitious young people, real success does not mean only achieving what you aspire to in life but maintaining the aim of success you have realized and enhancing it as far as possible.

b) For many ambitious people, real success does not mean only achieving what you aspire to in life but maintaining the level of success you have reached and enhancing it as far as possible.

c) For many ambitious people, imaginary success does not mean only achieving what you aspire to in life but accepting the level of success you have reached and keeping it as much as possible.

d) For many ordinary people, real success does not mean only achieving what you aspire to in your career but minimising the level of failure you have reached and trying to make any success as far as you can.

40 Write an opinion essay of about 200 words on one of these topics.

1. What does "successful" mean to you? Why? Give reasons.
2. "You are never too old for a new beginning. It will be hard, but you can do it."

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Great Expectations
Chapters 7–9 SB

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1. That worker was always late so we had to ..... him.
   a) whisper b) refuse c) sink d) dismiss
2. Just sit down and ..... I'm quite good at cooking, Mum!
   a) leave it to me b) tell me about it c) leave it alone d) let it go
3. He didn't want anyone else to hear the instructions so he ..... them to me.
   a) worried b) explained c) whispered d) expected
4. Everyone in my family ..... my aunt Heba because she's a wonderful person.
   a) reminds b) recovers c) influences d) adores
5. My uncle is very ..... and he spends a particularly large amount of money at holiday time.
   a) spectacular b) extravagant c) jealous d) arrogant
6. She's a beautiful and intelligent young woman, so I'm not surprised that she has a lot of ..... .
   a) merchants b) admirers c) convicts d) gatekeepers
7. If you spend more money than you earn, you'll quickly find yourself ..... .
   a) in debt b) in a fortune c) confirmed d) deserted
8. People don't like it if you act in an ..... way because it looks like you think you're better than them.
   a) uncertain b) arrogant c) obvious d) elegant
9. We thought we were going to win, but ..... when they announced the winners and it wasn't us.
   a) our trust was broken b) our hearts sank c) we were kept away d) we fell out
10. You can't see the hole in the floor from up there, you need to ..... on the floor to see it.
    a) recover b) desert c) crouch d) keep away
11. Do you think that you'll live in Cairo ..... or only stay for a short time?
    a) completely b) elegantly c) thoroughly d) permanently
12. We all ..... our grandfather because he was extremely ill and the doctors weren't sure if he would get better.
    a) fear for b) are guilty for c) are responsible for d) scare for

2 Match the people with the sentences that describe what happens to them in Chapters 7-9:

1. Pip	a) finally achieves something that he/she has wanted to do for a long time.
2. Magwitch/Provis	b) explains the true meaning of love.
3. Miss Havisham	c) gives extravagant presents to someone.
4. Estella	d) makes a discovery which changes how they see life.
5. Mr Jaggers	e) needs help because he/she is in a lot of debt.
6. Herbert Pocket	f) makes someone feel confused about his/her feelings.

3 Match characters from Exercise 2 with the things they said in Chapters 7-9:

1. 'What? Please don't say that she is the Estella you knew!' .....
2. 'We'll make you a gentleman, too, my boy!' .....
3. 'You should know, … because I am what you made me!' .....
4. 'She will make you unhappy,' he replied. 'You should try to forget her!' .....

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Answer the questions:

1. How does Pip feel when he sees Estella again at the start of Chapter 7?
   a) Proud of the gentleman he's become. b) Like a poor boy who has nothing.
2. Pip decides never to see Joe again because of something that which person said to him?
   a) Miss Havisham. b) Estella.
3. What does Pip realise at the end of Chapter 7?
   a) Marrying Estella won't make him happy. b) Estella won't ever agree to marry him.
4. In Chapter 8, Pip feels guilty about encouraging Herbert to do what?
   a) Believe he'll receive a great fortune. b) Spend large amounts of money.
5. What does Estella tell Pip about the men she spends time with?
   a) She isn't sure which one she wants to marry.
   b) He's the only one that she's honest with.
6. Why does Pip return home to the village in Chapter 8?
   a) To go to his sister's funeral. b) To visit Miss Havisham.
7. How did Magwitch find out where Pip lives?
   a) He followed him to his lodgings. b) Mr Jaggers gave him the address.
8. Why is Magwitch in danger in London?
   a) Because the thieves he used to work for want to kill him.
   b) Because he has to stay in Australia for the rest of his life.
9. What does Pip decide to do after finding out that Magwitch is his benefactor in Chapter 9?
   a) To not take any more money from him. b) To tell the police that he's back in London.
10. What does Pip discover about Miss Havisham's ex-fiancée, Arthur?
    a) He was also a thief and a convict. b) He told Magwitch to help Pip financially.

5 Work in pairs. Read the quotations and discuss the questions:

1. On the way, we saw the walls of Newgate Prison. I told Estella that Mr Jaggers visited his clients there, and knew all the secrets of that terrible place. 'He knows the secrets of every place, I think!'
   What does the information that Pip finds out about Mr Jaggers make Pip and the reader feel about this character?
2. After visiting my teacher in Hammersmith, I often went to Richmond so that I could see Estella. I still hoped that she would fall in love with me, but I usually felt unhappy when we were together.
   How can you explain the mixed feelings that Pip has for Estella?
3. I felt that I must go with him, to help him escape, and I did not know how long it would be before I would return.
   Why do you think Pip feels that he has to help Provis? Why is Pip unsure about how long it will be before he can return? Give reasons.

6 Imagine that you are a newspaper reporter. You do an interview with Pip. You want to show your readers what effects the events in Chapters 7-9 have had on Pip. Write some questions to ask Pip and write the answers you think Pip would give to the questions.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1 Writers are always looking for new sources of ..... for their books .
a) aspiration b) intention c) inspiration d) inspection

2 Prince Philip, the Queen's husband, was buried with simple ..... according to his request.
a) festival b) ceremony c) revelation d) perception

3 Scientists believe that natural ..... such as floods and hurricanes are becoming more common due to climate change.
a) reserves b) landscape c) sceneries d) disasters

4 The staff now includes 20 paid workers, plus ..... who are unpaid
a) interns b) supervisors c) seniors d) officers

5 The Black Sea is facing an ecological disaster as a result of pollution. The synonym of the word "disaster" is ..... .
a) flood b) catastrophe c) disadvantage d) achievement

6 Microsoft has kept a high ..... in the computer industry for many years.
a) setting b) degree c) profile d) post

7 The young man's life seemed to lack ..... after she left school.
a) instruction b) direction c) cycle d) perception

8 To lose weight you need the right ..... of diet and exercise.
a) balance b) pleasure c) experience d) expectation

9 Lately, people ..... difficulties due to lack of rain.
a) have faced b) were facing c) had faced d) will face

10 This is the longest essay I ..... in my life.
a) have never written b) had written c) have ever written d) wrote

11 I phoned my friend and told him it was raining ..... .
a) heavily b) heavy c) heavier d) in a heavy way

12 The TV programme about space ..... at the moment.
a) is shown b) is being shown c) is showing d) will be shown

13 Be careful, your name ..... in two minutes.
a) is calling b) is called c) is going to call d) will be called

14 There has been a serious accident on the motorway, and a section ..... to traffic.
a) are closed b) had been closed c) has been closed d) was closed

15 I have ..... money left after shopping.
a) a little b) many c) a few d) several

16 ..... the businessmen are staying at the hotel.
a) Some b) All c) Every d) Each

17 Choose the sentence which is correctly punctuated?
a) It's difficult to believe this witness's testimony.
b) It's difficult to believe this witnesses testimony.
c) Its difficult to believe this witness' testimony.
d) It's difficult to believe this witnesse' s testimony.

Scanned with CamScanner

18 In the following sentence, what punctuation mark is missing?
The rich man was a self ..... made man.

a) No punctuation mark
b) (') an apostrophe
c) (-) a hyphen
d) (:) a colon

19 What are supporting sentences in paragraph writing?

a) Sentences that explain the main idea of the paragraph.
b) Lines to make the paragraph lengthy.
c) Text to make the writing look more sophisticated.
d) Sentences which summarize the main points.

20 Choose the best topic sentence:

..... Unlike some breeds of dogs, they do not need a lot of exercise every day. Crowds and loud noises do not make them nervous. Also, they do not mind being alone for hours, if you need to be away at work. On top of all this, they are known to be patient and loving with children. If you are a city-dwelling family looking for a pet, I highly recommend this breed of dog.

a) Every family should have a dog.
b) Greyhounds are a good choice of dog for people who live in cities.
c) Not all dogs are happy living in the city.
d) All breed of dogs are pretty much alike -- it's all the same.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Water is one of the basic necessities of life. We require plenty of water every day for drinking, cooking and washing. It is necessary also for cleanliness of homes and hospitals.

Water is an essential natural resource. It is also liable to fluctuations due to the annual amount of rainfall, evaporation and the effects of pollution caused by waterweeds. Therefore, it is vital to carry out projects based on methods that would ensure a sufficient supply of water. The purpose of such projects should be directed towards land reclamation, agricultural and other food sufficiency projects. Although Egypt possesses the River Nile, with its streams, numerous lakes and large underground reservoirs, it should not ignore the danger of water shortage.

Thus. Egypt should adopt projects to prevent water shortage in the future. Vast quantities of water are required to reclaim and irrigate land under cultivation, operate factories and meet the citizens' requirements of water for personal use.

Egypt's future development, therefore, depends on successfully expanding its efforts to reclaim and, then, cultivate land in the presently barren regions. In addition, citizens must be encouraged to populate areas located near the reclaimed desert land. So, it is necessary to provide these areas with sufficient supplies of water.

Further, we can save water in our daily life by doing minor acts such as, putting off the water tap while not in use, use water wisely while bathing, etc. If each of us start saving water, then together it would have a compounded effect and help in reducing the problem of water crisis.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 What can the annual amount of rainfall and evaporation cause to water?

a) They make water disappear.
b) They make water polluted.
c) They make water rise and fall.
d) They make water boil.

22 Why should we be careful when carrying out projects depending on water?

a) to give us enough vegetables.
b) to ensure a sufficient supply of water for them.
c) to raise animals.
d) to employ more people.

Scanned with CamScanner

23 What does the underlined word "Vast" in the passage mean?
a) huge b) little c) small d) few

24 Which one of these isn't a way of saving water?
a) using water to cultivate the barren regions. c) putting off the water tap while not in use.
b) being wise while using it. d) using modern methods of irrigation.

25 Although we have a lot of water resources, what shouldn't we ignore?
a) That some countries don't have water. b) That water shortage is a serious problem.
c) that we drink a lot. d) that bathing takes much water.

26 What makes water one of the basic necessities of life?
a) It is used for drinking. b) It is used for cooking.
c) It is used for cleanliness. d) It is used for nearly all things.

27 Give a suitable title to the passage.
a) Water for drinking, cooking and washing b) The importance of water
c) Water for reclamation d) How to save water

28 The synonym of the word "barren" is .....
a) hospitable b) unfertile c) fruitful d) fertile

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The routine of following lesson after lesson can be very tiring. Recess time always seems so far away. The bell rings. One teacher leaves, another appears. What we need is a break from the monotony.

One morning, I felt that it was going to be just another day of endless studying. After what seemed a long time, the bell rang for the second period. The mathematics teacher left. Next, would be Geography with Mr. Ashraf

The short break between the going of one teacher and the coming of the next was when we had the opportunity to talk and have some fun. It usually lasted a minute or two, sometimes more.

This time no teacher appeared even after five minutes. We were having a great time. Ten minutes -- Mr. Ashraf still did not appear. Our monitor went out in search of him. A few minutes later, he returned to announce that Mr. Ashraf was absent. We cheered. This was unexpected, but it was welcome.

So for forty minutes we literally fooled around. The monitor could do nothing. What a good time we had. The bell rang again. Forty minutes of fun seemed so short, but it was great while it lasted.

Again no teacher appeared. It was another case of an absent teacher. We cheered even louder because it was, a double-period which meant we were free until recess.

Altogether we had one hundred and twenty minutes -- two hours, of no lesson. It was unexpected of course and I have to say I enjoyed it very much. I would not mind having more of this unexpected thing.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 According to the passage, the teachers are always .....
a) foreigners b) careless c) interesting d) accurate

30 From the words "routine" and "monotony" the writer seems to be .....
a) interested b) excited c) bored d) motivated

31 How long was each lesson?
a) five minutes b) forty minutes c) two minutes d) fifty minutes

32 The time taken between the lessons was usually ..... minutes.
a) One or two b) forty c) five d) ten

Scanned with CamScanner

33 What happened when the monitor announced that the geography teacher was absent?
a) The students hurried to ask about him.
b) The students were happy as they found a chance to have fun.
c) The students felt sad that they would miss an important lesson.
d) The students left their school and went back home.

34 What does a monitor do in class?
a) He/she searches for absent teachers.
b) He/she takes photographs of each student and teacher.
c) He/she listens to news or messages on a radio and reports on them.
d) He/she performs special duties, such as helping the teacher.

35 The absent teachers were ..... .
a) before and after the break.
b) the last two lessons
c) before the break
d) after the break

36 The synonym of the word "unexpected" is ..... .
a) surprising
b) expected
c) probable
d) accepted

37 Finding a job requires two main tasks: understanding your skills and understanding the job market. You should apply for the job that suits your skills.
a) يتطلب إيجاد الوظيفة مهمتين رئيسيتين: فهم مهاراتك وفهم سوق العمل فيجب أن تتقدم للوظيفة التى تناسب مهاراتك.
b) يتطلب إيجاد الوظيفة مفهومين رئيسيين: فهم موهبتك وفهم سوق العمل فيجب أن تتقدم للوظيفة التى تبحث عن مهاراتك.
c) يتطلب إيجاد الوظيفة مهمتين رئيسيتين: فهم مهاراتك وفهم سوق العمل فيجب أن تتقدم للوظيفة التى تناسب مهاراتك.
d) يتطلب إيجاد الوظيفة مفهومين رئيسيين: فهم مهاراتك وفهم سوق العمل فيجب أن تتقدم للوظيفة التى تناسب مهاراتك.

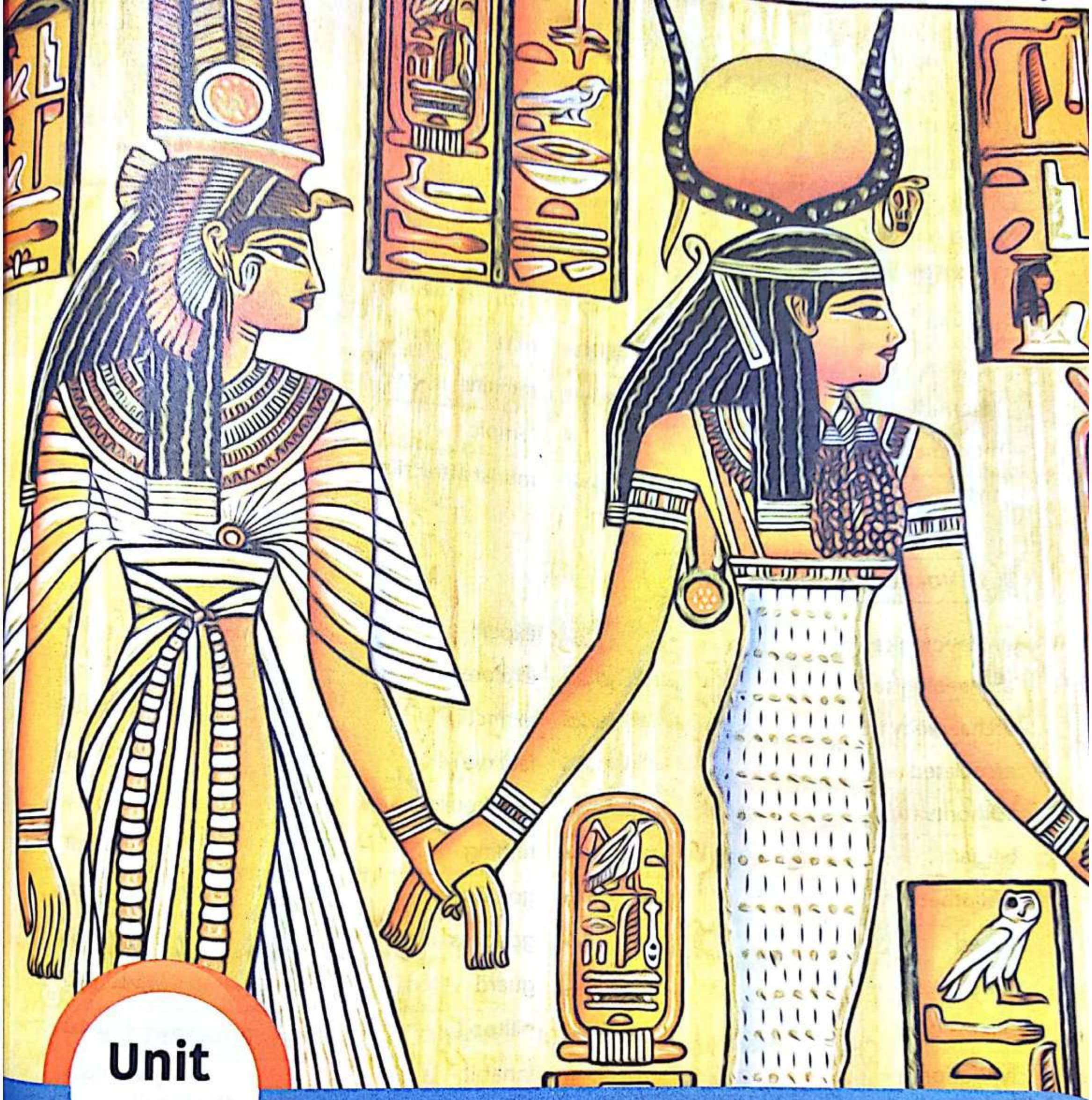
38 Parents have a big influence on developing their children's intelligence and character. They ca help them realise their potential by encouraging them know the world around them.
a) للآباء نفوذ كبير على تطوير ذكاء أطفالهم وشخصيتهم فقد يساعدونهم على إدراك نجاحهم بتشجيعهم على معرفة العالم من حولهم.
b) للآباء تأثير كبير على تطوير موهبة أطفالهم وشخصيتهم فقد يساعدونهم على تحقيق أهدافهم بتشجيعهم على معرفة العالم من حولهم.
c) للآباء تأثير كبير على تطوير ذكاء أطفالهم وشخصيتهم فقد يساعدونهم على إدراك قدراتهم بتشجيعهم على معرفة العالم من حولهم.
d) للآباء نفوذ كبير على تطوير ذكاء أطفالهم وشخصيتهم فقد يساعدونهم على إدراك طموحهم بتشجيعهم على معرفة العالم من حولهم.

39 تهتم الحكومة كثيرا بالأطفال ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة حتى يصبحوا أفرادا صالحين منتجين يساهمون فى تطوير المجتمع.
a) The government pays much attention to children with special needs so they can become productive members of society who can take place in developing society.
b) The government pays much interest to children with special needs so that they can become productive members of society who can take part in developing society.
c) The government pays much excitement to children with special needs because they can become productive directors of society who can take part in developing society.
d) The government pays much attention to children with special needs so that they became product members of society who can take place in developing society.

40 علينا بالاهتمام بالبحث العلمى ودراسة سوق العمل للقضاء على البطالة التى أصبحت أخطر المشكلات التى تواجه المجتمع المصرى.
a) We should care for scientific searc and studying the labour market in order to eliminat employment which became the most dangerous problem which the Egyptian society face
b) We should care for scientific research and studying the production sector in order to eliminat unemployment which became the most dangerous problem which the Egyptian society face
c) We should care for scientific search and studying the labour market in order to enhance unemployment which became the most dangerous problem which the Egyptian society faces.
d) We should care for scientific research and studying the labour market in order to eliminat unemployment which became the most dangerous problem which the Egyptian society face

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner



Unit 10

Places of cultural interest

Objectives

- Reading : A web page about places of cultural interest
- Writing : A descriptive essay on one of the ancient wonders; a review about places of cultural interest
- Listening : A tour of an historical site
- Speaking : Discuss places of cultural interest
- Language : must/can/can't have + past participle; would for past habits
- Life skills : Critical thinking – interpreting research; Respect for diversity: celebrating traditions and diversity

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

column (n)	عمود
heritage site (n)	موقع تراث
landmark (n)	معلم/علامة مميزة
monument (n)	أثر
myth (n)	أسطورة/خرافة
picturesque (adj)	تصويرى/رائع
port (n)	ميناء
remains (n)	آثار
temple (n)	معبد
tourist attraction (n)	معلم جذب سياحى

Vocabulary on Reading

archaeological (adj)	أثرى
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار
archaeology (n)	علم الآثار
associated (adj)	مرتبط
authority (n)	سلطة
bargain (n)	مساومة/صفقة
bibliotheca (n)	مكتبة
buried (adj)	مدفون
carve (v) (d)	يحفر/ينقش
cellar (n)	قبو
civilisation (n)	حضارة
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على
contemporary (adj)	معاصر/حديث
cultural (adj)	ثقافى
destruction (n)	تدمير/دمار
devote (v) (d)	يكرس
downwards (adv)	فى الاتجاه الأسفل
elaborate (adj)	مفصل/مدروس
entrance (n)	مدخل
expedition (n)	بعثة/مهمة استكشافية
expert (n)	خبير
explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
extinct (adj)	منقرض/بائد
fact file (n)	ملف حقائق
farmhouse (n)	بيت ريفى
finding (n)	اكتشاف
god Osiris	الإله أوزيريس
goddess (n)	إلهة
guard (v) (ed) (n)	يحرس/حارس
hilltop (n)	قمة تل
inhabit (v) (ed)	يسكن/يستعمر
lighthouse (n)	فنار/منارة
location (n)	موقع
mark (v) (ed)	يميز
Mediterranean (n)	البحر المتوسط
mummy (n)	مومياء
mural (n)	جدارية
observatory (n)	مرصد
original (adj)	أصلى/أساسى
owner (n)	مالك

Scanned with CamScanner

structure (n)	تركيب/مبنى
surround (v) (ed)	يحيط بـ
tongue (n)	لسان
treasure (n)	كنز
unearth (v) (ed)	يكشف
union (n)	اتحاد
valuable (adj)	قيم
wonder (n) (v) (ed)	عجيبة/أعجوبة (من العجائب)/يتساءل
worth (adj)	مساو/مستحق
period (n)	فترة
pillar (n)	عمود
powerful (adj)	قوى
preserve (v) (d)	يحفظ
process (n)	عملية
reign (n)	فترة حكم
royal (adj)	ملكى
ruins (n)	أطلال/آثار
sculpture (n)	تمثال
statue (n)	تمثال

Workbook Vocabulary

appreciate (v) (d)	يقدر/يقيم
bury (v) (~~y~~ied)	يدفن
classify (v) (~~y~~ied)	يصنف
cruise (n)	رحلة بحرية/نيلية
dedicate (v) (d)	يكرس
define (v) (d)	يحدد/يعرف
distance (n)	مسافة/بعد
image (n)	صورة
infection (n)	عدوى
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
necklace (n)	قلادة
necropolis (n)	مقبرة
ramp (n)	منحدر
religious (adj)	دينى
sacred (adj)	مقدس
well (n)	بئر

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) dedicated to	مكرس لـ
(be) devoted to	مخلص لـ
agree with	يتفق مع
apart from	بعيدًا عن
associated with	مرتبط بـ
centre for	مركز لـ
come across	يصادف
dig up	يحفر/يخرج بالحفر
find ... by chance	يجد ... بالصدفة
in honour of	تكريمًا لـ
end up	ينتهى إلى
go up	يصعد
hand in	يسلم
(be) known as	معروف كـ
pick up	يختار/يفاصل
stand on	يقف على

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
attract	يجذب	attraction	جذب	attractive	جذاب
associate	يربط/يصل	association	رابط/صلة	associated	متصل
devote	يكرس	devotion	تكريس	devoted	مكرس
explore	يستكشف	exploration	استكشاف	exploratory	استكشافى
locate	يحدد موقعًا	location	موقع	located	واقع
preserve	يحفظ	preservation	حفاظ	preserved	محفوظ
wonder	يتعجب	wonder	تعجب/تساؤل	wonderful	عجيب/رائع

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
associated	مرتبط	connected/linked	disconnected/disjoined	منفصل/غير متصل
contemporary	معاصر	modern/present-day	past/preceding	ماضٍ/سابق
elaborate	مفصل/مدروس	detailed/complicated	simple/unrefined	بسيط/غير معقد
guard	يحرس	protect/watch	desert/endanger	يهجر/يعرض للخطر
inhabit	يسكن/يستعمر	occupy/populate	depart	يغادر/ يرحل
original	أصلى/أساسى	authentic	fake/false	مزيف
preserve	يحفظ	conserve/maintain	abandon/harm	يهجر/يضر
unearth	يكشف	dig up/reveal	conceal/cover	يخفى/يغطى
wonder	عجيبة	amazement/admiration	disregard	عدم اهتمام

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An ..... is a tall solid upright stone post used to support a building or as a decoration.
   a) wall b) base c) column d) arch
2. The Statue of Liberty is a very famous ..... known all over the world.
   a) landslide b) landmark c) landfill d) landlord
3. The ship is now in the ..... but will be leaving soon.
   a) port b) village c) coast d) beach
4. Before we put up our tent, we explored the ..... of the camp carefully.
   a) scene b) position c) destination d) site
5. The Eiffel Tower is the most important tourist ..... in Paris.
   a) plan b) fiction c) attraction d) foundation

Answers 1) d 2) b 3) a 4) d 5) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

Top tourist sites in Alexandria

Bibliotheca Alexandrina

Alexandria is a Mediterranean port city in Egypt. During the Hellenistic period (between 323 BCE and 31 BCE), it was home to the Great Library of Alexandria, which was dedicated to the Muses (the nine goddesses of the arts) and it was one of the largest and most important libraries of the Ancient World. Because of the Great Library, Alexandria became known as a centre for knowledge and learning. Built in around 300 BCE, there are many myths(1) surrounding the destruction of the library, but unfortunately there are no archaeological remains. In its place today is the impressive modern Bibliotheca Alexandrina, built between 1995 and 2002. It is one of Egypt's most important contemporary landmarks(2) and the cultural heart of the city. Apart from its huge library and reading room, containing more than eight million books, there are many museums where you can explore Alexandria's history and heritage(3).

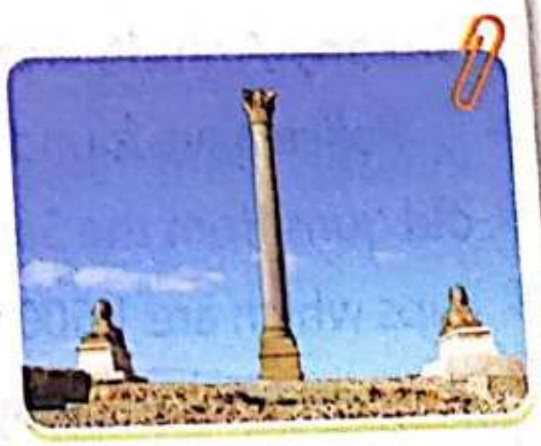
(1) أساطير
(2) معالم
(3) تراث

Lighthouse of Alexandria

The Lighthouse of Alexandria was known as one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. It was the tallest structure in the world until the Eiffel Tower was built in 1889. Built in 280 BCE, the lighthouse stood until 1323 CE when a powerful earthquake destroyed it. In 1968, the remains of the lighthouse were discovered under water. Other expeditions in future years uncovered more ruins of the lighthouse. Today, on the site of the lighthouse stands Fort Qaitbey which has guarded the port(4) of Alexandria since 1480. It's a very popular and picturesque(5) tourist attraction(6).

(4) ميناء
(5) تصويرى/رائع
(6) معلم جذب سياحى

Pompey's Pillar



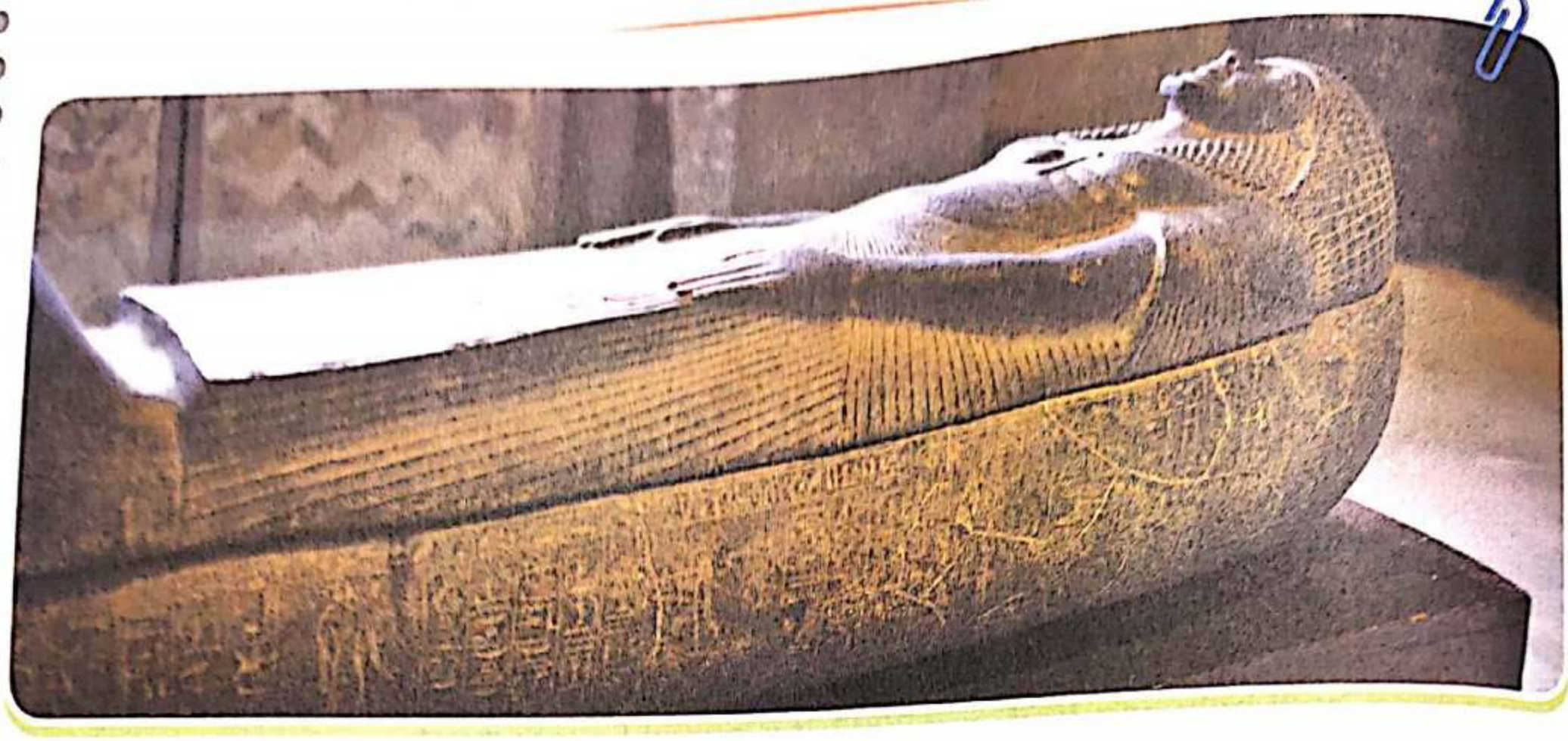
This single stone pillar, which is more than 20 metres tall, stands on a rocky hilltop in the middle of Alexandria. Built in 292 CE, it marks the site of what was once a huge and elaborate temple(7), the Temple of Serapeum, built during the reign of Ptolemy III Euergetes (246-221 BCE). It is one of the best-known ancient monuments(8) still standing in Alexandria today. Underneath the column, steps lead downwards to the ruins of the Temple.

(7) معبد
(8) آثار

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Archaeology news around the world



Virú, Peru

Ancient wall painting discovered in Peru

Archaeologists in northern Peru have found a 3,200-year-old mural[1] – wall painting – painted on the side of an ancient temple that is thought to show a Spider God, associated with rain. Experts say that because of the location of the temple near the river, it must have been a temple built in honour of the water Gods. It is thought that it might have belonged to the extinct[2] Cupisnique people, who inhabited the northern coast of Peru between 2,000 and 1,000 BCE.

Alexandria, Egypt

Mummies with gold tongues unearthed

Archaeologists have dug up ancient mummies – bodies preserved[3] by a special process – with gold tongues left in their mouths. These mummies, found in a temple in the port city of Alexandria, are believed to be 2,000 years old. It is thought that the Ancient Egyptians might have given the mummies gold tongues so they could speak to the god Osiris[4].

Saxony-Anhalt, Germany

Police have found ancient treasures in a farmhouse, after the owner offered to hand in two old guns from the Second World War (1939-45). They came across 13 sculptures[5], dishes and cups which are 1,500 years old and are worth around €100,000 in a plastic bag with the guns. They are from the Mayan Civilisation[6] of Mexico and Guatemala. The owner of the farmhouse had picked up the treasures cheaply in a market. It's unclear why he buried them in the cellar[7] of his farmhouse, but he can't have known their real value. It is thought that the original[8] owner may have bought them while travelling in South America.

(1) جدارية

(2) منقرض/بائد

(3) محفوظ

(4) أوزيريس

(5) تماثيل

(6) حضارة

(7) قبو

(8) أصلي/أساسي

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Welcome to this picturesque location on the banks of the River Nile. We are now at a very important landmark called Kom Ombo. What is Kom Ombo? Well, it is a temple dedicated to, Sobek and Horus. You can see images of them on these stone columns. Not far away we can see how the remains of the nearby town are mostly buried in sand. Now, here you can see a small water well. Some believe sacred crocodiles were kept in the water here but others think it is just a myth. This is a very popular tourist attraction especially for cruise ships sailing along the Nile between Luxor and Aswan. Although there is no large port for ships to stop at, you can still get on and off them nearby. UNESCO has classified this monument as a World heritage site, and I hope you appreciate why.

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Tomb of Tutankhamun was discovered by an English ..... called Howard Carter.
   a) accountant b) archaeologist c) journalist d) actor
2. The statue was ..... out of a single piece of stone.
   a) dug b) broke c) curved d) carved
3. Al Quds is ..... to Jews, Christians and Muslims.
   a) puzzled b) minor c) sacred d) elementary
4. The tourists will be taking a ..... down the Nile from Cairo to Aswan.
   a) task b) flight c) cruise d) duty
5. Scientists have discovered a new type of butterfly which has not yet been ..... .
   a) classified b) explored c) devised d) derived

Answers 1) b 2) d 3) c 4) b 5) a

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

column عمود	a tall solid upright stone post used to support a building or as a decoration
heritage site موقع تراث	an important building or object that is easy to be seen from a distance
landmark معلم/علامة مميزة	a place which has a historic importance
monument أثر	a building, statue, or other large structure that is built to remind people of an important event or famous person
myth أسطورة/خرافة	an ancient story that may or not be true

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

temple	معبد	a building used for a religious reason
come across	يصادف	find something by chance
dig up	يحفر/يخرج بالحفر	remove something from the ground
hand in	يسلم	give something to someone in authority
pick up	يختار/يفاصل	buy something cheaply
picturesque	تصويرى/رائع	a word to describe something beautiful and possibly old

Notes on Vocabulary

1 column

تستخدم column بأكثر من معنى مختلف:

١- عمود فى مبنى

There are about 30 columns in the main hall of the temple.

٢- عمود فى جدول مكتوب أو مرسوم

You should add up the numbers in each column to get the total.

٣- عمود (مقال) ثابت فى جريدة أو مجلة لكاتب

My favourite writer has a weekly column for 'Al Ahram'.

٤- خانة/عمود/جزء مخصص لخبر أو تقرير فى جريدة أو مجلة

If you want to read more about the sports news, turn to page 10, column 2.

٥- شىء يأخذ شكل عمود (كدخان مثلًا)

After the fire, there was a column of smoke rising from the house.

٦- صف متحرك من مجموعة من الناس

In the morning, there was a column of marching men getting into the metro station.

2 carve (ينحت) يحفر فى شىء أو من شىء

Someone had carved their initials on the tree.

This statue is carved from a single block of marble.

dig (يحفر) فى الأرض باليد أو باداة

They dug a small hole in the sand to hide the wooden box.

drill يثقب/يحفر (باستخدام أداة غالبًا) بحثًا عن شىء

We must drill for oil in new places in the desert.

3 mark ١- يحدد (على خريطة/كتاب)

٢- يحدد/يميز

He had marked the route on the map in red.

Cairo is marked by the Egyptian Museum and Cairo Tower.

limit (يحدد/يقصر) يضع حدًا لـ

The government is considering a decision to limit imports of foreign cars.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

location موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلًا)
- We have not found a suitable location for the new offices.
- Most of the movie was shot on location in Africa.

position موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلًا) مكانة/وظيفة/مركز فى الملعب
- First, get yourself into a comfortable position.
- I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.

destination جهة الوصول/المكان المقصود
- They should reach their destination by about mid-afternoon.

Notes on sentences from Reading Texts

- In its place today is the impressive modern Bibliotheca Alexandrina, built between 1995 and 2002.

فى الجملة اختصار بحذف ضمير الوصل (which/that) و (verb to be) فالجملة أصلها.

In its place today is the impressive modern Bibliotheca Alexandrina, which/that was built between 1995 and 2002.

- Apart from its huge library and reading room, containing more than eight million books, ...

فى الجملة اختصار بحذف ضمير الوصل (which/that) فالجملة أصلها.

Apart from its huge library and reading room, which/that contain more than eight million books, ...

- It was the tallest structure in the world until the Eiffel Tower was built in 1889.

لاحظ استخدام جملتين مثبتتين فى زمن الماضى البسيط مع أداة الربط (until).

the lighthouse stood until 1323 CE when a powerful earthquake destroyed it.

لاحظ استخدام (until) كحرف جر فى هذه الجملة.

- Police have found ancient treasures in a farmhouse

لاحظ أن كلمة (Police) يمكن أن تأتى بدون (the) ودائمًا يتبعها فعل فى صيغة الجمع.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The archaeologists are working hard to repair the columns at the ancient temples. Columns here means ..... .
   a) pillars b) articles c) lines d) rows
2. This map shows the exact ..... of the project.
   a) existence b) location c) destination d) position
3. We had ..... the route on the map before we started the trip.
   a) limited b) drawn c) marked d) devised
4. Bad boys ..... their initials on many trees in the park.
   a) curved b) drilled c) carved d) read

Answers 1) a 2) b 3) c 4) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Library of Alexandria is part of the national ..... of our country.

a) luck b) fortune c) loss d) heritage

2 The Pyramids are of the most famous ..... in the world.

a) landfills b) landmarks c) landslides d) landlords

3 Egypt's ancient ..... attract tourists from all over the world.

a) resorts b) canals c) monuments d) skyscrapers

4 Contrary to popular ....., no vampires مصاصى دماء had ever lived on Earth.

a) art b) fact c) truth d) myth

5 Abu Simbel is the site of two ..... which were carved into a cliff.

a) temples b) columns c) pillars d) obelisk

6 Alexandria is Egypt's main ..... on the Mediterranean coast.

a) route b) port c) island d) peak

7 ..... is the study of ancient societies, done by looking into tools, bones and buildings.

a) Biology b) Astronomy c) Psychology d) Archaeology

8 Experts say that taking breaks can relieve the psychological harm ..... with working hard and improve work performance.

a) associated b) void c) vague d) disjoined

9 Students need to have time for relaxation and ..... activities, as well as for academic work.

a) strange b) economical c) cultural d) literary

10 Several hundred species of birds ..... the Galapagos Islands.

a) inhibit b) inhabit c) disappear d) appear

11 A/An ..... is a special building from which scientists watch the moon and stars.

a) office b) post c) laboratory d) observatory

12 It is believed that the Great Wall of China was built during the ..... of many emperors.

a) design b) role c) reign d) decade

13 The chef had prepared a very ..... meal with dishes from three countries.

a) usual b) elaborate c) impossible d) serious

14 Some young scientists went on a/an ..... to explore the North Pole.

a) expedition b) profession c) discovery d) invention

15 The flight stops at Hong Kong before going on to its final ....., San Francisco.

a) location b) position c) destination d) post

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

16 The proposed new office tower is a steel and glass ..... of 43 storeys high.
a) infrastructure b) structure c) sculpture d) base

17 Scientists believe that someday people will ..... all of the ocean bottoms in submarines.
a) explore b) innovate c) create d) invent

18 The army soldiers ..... our country against any attacks.
a) reply b) attract c) guard d) defy

19 The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the Seven ..... of the Ancient World which is still admired everywhere.
a) Expectations b) Wonders c) Inventions d) Discoveries

20 The remains of an important tomb were ..... last year by archaeologists.
a) carved b) drilled c) covered d) unearthed

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 It is very important to guard our national heritage which we are proud of. The verb "guard" is an antonym of the verb ".....".
a) keep b) preserve c) endanger d) remain

22 The monuments in Egypt are probably the most important tourist ..... .
a) attract b) attractions c) attracted d) attractive

23 The last staff meeting was dedicated ..... discussing the plan of the new project.
a) at b) of c) in d) to

24 A special memorandum was built in ..... of the great heroes at war.
a) honour b) detest c) reward d) prize

25 To preserve plants and animals, governments establish nature reserves. The word "preserve" is similar in meaning to ".....".
a) decrease b) release c) damage d) conserve

26 Mr Ehab, our neighbour, is really a ..... man who cares much for his family.
a) devote b) devotion c) devoted d) devotedly

27 While having lunch at the restaurant, I came ..... one of my old friends.
a) in b) across c) into d) out

28 There are some contemporary plans to move the ministries to the New Capital. The synonym of "contemporary" is ".....".
a) present-day b) fake c) imaginary d) ancient

29 The Qaitbay Citadel stands ..... a place where Pombey's Pillar was previously built.
a) for b) about c) of d) on

30 Experts examined the painting and said it was original. The opposite of the adjective "original" is ".....".
a) modern b) false c) clear d) clean

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(B) Language

Modal verbs of deduction

يمكن استخدام بعض الأفعال الناقصة لبيان درجة التأكد من شيء سواء فى المضارع أو الماضى كالآتى:

Deduction	Certain مؤكد	Near certain شبه مؤكد	Uncertain غير مؤكد	Very uncertain غير مؤكد إلى حد كبير
Present	am/is/are الفعل نفسه	must be أكيد	may be ربما	could be ربما might be ربما
Past	was/were الفعل نفسه	must have + P.P. كان من المؤكد	may have + P.P. كان من المحتمل	might have + P.P. could have + P.P. ربما كان من المحتمل

لاحظ بعد الأفعال الناقصة نستخدم المصدر ولكن فى الاستنتاج فى المضارع فى الغالب استخدام verb to (be) بمعنى يكون وبعدها اسم أو صفة وإذا لزم الأمر نستخدم المصدر من أى فعل حسب المعنى.

Affirmative	Negative
must be لابد أنه	can't be لا يمكن أن يكون
must have + P.P. أكيد (ماضٍ)	can't have + P.P. لا يمكن أن (ماضٍ)
may/might + inf. من الممكن أن يكون	may not/might not + inf. من غير الممكن أن يكون
could be من الممكن أن يكون	couldn't be من غير الممكن أن يكون
could have + P.P. ربما (للماضى)	couldn't have + P.P. من المستحيل أن (ماضٍ)

1 must

We use must when we feel sure that something is true because there's very strong evidence.

نستخدم must عندما نشعر بأن شيئا ما حقيقى بسبب وجود دليل قوى.

- His house must be near here because he comes to work on foot. (We're sure it's not far away.)
- You're a zookeeper! That must be very interesting.
- You must have been happy when you heard you'd passed the exam.
- Oh no! Where's my car? Someone must have stolen it!

2 might, may, could

We use might, may or could to say that we think something is possible but we're not sure.

نستخدم might, may, could عندما نعتقد أن شيئا ما ممكن ولكن لسنا متأكدين .

- We'll try to get there early but we may arrive late if there's a lot of traffic.
- Don't put the vase up there. It could fall off and hit someone.
- The thieves might have escaped by car but we aren't sure.
- I can't find my purse. I could have left it in the supermarket but I don't know.

Scanned with CamScanner

can't

We use can't when we feel sure something is not true because there's very strong evidence.

تستخدم عندما نشعر بأن شيئًا ما غير حقيقى بسبب وجود دليل قوى .

- He has to work on the feast Day? He can't feel very happy about that.
- Osama can't be in the garden. He is still asleep.
- I thought I saw Ramy in town this morning but it can't have been him – he's in Greece this week.
- I can't have left my bag in the supermarket – I had it on the bus on the way home.

لاحظ

1. عند صياغة المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع نضيف be بعد modal verb ثم التصريف الثالث:
- The film may be shown again for those who haven't seen it.

2. عند صياغة المبنى للمجهول فى الماضى نضيف been بعد have ثم التصريف الثالث:
- His bag may have been left on the train.

3. من الممكن استخدام may have + P.P. للمستقبل التام فيجب ملاحظة الفرق بين الزمنين.
- In 30 years' time, we may have used solar energy in all our homes.
- Ali got low marks in yesterday's exam. He may have wasted his time playing.

4. تستخدم could have + P.P. بمعنى احتمال حدوث الفعل فى الماضى وأيضًا بمعنى أنه كان من الممكن فعل شىء ولم نفعله.
- He didn't attend the party yesterday. He could have forgotten the time or missed the way.
- He went to school on foot, but he could have taken the train.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali ..... happy. He has just won a gold medal.
   a) must have been b) can't be
   c) must be d) can't have been
2. He ..... cold. He isn't wearing a jacket.
   a) must be b) can't be
   c) is d) must have been
3. They ..... lunch. Their food is still in the fridge.
   a) must have b) can't have
   c) must have had d) can't have had
4. The tourist ..... American because he has an English guidebook.
   a) might be b) can't be
   c) isn't d) can't have been
5. I can't find my book. I ..... it at home.
   a) may leave b) might have left
   c) must leave d) can't have left

Answers 1 c) 2 b) 3 d) 4 a) 5 b)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Your mother ..... a great cook. You are always so keen to get back home to eat!
a) can't be b) must be c) may not be d) isn't

2 It ..... be a burglar. All the doors and windows are locked.
a) can't b) must c) mustn't d) should

3 I don't know where Ahmed is. He ..... at work.
a) must be b) can't be c) may be d) is

4 Everyone is putting their umbrellas up, it ..... raining.
a) can't have started b) must start c) mustn't start d) must have started

5 You ..... the door. It was open when I got home.
a) can lock b) can't have locked c) can't lock d) can have locked

6 I cannot find my eyeglasses. I ..... them at home. I'm not sure.
a) must have left b) should have left c) may have left d) can't have left

7 The police have set him free. He ..... innocent.
a) can't be b) can't have been c) isn't d) must be

8 This ..... be his car. He is too poor to afford such an expensive vehicle.
a) can't b) may c) must d) might

9 Ali ..... to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!
a) can't travel b) can't have travelled
c) must travel d) should have travelled

10 Really, I can't remember you, but I ..... you somewhere; it's possible!
a) must have met b) can't have met c) might have met d) must meet

11 He came late. He ..... the train, but I'm not sure.
a) may have missed b) must have missed
c) must miss d) can't have missed

12 Ordinary people ..... the statues. They were too heavy.
a) might have moved b) mustn't have moved
c) must have moved d) couldn't have moved

13 It ..... cold there. There is snow on the ground in the photo.
a) can't have been b) must have been c) can't be d) isn't

14 Why did you run across the road? You ..... killed.
a) could have been b) must have c) can't have d) should have

15 Winning the first prize last year ..... Ali very happy.
a) will have made b) can't make c) mustn't make d) must have made

16 We didn't see Tarek at the sports club today. He ..... there.
a) must have been b) may be
c) might not have been d) must be

17 You ..... that book already. You only bought it this morning!
a) can't have finished b) must have finished
c) must finish d) may finish

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 **A:** I wonder who took my alarm clock.
B: It ..... Jehan. She was supposed to get up early.
a) might be b) could be c) had to be d) must have been

19 I don't think she ..... . Call her again.
a) can have heard b) might have heard c) must hear d) can be heard

20 Sugar ..... be bad for his health, but it is for me.
a) didn't need to b) must not c) may not d) doesn't have to

21 **A:** Is this Omar Khaled?
B: Sorry. You ..... the wrong number.
a) must dial b) can't have dialled
c) might dial d) must have dialled

22 Hala is very late. She ..... about the party.
a) may not have known b) may know
c) had to know d) could have known

23 The lights have gone out. A fuse ..... .
a) might blow b) could blow c) will have blown d) must have blown

24 The plane ..... already. It's not due to go until 9.55.
a) must not leave b) can't leave
c) can't have left d) needn't have left

25 **A:** I took Ola to the cinema last night. **B:** You ..... me too. I was at home.
a) might take b) may have been taken
c) could have taken d) must have taken

26 **A:** His office is empty. He must have gone home.
B: But his briefcase is here. He ..... home.
a) could have gone b) can't have gone
c) might not go d) ought not to go

27 The order ..... to the wrong address.
a) must have been sent b) ought to be sent
c) might have sent d) could have sent

28 Sama ..... some problems. She keeps crying.
a) must have had b) must have
c) needs to have d) may have had

29 Which sentence is correctly structured?
a) He wasn't at school yesterday. He must be ill.
b) He wasn't at school yesterday. He had to be ill.
c) He wasn't at school yesterday. He can't be ill.
d) He wasn't at school yesterday. He must have been ill.

30 Which sentence is correctly structured?
a) He isn't eating with his friends. He must be hungry.
b) He isn't eating with his friends. He is hungry.
c) He isn't eating with his friends. He can't be hungry.
d) He isn't eating with his friends. He must have been hungry.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercise
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As a police officer, you have the ..... to catch people who break the law.
   a) instability b) authority c) reflection d) minority
2. The story of this classic film is old, but it has importance to ..... audiences.
   a) contemporary b) past c) previous d) puzzled
3. The new ..... revealed the artist's skillful hand.
   a) exploration b) invention c) sculpture d) scene
4. It is known that good books are the ..... of human knowledge, experience and wisdom.
   a) enemies b) routines c) articles d) treasures
5. The trip to Paris will cost you a lot of money, but it'll be ..... it.
   a) value b) vivid c) worth d) devalue
6. Egypt's ancient civilisation represented in its ..... has captured people's admiration everywhere.
   a) remains b) towers c) pillars d) papyrus
7. The writer of *Gulliver's Travels* gave a/an ..... description of his journeys in his book which is still liked by many people.
   a) impressed b) defective c) dull d) picturesque
8. It is the role of archaeologists to unearth buried archaeological objects. The antonym of the word "unearth" is ".....".
   a) regulate b) innovate c) uncover d) cover
9. All the lights in Tamer's room are turned off. He ..... sleeping.
   a) must not be b) had to be
   c) must have been d) must be
10. I walked to school this morning, but I ..... a bus.
    a) didn't need to take b) could have taken c) might take d) had better take
11. They left the cinema before the film ended. It ..... boring!
    a) must have been b) must be c) can't have been d) may be
12. Since you have been working for hours, you ..... tired now.
    a) might have been b) must have been c) could be d) can't be
13. **A:** Mrs. Nour was found dead with a wire around her neck.
    B: She ..... strangled مخنوق.
    a) should have b) must have been
    c) had to be d) ought to have been
14. **A:** Look at the magician. He is sawing that woman in half!
    B: He ..... sawing her in half. It ..... a trick.
    a) mustn't be/might be b) must be/might be
    c) ought not to be/can be d) cannot be/must be
15. **A:** Surely he has woken up.
    B: Well, I can hear snoring شخير coming from his room.
    A: He ..... then.
    a) can't wake up b) might not wake up
    c) cannot have woken up d) must have woken up

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

16 I can't find my keys. I think they ..... in the library.
a) must have been left
b) must have left
c) had to be
d) should have left

17 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
a) Samy is not really, (nice-looking) and yet he is a good actor.
b) Samy is not really Nice Looking, and yet he is a good actor.
c) Samy is not really nice-looking! and yet he is a good actor.
d) Samy is not really nice-looking, and yet he is a good actor.

18 One of the following is NOT TRUE about a good paragraph.
a) It should have unity.
b) It should be coherent.
c) It concentrates on one main idea.
d) It should be less than four sentences.

19 A concluding paragraph of an essay is important because ..... .
a) it gives information
b) it conveys thoughts and ideas
c) it supports analysis and reflection
d) it provides closure to the end of the story

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Our culture is the system we use to build our identity. All living creatures are part of a culture. Even animals have a culture! So, what is culture? It's the way we behave in a group. It begins with each individual family. Within our families, we do things to build relationships with each other. This can include routines for doing things. It also includes traditions. Traditions are activities that are repeated on a regular basis. Culture is not limited to individual family groups. The real strength of culture is in larger community groups. These larger groups are called societies.

Every society makes rules for itself. It decides how people should act in different situations. Some of these rules are written down. Some are just things that are automatically expected of all members of that society. Often, cultures can be identified by what the people believe. Cultures are also known by what they choose to include in their art. Sometimes a society forms around people who speak the same language.

Cultures may also be known for their customs, including the foods they make and the things they do. Our cultures help us understand who we are and what we believe. There are very strong emotions connecting us to our own society. Two different cultures may disagree on beliefs, especially if they both feel strongly about them. When that happens, war is a common result. People are learning better ways to communicate with each other. The more we learn, the more we appreciate the differences in cultures.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 Cultural rules made by a society are ..... .
a) all written down
b) divided between written and expected
c) not at all written down
d) made by old people

21 The writer suggests that culture starts with ..... .
a) an individual
b) a society
c) a tribe
d) a family

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

22 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ..... .
a) beliefs
b) feelings
c) rules
d) cultures

23 According to the passage, culture can be identified by ..... .
a) what people draw
b) what people do
c) what people believe and do
d) what people believe

24 What role does culture play inside a family?
a) It keeps the traditions.
b) It helps build relationships.
c) It develops art.
d) It defends people's language.

25 According to the passage, culture leads to ..... with our society.
a) war
b) habits
c) fighting
d) strong emotions

26 Suggest a suitable title for the passage.
a) Culture in our community
b) Culture and language
c) Culture and life
d) Culture and customs

27 The more we learn, the more we appreciate the differences in cultures. The word "appreciate" here means "..... ".
a) realise
b) welcome
c) go up in price
d) be grateful for

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 Egypt has been famous since ancient times for its curative tourism which treats many diseases.
a) تشتهر مصر منذ القدم بسياحتها العلاجية التى تعالج الكثير من الأمراض.
b) مصر مشهورة لأنه فى العصور القديمة كانت السياحة تعالج كثيرًا من الأمراض.
c) تشتهر مصر منذ القدم بعلاج السياحة وعلاج الكثير من الأمراض.
d) مصر مشهورة بالسياحة العلاجية منذ العصور القديمة التى عالجت كثيرًا من الأمراض.

29 The ancient monuments all over Egypt are great evidence of the talents of the Pharaohs and their abilities to do wonders.
a) إن المبانى القديمة فى كل أنحاء مصر دليل كبير على إبداع الفراعنة وقدراتهم على القيام بالعجائب.
b) إن الآثار القديمة فى بعض أنحاء مصر دليل كبير على مواهب الفراعنة وقدراتهم على القيام بالعلم.
c) إن الآثار القديمة فى كل أنحاء مصر ليست دليلًا كبيرًا على مواهب الفراعنة وقدراتهم على القيام بالعجائب.
d) إن الآثار القديمة فى كل أنحاء مصر دليل كبير على مواهب الفراعنة وقدراتهم على القيام بالعجائب.

30 إعادة بناء مكتبة الإسكندرية كان إحياء للتراث الذى يعكس حضارة مصر وتذكرة بدورها الرائد فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط .
a) The devastation of the Library of Alexandria was a reunion to the heritage which reflects Egypt's civilisation and a reminder of its pioneering role in the Middle East.
b) The reconstruction of the Library of Alexandria was a revival to the heritage which denies Egypt's civilisation and a memory of its pioneering role in the Far East.
c) The reconstruction of the Library of Alexandria was a revival to the heritage which reflects Egypt's civilisation and a reminder of its pioneering role in the Middle East.
d) The reconstruction of the Library of Alexandria was a revival to the heritage which reflects Egypt's civilisation and a repetition of its minor role in the Middle East.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

absolute (adj)	أساسى/مؤكد/مطلق
appreciate (v) (d)	يقدر/يقيم
arrow (n)	سهم
artefacts (n)	مصنوعات يدوية
beneath (adv)	أسفل
beneficial (adj)	مفيد/نافع
civilisation (n)	حضارة
coffin (n)	تابوت
cost (n) (v)	تكلفة/يكلف
display (n) (v) (ed)	عرض/يعرض
emotional (adj)	عاطفى
entire (adj)	كامل/تام
facilities (n)	مرافق/تسهيلات
feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة/نقد
grand (adj)	كبير
hall (n)	صالة
highlight (v) (ed) (n)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يحث
moving (adj)	مؤثر - محرك للمشاعر
must-see (adj)	مهم رؤيته
national (adj)	قومى
parade (n)	عرض/استعراض
part (n)	جزء
passage (n)	ممر
Pharaoh (n)	فرعون
prehistoric (adj)	ما قبل التاريخ
procession (n)	موكب
recommend (v) (ed)	يرشح/يوصى بـ
ruler (n)	حاكم
section (n)	قسم
sights (n)	أماكن سياحية
single (adj)	مفرد
spectacular (adj)	رائع
tips (n)	نصائح
tour (n) (v) (ed)	جولة/يقوم بجولة
transport (v) (ed)	ينقل

Workbook Vocabulary

agriculture (n)	الزراعة
alleyway (n)	حارة
authentic (adj)	حقيقى/أصلى
backpack (n)	حقيبة ظهر
bazaar (n)	بازار/سوق
captivate (v) (d)	يأسر/يجذب اهتمام
categorise (v) (d)	يصنف
craft (n)	حرفة/مصنوعات يدوية
dam (n)	سد
decipher (v) (ed)	يحل الشفرة
display (v) (ed) (n)	يعرض/عرض
Fatimid (adj)	من العصر الفاطمى
festival (n)	مهرجان
gateway (n)	بوابة
gift (n)	هدية
highlight (n)	عمل بارز

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

UNIT 10 Places of cultural interest

historic (adj)	تاريخى
mausoleum (n)	ضريح
maze (n)	متاهة
medieval (adj)	متعلق بالقرون الوسطى
open-air (adj)	مفتوح
pie chart (n)	مخطط دائرى
practical (adj)	عملى
preserve (v) (ed)	يحفظ
product (n)	منتج
royal (adj)	ملكى
shop front (n)	واجهة المتجر
souvenir (n)	تذكار
spices (n)	بهارات

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

all in all	الكل فى الكل/إجمالا
(be) worth visiting	يستحق الزيارة
comment on	يعلق على
feel for	شعور/رغبة لـ
important in	مهم فى
interesting to	شيق لـ
conduct a survey on	يجرى دراسة/مسح على
follow the direction arrows	يتبع اتجاه الأسهم
be located in	يقع فى
transport to	ينقل إلى
visitors to	زوار لـ
write down	يدون/يسجل

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appreciate	يقدر	appreciation	تقدير	appreciative	تقديرى
benefit	يفيد	benefit	فائدة	beneficial	نافع
civilise	يمدن/يحسن أسلوب	civilisation	حضارة	civilised	متحضر
inspire	يلهم	inspiration	إلهام	inspiring	ملهم
recommend	يرشح	recommendation	توصية	recommended	مرشح
transport	ينقل	transport	نقل	transported	منقول

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
absolute	مؤكد	certain/definite	incomplete/uncertain غير كامل/غير مؤكد
appreciate	يقدر	respect/value	disrespect لا يحترم
beneficial	نافع	helpful/profitable	harmful/useless ضار/بلا فائدة
emotional	عاطفى	passionate/sentimental	indifferent/unemotional غير مبال/غير عاطفى
highlight	يسلط الضوء	focus/emphasise	neglect يهمل
recommend	يرشح	propose/suggest	oppose/reject يعارض/ينبذ
single	مفرد	individual	group مجموعة
spectacular	رائع	amazing/astonishing	common/dull عادى/ممل

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Thousands of people came into the main square to watch the fireworks ..... of the New Year.
   a) affair b) display c) movie d) gallery
2. On entering the meeting ....., the manager found everyone waiting for him.
   a) course b) pitch c) hall d) hole
3. The day which we spent in Grand Egyptian Museum was definitely the ..... of our trip.
   a) flashlight b) spotlight c) plight d) highlight
4. Thousands of people moved slowly in the ..... of the king's funeral.
   a) profession b) procession c) prediction d) position
5. I highly ..... this book. It has really affected my thinking about social problems.
   a) recommend b) suggest c) persuade d) comply

Answers 1 b) 2 c) 3 d) 4 b) 5 a)

Reading Text (1)

A new modern museum in Old Cairo

P Samer
6
4.5 ●●●●◐ 29 reviews

Excellent	10
Very good	8
Average	3
Poor	1
Terrible	0

I decided to visit The National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation(1) after watching a YouTube video of the spectacular Pharaoh's Golden Parade(2). This was a grand procession in which 22 mummies of Ancient Egyptian rulers(3) were transported from the old Egyptian Museum to the new National Museum of Egyptian Civilisation in the ancient city of Fustat.

It was one of the most moving sights(4) I have ever experienced; so much heritage and culture in one single parade! The museum, which opened after the parade in May 2021, is very beautiful and impressive. The mummy section(5), located in the Royal Mummies Hall beneath the main hall, is not to be missed. For me, it was definitely the highlight. The displays(6) contain 18 kings and four queens that ruled Ancient Egypt over 3,000 years ago. Visitors can follow the direction arrows on the floor to go through the passages, tour the entire hall, and see all the mummies, which are displayed next to the coffins(7) they were found in. In the main museum you can see more than 50,000 artefacts(8), showing Egyptian civilisation from prehistoric(9) times to the present day.

The museum is an absolute must-see for anyone travelling to Egypt. It's open from 9 am to 5 pm, but it's well worth visiting early in the morning, so you can appreciate(10) the museum best when it's quiet. Entry tickets cost 60 LE for Egyptians and 200 LE for non-Egyptians. There's a small café that sells tea, coffee and sandwiches. Make sure you go early, since traffic can become difficult after 12 noon.

(1) حضارة
(2) عرض
(3) حكام
(4) أماكن سياحية
(5) قسم
(6) عرض/استعراض
(7) توابيت
(8) مصنوعات يدوية
(9) ما قبل التاريخ
(10) يقدر

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (2) (Workbo

The wonderful hidden treasures of Khan el-Khalili

I have always loved looking for wonderful souvenirs in markets and small shops, so when I was in Cairo, the Khan el-Khalili bazaar was a must-see for me!

Today it is an open-air market where you can find local crafts and souvenirs but it has a long history and used to be a mausoleum for the Fatimid royal family before being rebuilt in 1511. As you enter the narrow streets you feel as though you have been transported to medieval Egypt. The colourful products displayed in shop fronts, the sellers and powerful smells of spices and traditional food captivate you and transport you to another world.

The bazaar opens at 9.00 am and most shops close quite late. Nobody seems to know just how many shops there are and it's quite easy to get lost in the maze of alleyways so you should wear comfortable shoes. If you need a rest, a refreshing coffee or sweet tea at the historic El-Fishawi café (established in the 1770s) is well worth it.

All in all, I loved the variety of local products and the chance to get a real feel for the authentic Egyptian experience. The highlight for me was getting some wonderful souvenirs for my friends and family back home. The only thing I didn't like was that I had too many souvenirs to carry! My advice to you is to make sure you buy a large backpack to put all your gifts in and carry them easily!

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The painting had to go on a number of tests to make sure it is a/an ..... one.
   - a) photocopied
   - b) authentic
   - c) allergic
   - d) pirated
2. The tourists were ..... by the beautiful tomb of King Tutankhamun.
   - a) damaged
   - b) refrained
   - c) harmed
   - d) captivated
3. In ancient times, Sinai was always invaded as the ..... to Egypt.
   - a) gateway
   - b) alleyway
   - c) line
   - d) exit
4. A ..... is a special building made to hold the dead body of an important person or the dead bodies of a family.
   - a) temple
   - b) tower
   - c) mausoleum
   - d) stadium
5. Different kinds of ..... especially hot pepper, are widely used in South Asian cooking.
   - a) species
   - b) spaces
   - c) spots
   - d) spices

Answers 1 b) 2 d) 3 a) 4 c) 5 d)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

artefacts مصنوعات يدوية	objects such as a tool, weapon, etc. that was made in the past and is historically important
coffin تابوت	a long box in which a dead person is buried
prehistoric ما قبل التاريخ	relating to the time in history before anything was written down
procession موكب	a line of people or vehicles moving slowly as part of a ceremony
ruler حاكم	someone such as a king or queen who has official power over a country or an area

Notes on Vocabulary

1 **object** شيء (غالبًا صلب)
- The scanner detected a metal object in the passenger's bag.

item بند/سلعة
- She still has five items on her to-do list.
- The price of many basic food items continues to rise.

artefact شيء مصنع يدويًا (خاصة قديم وذو أهمية تاريخية)
- The museum has a collection of early Roman artefacts.

2 **leader** قائد (لبلد أو مجموعة أو منظمة)
- The party members will vote next week to elect a new leader.

ruler حاكم (شخص لديه سيطرة رسمية على بلد أو منطقة كملك أو أمير)
- They gave the new square the name of the former ruler of the country.

3 **recommend** ١- يرشح/يزكى ٢- يوصى بـ
- Can you recommend me a good restaurant?
- My teacher recommended me a book to read before doing the project.

advise ينصح (بفعل شيء)
- I strongly advise you to apply for the job online.

4 **appreciate** يقدر (يعتبره شيئًا جيدًا أو هامًا)
- Her abilities are not fully appreciated by her employer.

estimate يقدر (يقيم كمية أو عددًا)
- The tree is estimated to be at least 700 years old.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor ..... swimming as the best exercise for me.
   a) decided
   b) advised
   c) invited
   d) recommended
2. The archaeologists discovered many ..... inside the king's tomb such as spoons and combs.
   a) objects
   b) artefacts
   c) items
   d) columns
3. Some foreign business ..... have been in talks with the government about their new investments.
   a) leaders
   b) rulers
   c) inspectors
   d) officers
4. After fifteen minutes at the meeting, we went on to the next ..... on the agenda.
   a) object
   b) artefact
   c) item
   d) column
5. We ..... that the new mission will take at least two weeks.
   a) appreciate
   b) estimate
   c) count
   d) subtract

Answers 1) d 2) b 3) a 4) c 5) b

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 We ..... that caring for children is an important job.
a) appreciate b) measure c) weigh d) estimate

2 After ten kilometres, you will see a/an ..... pointing to the left.
a) sword b) iron c) arrow d) icon

3 Returning home after a year in hospital was a/an ..... experience to be well and live with my beloved family again.
a) excited b) useless c) delighted d) emotional

4 The hotel has improved ..... for the disabled. There are new lifts and wheelchairs.
a) abilities b) facilities c) flexibilities d) minorities

5 I hope this success will ..... you to greater efforts.
a) pull b) force c) aspire d) inspire

6 The Pharaoh's Golden ..... before the opening of the Civilisation National Museum was watched by millions of people all over the world.
a) Parade b) Fair c) Exhibition d) Gallery

7 The anniversary was marked with a huge ..... through the capital.
a) collection b) flock c) procession d) combination

8 History books are usually placed in the library's non-fiction ..... .
a) college b) department c) branch d) section

9 This week's magazine has some ..... on healthy eating.
a) tips b) tapes c) tops d) taps

10 Special drilling equipment is being used to tunnel ..... the sea bed.
a) above b) beneath c) behind d) middle

11 New cars and electrical goods are usually ..... around the world on giant ships.
a) transmitted b) translated c) transported d) travelled

12 You can't use your motorbike in these ..... because they are narrow and crowded.
a) methods b) lines c) roads d) alleyways

13 A/An ..... is a street or an area of a town where there are many small shops.
a) bazaar b) avenue c) mall d) hypermarket

14 Tourists who visit Khan el-Khalili are usually impressed by the ..... and the hand-made products they buy there.
a) originals b) crafts c) copies d) produce

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

15 During the Second World War, the Germans were able to ..... the French military codes.
a) spare b) reply c) decipher d) waste

16 A ..... is a system of paths separated by walls or hedges built in a park or garden, that is designed so that it is difficult to find your way through.
a) highway b) race c) tunnel d) maze

17 To get a good job, academic qualifications are important but ..... experience is always a plus.
a) identical b) explanatory c) practical d) defective

18 We brought back a few ..... for our family members from our holiday in Paris.
a) prizes b) souvenirs c) memories d) masks

19 The cinema ..... in Cairo attracts thousands of famous Arab and foreign artists every year.
a) festival b) meeting c) funeral d) display

20 During COVID-19 pandemic, many singers had to give only ..... concerts.
a) open-minded b) open-live c) open-air d) open-spirited

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 The dolphin show was really spectacular; I enjoyed it much. The antonym of the word spectacular is "....."
a) detailed b) brilliant c) wonderful d) dull

22 The guard asked me to ..... the direction arrows to get to the mummies' room.
a) follow b) give c) take d) agree

23 The coach made no comment ..... his team's loss of the final game.
a) in b) for c) at d) on

24 Cycling is highly ..... to health and the environment.
a) benefit b) benefitted c) beneficial d) benevolent

25 These two jobs can be done by a single worker. The synonym of the word "single" is "....."
a) group b) individual c) organisational d) detective

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Places of cultural interest

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح تطبيق الأضواء

Past habits (past simple/used to/would)

للتعبير عن عادات الماضى يمكن استخدام: 1- past simple/ 2- used to/ 3- would

1 past simple

نستخدم الماضى البسيط مع أحداث وعادات الماضى المتكررة ونستخدم معها عادة ظروف التكرار مثل:

always, often, every day, etc.

- When I was young, I always walked to school.

2 used to

نستخدم used to للتعبير عن المواقف الدائمة وعادات الماضى والروتين والحقائق التى كانت قديمًا ولكنها لم تعد الآن.

- I used to have a bike, but now I don't.
- My father used to be an employee, but now he is a manager in a big company.
- I used to play for the school team on Fridays when I was a student.

فى السؤال والنفى نحذف d ونستخدم use بعد Did/didn't

Yes/No questions

Did	subject	use to	base form			
	you			you	were	
Did	she	use to	have a mobile phone when	she	was	young?
	they			they	were	

Negative

Subject	didn't	use to	base form			
I				I	was	
She	didn't	use to	have a mobile phone when	she	was	young.
They				they	were	

نستخدم used to أيضًا للأشياء التى كانت دائمًا حقيقية ولم تعد الآن.

- This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.
- Jeans used to come only in blue. Now you can buy them in any colour.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

3 would ...

يستخدم would + inf. للتعبير عن العادات والسلوك النمطى المتكرر فى الماضى وليس عن الشىء الدائم وثوابت الأشياء.

- At weekends, my father would go and buy fruit and also he would buy me sweets.

هذه الجملة تعبر عن سلوك متكرر لشخص وليس عن مواقف واشياء حقيقية مثل امتلاك شخص لشىء او وظيفة لديه.

- I used to have a bike when I was ten years old. (Not: I would have a bike ...)

لاحظ

would لا تستخدم مع state verbs

- I didn't use to know about animals before joining the Faculty of Agriculture.
- Not : I wouldn't know about animals before joining the Faculty of Agriculture.

لاحظ استخدام هذه الأفعال فى الأمثلة الآتية وهى ليست past state

- She would have an amazing tan by the time summer ended.
- She would be the most popular girl when she sang.
- She would bite her finger nails whenever she was nervous.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When we were on holiday, we ..... up early every day and spend all day on the beach.
   - a) get
   - b) would get
   - c) got
   - d) will get
2. When I was young, I ..... in Assuit.
   - a) used to live
   - b) would live
   - c) have lived
   - d) had lived
3. He usually ..... late for the training sessions when he was a member in the team.
   - a) arrive
   - b) arrives
   - c) was used to arrive
   - d) arrived
4. When I was a teenager, I ..... my grandparents and help them bake bread.
   - a) was visiting
   - b) visit
   - c) would visit
   - d) am used to visiting
5. My brother ..... an actor when he was a student.
   - a) had been
   - b) would be
   - c) used to be
   - d) didn't used to be

Answers 1) b) 2) a) 3) d) 4) c) 5) c)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The sofa ..... in the living room, but now it's in my bedroom.
a) would be b) used to be c) was being d) had been

2 When we had a problem, our teacher ..... us.
a) had helped b) was helping c) helps d) would help

3 Last year, I ..... very hard to get high marks.
a) would study b) used to study c) studied d) was studying

4 When we did stupid things, our mom ..... angry with us.
a) would get b) was getting c) uses to get d) had got

5 In the past, we ..... to the seaside for our holidays.
a) were going b) go c) always use to go d) would always go

6 I ..... chess every Friday with my cousin when he visited us when I was a teenager.
a) use to play b) would play c) play d) was playing

7 Before I joined the university, I ..... on a long bike ride with my friends every Saturday.
a) have gone b) was going c) would go d) go

8 When we were young, we ..... watching cartoons on Friday mornings.
a) would love b) used to love c) love d) were loving

9 She ..... playing the piano in the evening when she was a student.
a) would practise b) practises c) was practising d) had practised

10 When Ali was a student, he ..... a long beard and short hair.
a) would have b) has had c) has d) used to have

11 When it was hot in our city, we ..... to a nicer place every summer.
a) were travelling b) use to travel c) would travel d) travel

12 There ..... enough facilities for local people, but now there are a lot of them.
a) didn't use to be b) used to be c) would be d) didn't use to have

13 When I was younger, I ..... swimming with my friends and enjoy ourselves.
a) am used to go b) would go c) went d) go

14 When he was young, he ..... his bike to school.
a) rides b) was riding c) used to ride d) had ridden

15 When I was a student, I always finished my homework and then ..... TV for an hour.
a) used to watch b) watch c) watching d) watched

16 When we were children, mother ..... accompany us to bed and read us a bedtime story.
a) would b) was used to c) wasn't used to d) didn't used to

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

17 He used to be a driver, but now he ..... .
a) does b) isn't c) doesn't d) is

18 On holidays, Mum ..... me a big breakfast.
a) was making b) is making c) would always make d) had made

19 Did she ..... cry a lot when she was a baby?
a) use to b) used to c) using d) be used to

20 When he was a driver, my dad ..... home from work at 7 pm.
a) had arrived b) arrives
c) used to arriving d) would always arrive

21 He used to send letters to his friends, but now he ..... e-mails.
a) was sending b) used to send c) sends d) is sending

22 I ..... in Aswan for five years. Now I live in Cairo.
a) was living b) would live c) used to live d) lived

23 She ..... her e-mail three times a day when she had free time.
a) uses to check b) would check
c) checks d) was checking

24 I ..... to the gym several times last month.
a) was going b) would go c) went d) used to go

25 Last year, she ..... a dishwasher for the first time and decided not to go back to hand-washing the dishes!
a) used b) used to use c) would use d) was using

26 When I was young, as soon as I heard a voice, I ..... it.
a) was imitating b) imitate c) used to imitate d) would imitate

27 He ..... horror films, but now he loves them!
a) would hate b) used to hate c) hates d) was hating

28 Sometimes, we ..... anime parties and dress up as our favourite characters.
a) were having b) had c) would have d) use to have

29 In the past, people ..... a person on his or her birthday and give them valuable presents. It's still a habit.
a) would visit b) visited c) visit d) used to visit

30 One of the following sentences isn't correctly structured:
a) When I was young, I used to play tricks on my classmates.
b) When I was young, I played tricks on my classmates.
c) When I was young, I would play tricks on my classmates.
d) When I was young, I was playing tricks on my classmates.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(C) Writing

A review about places of cultural interest

I decided to visit Abu Simbel Temple after reading about it in a tourist guide which I got from a tourist company when I decided to visit Luxor and Aswan in my mid-year holiday. The guide said that it is the most magnificent of the monuments Ramses II built, Abu Simbel is both the perfect example of the ambition of this pharaoh's reign and also a model illustration of the achievements of modern engineering and global cooperation. On building the High Dam, A UNESCO project financed moving the temple to a safe place near its original position.

It was one of the most exciting sights I have ever experienced. I was so impressed by the entrance with its four colossal statues of Ramses on his throne. It seemed that they represented the dignity and power of this great pharaoh. The halls are also a symbol of greatness of the Egyptian civilisation. The pictures and writing on the columns take you back to thousands of years ago telling the history of the great king.

The temple is an absolute must-see for anyone visiting Aswan. Every day there are tours to the temple by companies. It doesn't cost you much to visit the temple, however, it is really worth the cost. It is an experience that I will never forget.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young actor's performance was so ..... that all the audience said he was the best.
   a) ordinary b) common c) dull d) moving
2. The prisoners escaped through a secret underground ..... which they dug themselves.
   a) message b) passage c) road d) avenue
3. The tour guide is showing us the ..... of the city in the afternoon.
   a) sights b) views c) sceneries d) scenes
4. Ramses II was the ..... of Egypt for a long time nearly 78 years.
   a) minister b) officer c) ruler d) consultant
5. The caves which archaeologists discovered contained many prehistoric ..... .
   a) artefacts b) machines c) hardware d) panels
6. Tolerance and respect for different opinions are signs of a ..... society.
   a) primitive b) unskilled c) civilised d) undeveloped
7. I recommend that you read this book, it's very good. The synonym of the verb "recommend" is "..... ".
   a) oppose b) deny c) intend d) suggest
8. The famous band spent four weeks ..... around Europe.
   a) innovating b) touring c) expanding d) evaluating
9. When I was young, mother ..... me stories.
   a) should tell b) would tell c) had told d) is used to tell
10. Sara ..... a novel every week when she was young.
    a) had read b) was reading c) reads d) read
11. When I was young, I ..... ice-skating.
    a) went to b) go c) would go d) going
12. When I was young, I ..... much about football.
    a) used to know b) would know c) didn't knew d) always know
13. When I was a child, I ..... cartoons with my dad in the mornings.
    a) was watching b) would be watched c) watch d) would watch
14. I ..... French fluently, but I've forgotten it now.
    a) used to speak b) speak c) was speaking d) would speak
15. My brother never ..... football when he was younger.
    a) was playing b) used to play c) would play d) play
16. He used to have a bike, but now he ..... .
    a) hasn't b) isn't c) doesn't d) does
17. Which of the following sentences uses capital letters CORRECTLY?
    a) On Thursday, my favourite writer has a weekly column in "Al Ahram".
    b) On thursday, my favourite writer has a Weekly column in "Al Ahram".
    c) On Thursday, my favourite writer has a weekly column in "al ahram".
    d) On thursday, my favourite writer has a weekly column in "Al Ahram".
18. A descriptive essay is the kind of essays which ..... .
    a) analyses something, such as in literature an analytical essay analyses a piece of literature from different angles
    b) expresses something to make readers feel, smell, see, taste, or hear what is described
    c) is written on literary pieces to evaluate them on the basis of their merits or demerits
    d) convinces the target audience to do something or not do something

Scanned with CamScanner

19 Choose the best concluding sentence for the following paragraph:

I am very happy with my doctor. She always takes the time to listen to me. When I was in the hospital, she came to visit me. She always makes sure I get the medication I need. Several of my friends now go to see her, and they like her as much as I do.

a) To sum up, it is hard to have an appointment with a doctor.
b) To sum up, I don't like to wait for a doctor's appointment.
c) To sum up, she is one of the best doctors you can ever have.
d) To sum up, good doctors are very hard to find.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Our age is full of modern technologies like televisions and computers. Over-use of technology, though, especially such gadgets as cell phones and video games, presents a whole range of problems which may interfere with a student's ability to learn and attend lessons.

Playing video games over an extensive period may prevent you from real games if you do not occupy your time with other outdoor hobbies and activities. On a positive note, playing video games online with gamers around the world will allow you to socialise and communicate with various cultures with ease. You will have the ability to meet new online gamers each day.

It is easy to become addicted to gaming. Some students may attempt to do this in class, which disrupts their learning. Kids putting in long hours on their gadgets will give less attention to assignments and may be irritable when they are away from their gadgets. Spending too much time interacting with such gadgets may cause permanent harm to their brains.

Persistent use of high-tech gadgetry can lead to a slew of health problems for young and old alike. Apart from the repetitive strain injuries, video gamers are likely to suffer from eye problems caused by long exposure to black-lit screens. A sedentary lifestyle - lack of exercise - discourages exercise and encourages obesity. Taking breaks will dramatically improve your health if you are not currently working your body out. Purchase fitness games that allow you to track your body's progress over time - motivating you if you can't seem to tear yourself away from the console.

Video games are definitely fun and entertaining and are also good for relieving tension. However, too much indulgence can lead to addiction which, in turn, can have physical as well as psychological effects on children.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 What can watching too many video games lead to?

a) It can lead to game addiction.
b) It can lead to drug addiction.
c) It can lead to suicide.
d) It can lead to leaving school.

21 What shows you that some students are addicted to gaming?

a) They buy games every day.
b) Some students may do this in class, which disrupts their learning.
c) They fell asleep while playing.
d) They don't go to school to play.

22 What causes eye problems to high-tech gadgetry users?

a) By looking using one eye.
b) By playing while sitting in bed.
c) By long exposure to the black-lit screens.
d) By using bad glasses.

Scanned with CamScanner

23 What does the underlined pronoun "this" mean?
a) Doing homework. b) Concentrating.
c) Studying. d) Playing games.

24 What can a person do if he/she suffers from a sedentary lifestyle?
a) He/She can change the chair they are sitting at.
b) He/She can take breaks or purchase fitness games.
c) He/She can drink much water.
d) He/She can speak with other people.

25 What is the cause of obesity?
a) Going to work every day. b) Doing much homework.
c) Lack of exercise and a sedentary lifestyle. d) Eating healthy food.

26 Video games addiction can have ..... effects on children.
a) physical and psychological b) good
c) no d) healthy

27 Spending too much time interacting with modern gadgets causes ..... .
a) temporary harm to the eyes b) outer effect to the body
c) short-term help to the brain d) permanent harm to the brains

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 The ceremony of opening the ancient Avenue of Sphinxes (Kebash Road) in Luxor was a glorious festival that was broadcast all over the world.

a) كانت مراسم افتتاح طريق أبو الهول القديم (طريق الكباش) مهرجانًا رائعًا تم بثه فى جميع أنحاء العالم.
b) كانت مراسم ترميم طريق أبو الهول القديم (طريق الكباش) مهرجانًا رائعًا تم إعلانه فى جميع أنحاء العالم.
c) كانت مراسم افتتاح طريق التماثيل القديم (طريق الكباش) مهرجانًا رائعًا تم دراسته فى جميع أنحاء العالم.
d) كانت مراسم افتتاح طريق أبو الهول القديم (طريق الكباش) مؤتمرًا رائعًا تم بثه فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

29 كان موكب نقل المومياوات الفرعونية من المتحف المصرى إلى متحف الحضارة الوطنى الجديد دعاية ممتازة للسياحة فى مصر.
a) The display of transporting the Pharaonic mummies from the Egyptian Museum to the New Civilisation International Museum was excellent propaganda for tourism in Egypt.
b) The procession of transporting the Pharaonic mummies from the Egyptian Museum to the New Civilisation Local Museum is excellent propaganda for tourism in Egypt.
c) The procession of transporting the Pharaonic mummies from the Egyptian Museum to the New Civilisation National Museum was excellent propaganda for tourism in Egypt.
d) The funeral of transporting the Pharaonic mummies from the Egyptian Museum to the New Civilisation National Museum had been excellent propaganda for tourism in Egypt.

30 بالإضافة إلى أهميتها الاقتصادية لكثير من الدول، تعد السياحة أحد أهم طرق نشر السلام والتفاهم بين شعوب العالم.
a) In spite of its economic importance to many countries, monuments are the most important ways to spread peace and understanding among the peoples of our continent.
b) In addition to its economic importance to many countries, peace is one of the most important ways to spread tourism and culture among the peoples of the world.
c) In addition to its political importance to many countries, tourism is one of the most important ways to create peace and understanding among the peoples of the world.
d) In addition to its economic importance to many countries, tourism is one of the most important ways to spread peace and understanding among the peoples of the world.

Scanned with CamScanner

Great Expectations
Exercises Chapter (10)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 ..... is to give a decision in a court of law that someone is not guilty of a crime.

a) Acquit b) Death c) A crime d) Imprisonment

2 The operation was rather painful, but I felt a lot better ..... .

a) after b) late c) then d) afterwards

3 She was in the second year of her ..... as a carpenter.

a) scholarship b) apprenticeship c) friendship d) spaceship

4 It was pure ..... that we were on the same plane.

a) plan b) intention c) coincidence d) incident

5 Four people will appear in the ..... today, charged with fraud.

a) court b) school c) hospital d) crime

6 If anything bad happened to the kids, I'd never ..... myself.

a) thank b) congratulate c) advise d) forgive

7 She sat doing her ..... while she watched television.

a) cooking b) knitting c) shopping d) washing

8 Don't be ..... by appearances, he's a good worker.

a) anxious b) angry c) misled d) lied

9 Although most of its inhabitants have British roots, Australia has its own ..... identity, which is very different from that of Britain.

a) fierce b) natural c) cultural d) industrial

10 On the night the ..... was committed, he was out of the country.

a) court b) criminal c) murderer d) murder

11 He looked exhausted, but his wife felt no ..... for him.

a) enthusiasm b) pity c) happiness d) patience

12 ..... is the sport or activity of making a boat move through water with oars.

a) Swimming b) Snorkelling c) Rowing d) Diving

13 As she watched, there were ..... of joy in her eyes.

a) tears b) spots c) marks d) landmarks

14 I went to the theatre to ..... my mind off my sad thoughts.

a) make b) give c) have d) take

15 Amina looked ..... us very well. She's an excellent cook.

a) like b) after c) for d) forward

Scanned with CamScanner

إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The film that was shown at the festival is an important ..... in the history of the cinema.
a) landmark b) landfill c) sight d) signal

2 BBC, British Broadcasting Corporation, is one of Britain's most important oldest ..... brands.
a) wealth b) archaeology c) heritage d) stock

3 When she ran out of the pet food, Manar fed the ..... of her lunch to the dog.
a) ruins b) remains c) foundations d) reminders

4 The newspaper has ..... some disturbing facts about the war.
a) drilled b) dug c) searched d) unearthed

5 These recordings are a ..... to Omar Khairat's talent as a pianist and composer.
a) structure b) remain c) monument d) sculpture

6 My little daughter has a ..... for languages. She masters them very quickly.
a) facility b) practice c) place d) fracture

7 The boats were built in Suez, and transported to Cairo in ..... .
a) departments b) sections c) spaces d) bits

8 Before her wedding party, Mona had blonde ..... added to her hair.
a) prefixes b) specks c) colours d) highlights

9 As a diplomat, Mr Essam served ..... all over the world during his 35-year career.
a) trips b) tours c) professions d) experiences

10 My grandfather was a/an ..... of President Gamal Abdel Nasser; he is 80 years old.
a) employee b) boss c) contemporary d) ancient

11 Have you got a match? I've left my ..... at home.
a) cigarette's lighter b) cigarette lighter
c) cigarettes lighter d) lighter for cigarettes

12 I made him ..... what I had told him.
a) that he repeated b) to repeat c) repeating d) repeat

13 ..... entering the hall, he found everyone waiting for him.
a) At b) While c) On d) In

14 If you are a good boy, we'll let you ..... television tonight.
a) to watch b) watch c) watching d) that you watch

15 Do you know ..... a cake?
a) to make b) making c) how making d) how to make

16 I spoke kindly to him ..... him.
a) so as not to frighten b) not to frighten
c) in order to not frighten d) for not frightening

17 He came to the party ..... he hadn't been invited.
a) in spite of b) even c) although d) in case

18 **A:** I missed the train home last night. **B:** So ..... .
a) have I b) I have c) I did d) did I

19 We will be ..... home tomorrow if you would like to call.
a) in b) at c) in the d) at the

20 ..... he earns, the more he spends.
a) The most b) For how much c) The more d) How much

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 4
Based on Unit 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The roof of this hall is supported by four huge ..... .
   a) items b) columns c) singles d) objects
2. A ..... is an idea or story that many people believe, but which is not true.
   a) mission b) fiction c) fact d) myth
3. I came ..... some old photographs in a drawer while looking for some documents.
   a) in b) out c) across d) off
4. The ..... of photosynthesis البناء الضوئى is important for our life as it helps us get rid of carbon dioxide.
   a) process b) operation c) research d) invention
5. While watching the play, the spectators were ..... back to the 15th century.
   a) dated b) transfused c) transported d) transmitted
6. The Louvre Museum ..... original paintings by many famous artists such as Da Vinci's Mona Lisa.
   a) purchases b) sells c) parades d) displays
7. The news ..... hope that the war might end soon.
   a) accepted b) aspired c) inspired d) intended
8. The book provides some good household cleaning ..... . You'd better read it.
   a) tapes b) tips c) advises d) taps
9. How many people ..... to the meeting yesterday?
   a) used to come b) would come c) came d) did come
10. Every time my teeth ached, I ..... a visit to the dentist.
    a) pay b) would pay c) was paying d) should pay
11. What food ..... like when you were ten?
    a) did you use to b) you used to c) do you use to d) would you to
12. Ola's laptop ..... very good. But now she can't download photos from the internet.
    a) didn't use to be b) would be c) wasn't d) used to be
13. Osama ..... much hair, but now he is almost bald.
    a) used to have b) would have c) almost has d) didn't have
14. When I was younger, I ..... for 2 hours every day.
    a) use to paint b) would paint c) have painted d) had painted
15. I ..... at one time but now I gave it up.
    a) had smoked b) use to smoke c) would smoke d) used to smoke
16. My father ..... slim, but now he suffers from obesity.
    a) would be b) had been c) used to be d) wasn't
17. Which of the following punctuation marks is used to indicate an omission of a word or words within a sentence?
    a) Quotation marks. b) Ellipsis. c) Semi-colon. d) Apostrophe.

Scanned with CamScanner

18 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?
a) We had a lot of fun in the funfair – the kids enjoyed it much.
b) We had a lot of fun in the funfair! the kids really enjoyed it much.
c) We had a lot of fun in the funfair? the kids enjoyed it much.
d) We had a lot of fun in the funfair. the kids enjoyed it much.

19 What transition could you use instead of "moreover"?
a) However. b) In addition. c) On the other hand. d) Yet.

20 Which of the following couldn't be used in a formal e-mail?
a) Greetings.
b) The titles Mr. and Mrs.
c) Correct spelling.
d) Abbreviations and emojis.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a country with an area of about one million square kilometres. Most of the land is desert. The amount of rain each year is very small. Only 3% of Egypt - the land watered by the River Nile - can be used for farming. Over 90% of the Egyptians live and work in this small part of the country. In the past, Egypt grew its own food. Now, it has to import more than half the wheat it needs to feed its people. In 1989, the population of Egypt was already around 55 million. With 3 new babies born every minute and people living longer lives, the population is growing fast - two million new people every year. Now, it is nearly 100 million. As half of all Egyptians are under 20 years of age, the population will continue to grow.

Recently an Egyptian newspaper wrote a report on what life would be like in the year 2030 if the population continues to grow as fast as it is doing now. In Cairo, people would have to live in small flats and travelling from one side of the city to another would take hours.

To prevent such problems, the government wants people to have smaller families. On television, it shows the ideal family - father, mother and two children. Families will have to get smaller if the report in that newspaper is not to come true.

On the other hand, there is an optimistic thought, which says that Egypt would be an advanced country as the people are considered an advantage not a block on the way of advance if anyone knows their duties. There are many modern new cities, which would solve the problems of transport and housing.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 How much wheat did Egypt produce in the past?
a) Some of what it needed.
b) All what it needed.
c) None of what it needed.
d) A great deal of what it needed.

22 What do you think of the writer of the newspaper?
a) Brave. b) Pessimistic. c) Optimistic. d) Liar.

23 How many members does the ideal family consist of?
a) father, mother and a child.
b) father, mother and two boys.
c) father, mother and two daughters.
d) father, mother and two children.

24 What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
a) The Nile. b) Rain. c) The year 2030. d) Population.

25 How many years is the population of Egypt nearly doubled in?
a) 20 years. b) 30 years. c) 40 years. d) 50 years.

Scanned with CamScanner

26 What helps the population to continue to grow?
a) Half of us are under the age of 20.
b) The flowing of the Nile in Egypt.
c) The building of new cities.
d) The problem of transport.

27 Most Egyptians live and work in a very small area because ..... .
a) there is much water
b) the land is suitable for farming
c) most of the land is desert
d) all of the these

28 ..... are problems that result from over-population.
a) Transport and housing
b) Computer addiction and obesity
c) Lack of farming lands and unemployment
d) Lack of desert lands and unemployment

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Though Mr. Jones told his wife that the trip into the middle of Africa to shoot wild animals would be very uncomfortable; he would be very hot, they would live in a tent and it might be dangerous, she insisted on going with him. They bought a big tent, camp beds a refrigerator which did not need electricity and various other things and went off to the middle of Africa.

Before going to hunt, Mr. Jones gave his wife a bell to use if she was in danger and needed him, then he left. After a few minutes, he heard the bell and returned quickly to the tent." What's the matter?" he asked. "Nothing", confirmed his wife. "I was only testing the bell". Mr. Jones went off, but after a quarter of an hour, the bell rang again. Mr. Jones hurried back to the tent, but his wife said, "I'm sorry I was cleaning our tent, and I knocked the bell over by mistake". Mr. Jones returned to his hunting, but soon he heard the bell once more. This time, when he got back to his camp, the tent was burning, and Mrs. Jones was lying on the ground, with blood running from a big cut on her shoulder."That's better!" said Mr. Jones. This time the bell had been used correctly.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 What was the purpose of the trip?
a) To shoot wild animals.
b) To shoot wild birds.
c) To spend a holiday.
d) To shoot tame animals.

30 Why did Mr. Jones give his wife a bell?
a) To entertain herself.
b) To use it in danger.
c) To cut her shoulder.
d) To kill wild animals.

31 When did Mrs. Jones clean the tent?
a) Before testing the bell.
b) After the tent had burnt.
c) After testing the bell.
d) Before her husband left the tent.

32 Mr. Jones did not want to take his wife with him to the middle of Africa because ..... .
a) as it would be very hot
b) it might be dangerous
c) they would live in a tent
d) all of the these

33 What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
a) The trip.
b) The bell.
c) The tent.
d) Africa.

34 The antonym of the word "various" is "..... ".
a) several
b) numerous
c) few
d) different

Scanned with CamScanner

35 Mr. Jones bought a big tent and various other things ..... .

a) to please his wife
b) as he was very rich
c) he had a large house with a garden
d) to prepare for his trip

36 What do you think was the cause of the accident at the tent?

a) The bell exploded.
b) An attack from a wild animal.
c) An electric shock.
d) Some thieves broke into the tent.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

37 Most young men would rather watch a science fiction film than read it as a novel. That's because reading is no longer an important habit or hobby to most people.

a) من الأفضل لمعظم الشباب مشاهدة فيلم خيال علمى على قراءته كرواية؛ وذلك لأن القراءة لم تعد عادة مهمة أو هواية لمعظم الناس.
b) أفضل أن معظم الشباب يشاهدون فيلم خيال علمى على قراءته كرواية؛ ولذلك السبب أن القراءة لم تعد عادة مهمة أو هواية لمعظم الناس.
c) يفضل معظم الشباب مشاهدة فيلم خيال علمى على قراءته كرواية؛ وذلك لأن القراءة لم تعد عادة مهمة أو هواية لمعظم الناس.
d) يفضل بعض الشباب مشاهدة فيلم خيال علمى على قراءته كرواية؛ ولذلك السبب فإن القراءة أصبحت عادة مهمة أو هواية لمعظم الناس.

38 Personal success does not often come by accident. Most successful people know that they must work harder.

a) لا يأتى النجاح الشخصى غالبا بالصدفة، فمعظم الناجحين يعرفون أنهم يجب أن يعملوا بجد.
b) لا يأتى النجاح الشخصى غالبا بالحادث، فمعظم الناجحين يعرفون أنهم يجب أن يعملوا بجد.
c) يأتى النجاح الشخصى غالبا بالصدفة، ومع ذلك معظم الناجحين يعرفون أنهم يجب أن يعملوا بجد.
d) يأتى النجاح الشخصى غالبا بالصدفة، فبعض الناجحين لا يعرفون أنهم يجب أن يعملوا بجد.

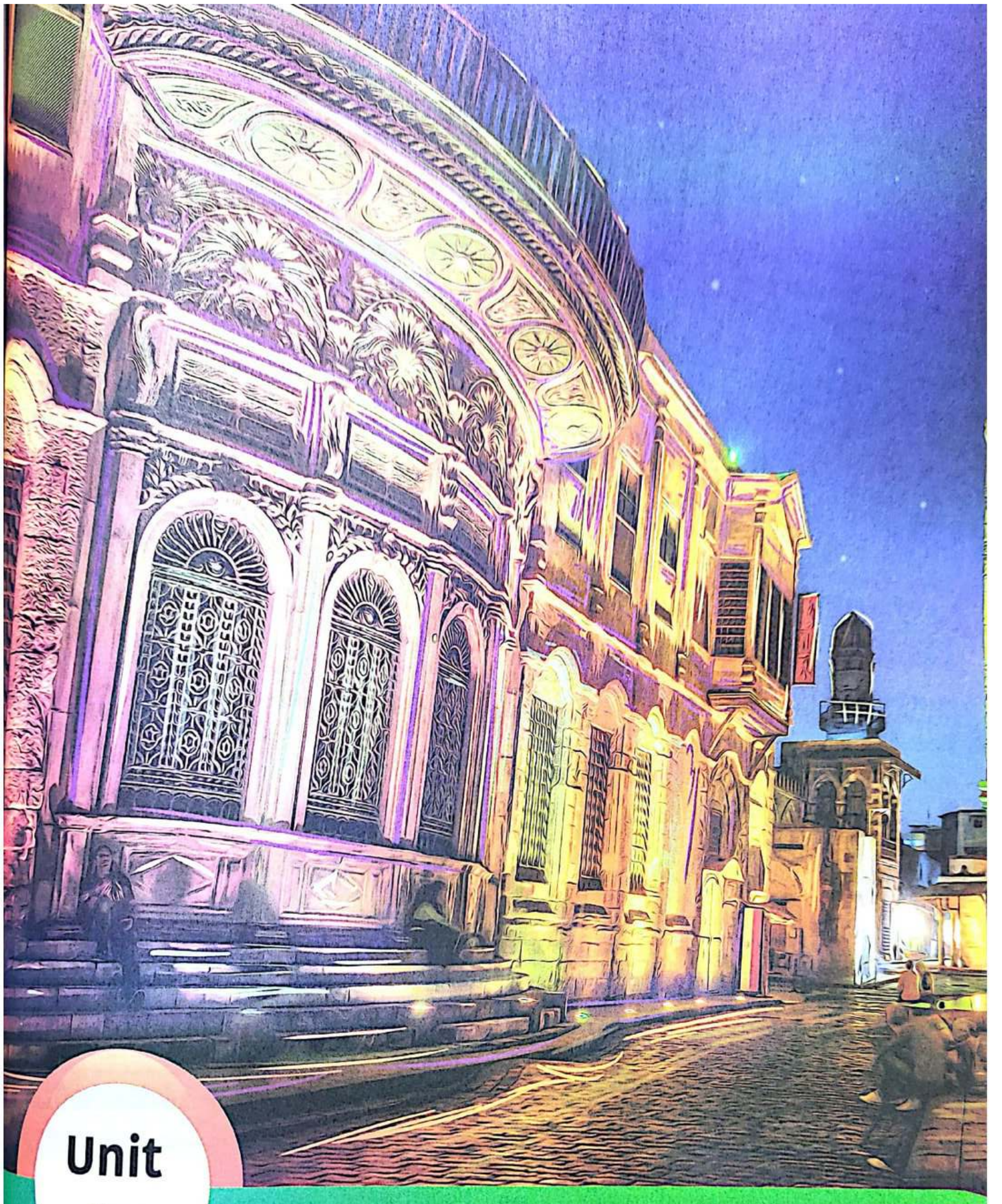
39 لقد وجد العلماء أن الناس أكثر عرضة للإصابة بالأمراض عندما يكونون غير سعداء أو تحت ضغط؛ وذلك لأن جهاز المناعة يكون أقل فعالية عندما نكون قلقين.

a) Scientists have found that people are more likely to fight diseases when they are unhappy or under press. That's because the immune system is less effective when we are worried.
b) Scientists have found that people are more likely to catch diseases when they are unhappy or against pressure. That's because the immune device is less effective when we are worried.
c) Scientists have found that people are more likely to cure diseases when they are unhappy or under pressure. That's because the immune system is less moving when we are worried.
d) Scientists have found that people are more likely to catch diseases when they are unhappy or under pressure. That's because the immune system is less effective when we are worried.

40 يجب علينا أن نشجع السياحة الداخلية لنعوض أى نقص فى السياح القادمة من الخارج التى تتأثر بسهولة بالأحداث الجارية.

a) We must encourage internal tourism to make up for any shortage in the tourists coming from aboard who are easily affected by current events.
b) We must encourage domestic tourism to make up for any decrease in the tourists coming from abroad who are easily affected by current events.
c) We must encourage international tourism to make up for any increase in the tourists coming from abroad who are easily affected by current events.
d) We must discourage domestic tourism to make up for any shortage in the tourists came from abroad who are easily affected by current events.

Scanned with CamScanner



Unit 11

Finding your culture

Objectives

- **Reading** : An article on the benefits of being multilingual; A text on Egyptian culture; A classroom forum
- **Writing** : Write an opinion essay; a post on a class forum; introduce reasons
- **Listening** : Talk about cultural heritage
- **Speaking** : Plan a Multicultural festival
- **Language** : Compound adjectives; Defining and non-defining relative clauses; so/such
- **Life skills** : Respect for diversity: Value your own culture and respect other cultures

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 1 Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

bilingual (adj)	ثنائى اللغة	multicultural (adj)	متعدد الثقافات
dominant (adj)	مهيمن/مسيطر	multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات
identity (n)	هوية	raise (v) (d)	يرفع/يربى
mother tongue (n)	اللغة الأم		

Vocabulary on Reading

ability (n)	قدرة	formally (adv)	رسميًا
attention (n)	انتباه/اهتمام	function (n)	وظيفة
Bedouin (n)	البدو	grow up (v)	ينمو/يكبر
belief (n)	إيمان/اعتقاد	inhabitant (n)	ساكن
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد	isolated (adj)	معزول
Berber (n)	البربر	issue (n)	مسألة/قضية
birth (n)	الميلاد	keen (adj)	حريص/متحمس
brain (n)	المخ	linguistic (adj)	لغوى
Catalan (n)	لغة كتالونيا (إقليم فى إسبانيا)	memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
classify (v) (ies) (ied)	يصنف	mental (adj)	عقلى
clear cut (adj)	شديد الوضوح	minority (n)	أقلية
community (n)	مجتمع	mix (v) (ed)	يخلط
confusing (adj)	مربك	nation (n)	أمة
convince (v) (d)	يقنع	Nobiin (n)	اللغة النوبية
customs (n)	عادات	noticeable (adj)	ملحوظ
date back (v) (d)	يرجع تاريخه إلى	oasis (n)	واحة
deep-seated (adj)	عميق الجذور	official (adj)	رسمى
dialect (n)	لهجة	organisation (n)	منظمة
easternmost (adj)	فى أقصى الشرق	perform (v) (ed)	يؤدى/يقوم بـ
endangered (adj)	معرض للخطر	population (n)	سكان/كثافة سكانية
estimate (v) (d)	يقدر/يقيم	Portuguese (n)	اللغة البرتغالية
figure (n)	رقم	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
focus (v) (ed) (n)	يركز/تركيز	precious (adj)	ثمين/قيم

Scanned with CamScanner

sociolinguist (n)	عالم لغوى اجتماعى
speaker (n)	متحدث
stick to (v)	يلتزم بـ
survive (v) (d)	ينجو
swap (v) (ped)	يبادل/يقايض
task (n)	مهمة
teenager (n)	مراهق
temporary (adj)	مؤقت
thesis (n)	رسالة دكتوراه/أطروحة/فرضية
tradition (n)	تقليد
unique (adj)	متميز
well-balanced (adj)	متوازن
well-known (adj)	معروف
widely spoken (adj)	متحدث على نطاق واسع

Workbook Vocabulary

beneficial (adj)	نافع/مفيد
generosity (n)	كرم
illness (n)	مرض
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على
limited (adj)	محدود
Mandarin (n)	اللغة الصينية
mayor (n)	عمدة
monolingual (adj)	أحادى اللغة
obelisk (n)	مسلة
peers (n)	أقران
tour (n) (v) (ed)	جولة/يقوم بجولة

Phrases & Expressions & Idioms & Prepositions

according to the text	طبقا للنص
in particular	بشكل خاص
make a note of	يدون ملاحظة لـ
advantages of	ميزات لـ
classified as	مصنف كـ
different from	مختلف عن
divide... into	يقسم ... إلى
present ideas	يقدم أفكارا
slow down progress	يبطئ التقدم
Speak ... as a first language	يتحدث...كلغة أولى
happen to	يحدث لـ
keen to/on	حريص/متحمس لـ
swap with	يبادل معى

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
believe	يعتقد/يصدق	belief	اعتقاد	believable	يمكن تصديقه
classify	يصنف	classification	تصنيف	classified	مصنف/سرى
convince	يقنع	convincing	إقناع	convincing	مقنع
				convinced	مقتنع
dominate	يسيطر	domination	سيطرة	dominant	مسيطر
estimate	يقدر	estimation	تقدير	estimated	مقدر
inhabit	يسكن/يعمر	inhabitant	ساكن	inhabitable	قابل للسكن
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organisational/organised	تنظيمى/منظم
perform	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدى
survive	ينجو/يبقى	survival	النجاة/البقاء	surviving	ناجى

Scanned with CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
dominant	مسيطر	main/primary	inferior/minor
raise	يربى	bring up/care for	neglect
ability	قدرة	capability	inability
belief	اعتقاد/إيمان	faith/assumption	disbelief
clear cut	شديد الوضوح	definite/noticeable	ambiguous/invisible
confusing	مربك	puzzling/perplexing	clear
convince	يقنع	persuade/assure	confuse
estimate	يقدر	assess/consider	ignore
function	وظيفة	job/role	inactivity
isolated	منعزل	deserted/remote	close
keen	حريص/متحمس	eager/enthusiastic	uninterested
perform	يؤدى	carry out/accomplish	cease
survive	ينجو	exist/remain	depart/die
unique	متميز	exceptional/extraordinary	common/ordinary

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Banks have a ..... role in most countries' economies as they provide money for investments.
   a) minor **b)** fictional **c)** dominant **d)** imaginary
2. My friend is ....., her mother is French and her father is German. So, she can speak the two languages.
   a) disabled **b)** bilingual **c)** expressive **d)** fluent
3. Sixteen is the age at which we can get ..... cards.
   a) identity **b)** security **c)** club **d)** safety
4. Samy's dad died, leaving his mother to ..... three sons alone.
   a) devise **b)** respect **c)** care **d)** raise
5. My father has a great ..... in healthy eating and exercise as a way to fight diseases.
   a) doubt **b)** belief **c)** infection **d)** cure

Answers 1) b 2) b 3) a 4) d 5) b

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

Learning to speak in a multilingual home

In some countries, it's common to learn two or more languages at home. In fact, some of us grow up in places where four or more languages are widely spoken[1], Switzerland and Belgium are examples. In some countries, there may be one dominant language - the one used by the government, schools and the community - and it's obviously important to learn this language. However, for many parents in multicultural families, it's also important that their kids learn their mother tongue, the language of their parents. Mohamed Hassan, who left Egypt to live in the UK in the 1970s, loves his first language, Arabic. 'Languages are precious and being Arab and Egyptian is so deep-seated[2] in me that I couldn't imagine not teaching the language to my children,' he says.

The benefits of being bilingual are clear cut[3]; it is a well-known[4] fact that being bilingual can improve some brain functions, like the ability to focus attention and perform mental tasks, as well as provide a window to another culture and a second cultural identity.

Whether you want your child to speak Italian, French or Arabic, here are some tips for raising a well-balanced[5] bilingual child:

1. Start speaking to your child in two languages from birth. Some researchers say that children learn languages best under the age of three.
2. Don't worry if they mix their two languages, it will almost definitely be a temporary thing.
3. Play music in your child's other language, read them books in it and buy games in that language too.
4. Speak to them in your first language. If you speak English as a first language, and the other parent speaks Spanish, stick to those languages when you each speak to them at home.
5. Most important of all, don't worry if your bilingual child starts speaking a little later than other children. They are learning two languages, so bilingual children often take a bit more time before they can speak.

(1) متحدث على نطاق واسع
(2) عميق الجذور
(3) شديد الوضوح
(4) معروف
(5) متوازن

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (2)

An Identity in Danger?

Diab, a 25-year-old tourist guide, drives his truck, which has a colourful Berber flag in his back window, through the oasis[1] of Siwa. He sings songs in a local Berber dialect known as 'Siwi'.

The United Nations (UN) has classified Siwi, the easternmost dialect[2] of the Tamazight language, as 'endangered'.

But Diab is convinced[3] that the dialect will survive. 'Everyone uses it here,' he said. 'Most adults speak both Siwi and Arabic, and most of the children who can be heard playing in the streets talk and shout in Siwi.'

The Berbers of Siwi are one of the main linguistic minorities[4] in Egypt, where more people speak Arabic than in any other country with around a 100,000,000 speakers. Sixteen other languages are also spoken in Egypt, including Nobiin (spoken by the Nubian people) and Bedawi (spoken by the Bedouin people).

Siwa, whose population is around 30,000, is one of the most isolated[5] places on earth, located in the Western Desert nearly 600 km from Alexandria. 'Because of this, Siwa and its inhabitants[6] have been able to keep their unique language and Amazigh traditions, that date back as far as 3000 BCE,' says sociolinguist Valentina Serreli, who wrote her PhD thesis[7] on the language in the oasis.

In 2008 the UN estimated[8] that 15,000 people in the oasis, which is around half the population, speak Siwi. But Valentina Serreli estimates that the real figure is around 20,000. UNESCO considers the language definitely endangered because the children who live there no longer learn the language as their mother tongue in their home.

Some people think that the language should be taught formally so that it doesn't disappear. A local organisation called 'Children of Siwa' works hard to preserve the Siwas' heritage.

(1) واحة
(2) لهجة
(3) مقتنع
(4) أقليات لغوية
(5) منعزل
(6) سكان
(7) أطروحة/رسالة دكتوراه
(8) يقدر/يقيم

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

832 spoken languages on one island!

The benefits of learning another language are well-known, but I was surprised to hear just how common it is to be bilingual or multilingual. I recently interviewed a Language expert called Bill Shannon who explained the advantages of being bilingual and gave me some interesting facts too. He told me that research has shown that about 40 - 43% of the world's population are bilingual. He also told me that one of the places which speaks the most languages in the world is Papua New Guinea which is reported to use an amazing 832 languages on the island!

The most widely-spoken mother tongue is Mandarin Chinese, followed by Spanish, English and Arabic in the fifth place.

But there is no need to learn only these languages to get the benefits of a bilingual brain. Learning any second language is beneficial and will also make learning a third language even easier!

However, the benefits are not only limited to learning. Elderly bilingual patients have been shown to suffer from certain mental illnesses, such as Alzheimer's disease, less than their monolingual peers.

All in all, I think the conclusions are clear-cut. Being bilingual brings benefits!

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fortunately, the relationship between the two companies has been ..... to both of them.
   a) beneficial b) harmful c) helpless d) native
2. The hypermarket says that they only have a/an ..... supply of the new TVs in stock, so we should hurry if we want one.
   a) abundant b) limited c) wealthy d) heavy
3. To cut down expenses, young staff members at the office are trained by their older ..... .
   a) coaches b) applicants c) peers d) pliers
4. A/An ..... is a tall pointed stone pillar, built to remind people of an event or of someone who has died.
   a) graveyard b) tomb c) ruin d) obelisk
5. The hospital has now bought a new body scanner, thanks to the ..... of local businessmen.
   a) miserliness b) generosity c) misery d) happiness

Answers 1) a 2) b 3) c 4) d 5) b

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

bilingual ثنائى اللغة	able to speak two languages well
dominant مهيمن/مسيطر	more powerful and noticeable influence
identity هوية	characteristics which can be used to show that a person is unique and like no one else
mother tongue اللغة الأم	the first language you learn as a baby
multicultural متعدد الثقافات	including people with many different customs and beliefs
multilingual متعدد اللغات	able to speak a number of languages
raise يربى	to help a child grow up

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

1

anniversary ذكرى سنوية
- July 2009 was the 40th anniversary of man first walking on the moon.

memory ذاكرة/ذكرى
- The memory of that night is still clear in his mind.

2

custom(s) عادة/عادات
- It's the custom in most countries for a bride to wear a white dress in her wedding party.

customs الجمرك (دائمًا جمع)
- The traveller was asked about the laser machine in customs. (by customs officers)

customer(s) زبون/زبائن
- Discounts are available for our regular customers.

costume(s) (زى/لباس) الملابس التى يرتديها المؤدون للعروض فى مسرحية أو فيلم
- The actors were all dressed in 18th century costumes.
- My aunt designs costumes for the theatre.

3

rise (rose/risen) يرتفع من تلقاء نفسه/تشرق/يزداد/يستيقظ/يقف/يتصاعد (لا يأتى بعده مفعول)
- When the car passed, dust rose.
- The aircraft rose slowly into the air.
- Prices rise sharply these days.
- He rose up and went to the window.

arise (arose/arisen) يحدث/يظهر/ينشأ (لا يأتى بعده مفعول)
- Problems arose over plans to build a new supermarket here.
- Some confusion has arisen as a result of the new system.

raise (raised/raised) يزيد/يربى/يجمع/يرفع/يثير (يأتى بعده مفعول)

raise hopes آمال / fears مخاوف / suspicions شكوك / interest اهتمام
- There are plans to raise salaries.
- He could hardly raise the injured arm at all.
- The captain of the winning team raised the cup in the air.
- They managed to raise 2 million pounds for the new school.

arouse (aroused/aroused) يثير (يسبب رد فعل معين/عاطفة لدى الناس) (يأتى بعده مفعول)

arouse feelings مشاعر / interest اهتمام / fears مخاوف / suspicions (doubts) شكوك
- His actions have aroused a lot of criticism النقد.
- These rumours الإشاعات have aroused intense interest among investors.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Reading Texts

- ..... imagine not teaching the language to my children,' he says that I couldn't .....
  لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (imagine) كما لاحظ استخدام (not) قبل (verb + ing) للنفى.
- Don't worry if they mix their two languages, it will almost definitely be a temporary thing.
  لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر فى جواب الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (if).
- ..... and most of the children who can be heard playing in the streets talk and shout in Siwi.
  لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد (can be heard).

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many young people don't pay much attention to their society's ..... and traditions.
   a) costumes
   b) customers
   c) customs
   d) customaries
2. Mr. Yasser bought his wife a diamond ring on their tenth wedding ..... .
   a) memorial
   b) memory
   c) reminding
   d) anniversary
3. Used car sales have ..... because of the increased cost of new cars.
   a) risen
   b) raised
   c) aroused
   d) arisen
4. You'll have to ..... your voice if you want to be heard in this big hall.
   a) rise
   b) raise
   c) arise
   d) arouse

Answers 1) c 2) d 3) a 4) b

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. I believe that the internet can form a threat to the real ..... and culture of Arab countries.
   a) availability b) toxicity c) nobility d) identity
2. Due to the spread of mass media the world may be considered as one ..... society.
   a) multicultural b) multinational c) bilingual d) affected
3. Your mother ..... is the language that you first learn to speak when you are a child.
   a) foot b) tongue c) country d) dialect
4. Doctors say that eating some kinds of food can improve Children's ..... and concentration.
   a) wealth b) souvenir c) memory d) emotions
5. The books in the library are ..... according to the subject.
   a) defined b) classified c) purchased d) shared
6. According to Muslim ....., the dead are buried quickly.
   a) customs b) casts c) costumes d) consumers
7. A/An ..... is a form of a language that is spoken in a particular area and that uses some of its own words, grammar, and pronunciations.
   a) efficiency b) fluency c) dialect d) accuracy
8. The Berbers are considered a linguistic ..... in some Arab countries in North Africa.
   a) flexibility b) immunity c) priority d) minority
9. India has a ..... of more than one billion. It is one of the most populated countries.
   a) pollution b) population c) people d) district
10. By not wasting our ..... time, we can all live productive lives.
    a) precious b) useless c) vain d) puzzling
11. Siwa is a/an ..... oasis which is located in the Western Desert in Egypt.
    a) close b) indebted c) isolated d) nearby
12. You have to pay attention to....., history and culture.
    a) affections b) traditions c) emotions d) costumes
13. Sharm El Sheikh has ..... coral reefs which are admired by all tourists who visit it.
    a) unique b) dull c) ordinary d) useless
14. Television brings many benefits, but it can also have a bad ..... on people.
    a) profit b) interest c) influence d) focus
15. The famous singer is currently ..... Europe with her new band.
    a) enrolling b) inspecting c) relying d) touring
16. A ..... dictionary gives the definition of words and expressions in the same language.
    a) monolingual b) bilingual c) multilingual d) trilingual

Scanned with CamScanner

17 Cairo is a crowded city with more than 20 million ..... .

a) applicants b) inhabitants c) minarets d) candidates

18 A ..... is a scientist who studies the way language is affected by differences in social class.

a) sociologist b) anthropologist c) sociolinguist d) botanist

19 I found the novel really ..... . I kept forgetting who the characters were.

a) fascinating b) puzzled c) refreshing d) confusing

20 The scientists from different countries discussed a number of important environmental ..... at the conference.

a) defects b) searches c) causes d) issues

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 Women usually complain of the ..... of men on the world of works.

a) dominate b) domination c) dominative d) dominate less

22 There is no clear-cut answer to this difficult question. The antonym of the word "clear cut" is "..... ".

a) ambiguous b) clear c) obvious d) critical

23 My brother loves science fiction films and space films ..... particular.

a) for b) of c) at d) in

24 There are fewer ..... good values in our country nowadays than some years ago.

a) survive b) survival c) surviving d) survived

25 Writing essays is one of the best ways to ..... your ideas to people.

a) take b) present c) give d) speak

26 Young parents need advice and help to be able to raise their children. The synonym of the verb "raise" is "..... ".

a) bring up b) lift c) release d) mount

27 In the play "*King Lear*" the king divides his kingdom ..... two parts.

a) among b) at c) into d) about

28 We need to estimate how much paint we'll need to paint the wall. The verb "....." is similar to the verb " estimate".

a) reply b) defy c) count d) assess

29 Mary's father was keen for her ..... join the Faculty of Medicine and become a doctor.

a) at b) in c) to d) for

30 He is keen to learn more about art history. The adjective "....." is the opposite of the adjective "keen".

a) enthusiastic b) uninterested c) eager d) optimistic

Scanned with CamScanner

(B) Language

Relative Clauses

جمل الوصل

الجمل التى تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها. وضمائر الوصل هى:

when	where	whose	which/that	whom	who/that
للزمان	للمكان	للملكية	للفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	للفاعل والمفعول العاقل

أنواع جمل الوصل

Defining Relative Clauses

النوع الأول يعطى معلومات أساسية وبدونها سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من أو ما هو المقصود. ونستخدم فى هذا النوع (who/which/whom) ولا نستخدم (comma) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (that) بدلًا من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة .

- The man who (that) robbed the bank was sent to prison.
- The book which (that) tells you about history is useful.

Non-defining Relative Clauses

النوع الثانى يعطى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معنى الجملة ولا بد من استخدام (comma) قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل ولا تستخدم (that) فى هذا النوع.

- My father, whom I love, works as a teacher.
- Alaa's car, which he left outside, cost him L.E. 200.000 (Alaa has one car.)

لمزيد من التوضيح لاحظ الفرق بين المثالين الآتيين:

- My sister, who lives in Assuit, came to visit me in Cairo last week.

فى هذا المثال جملة الوصل معلومة إضافية وهذا يعنى أن لدى أخت واحدة فقط فلا أحتاج للتعريف.

- My sister who lives in Assuit came to visit me in Cairo last week.

فى المثال الثانى جملة الوصل تعطى معلومة أساسية وضرورية وهذا يعنى أننى لدى أكثر من أخت فوجب التفريق مَن التى زارتنى منهن.

استقبل كل نوع بالتفصيل فى الشرح الآتى:

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

1 اسم عاقل + who/that الذى/التى/الذين + verb

- تحل (who/that) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدهما فعل .

- Ahmed rang me last night. He introduced us at the party.
- Ahmed, who (He) introduced us at the party, rang me last night.

فى هذه الجملة Ahmed اسم علم فجملة الوصل التى بعده تعتبر معلومة زيادة extra information فالجملة الأصلية Ahmed rang me last night. تؤدى معنى تامًا بمفردها ولا نضع that ونضع comma.
بعد who فعل فهى محل فاعل.

- The footballer has been banned from playing again. He took drugs.
- The footballer who/that (he) took drugs has been banned from playing again.

فى هذه الجملة جملة الوصل ضرورية لإتمام المعنى لمعرفة من اللاعب الذى منع من اللعب وهنا تسمى جملة الوصل defining وهنا يمكن استخدام that ولا نضع comma .

2 اسم عاقل + who/whom/that الذى/التى/الذين + subject

- تحل (who/whom/that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدها فاعل.

- The woman was happy. We gave her the money.
- The woman who/whom/that we gave the money was happy.
- The people were very friendly. We met ~~them~~ at the party.
- The people who/whom/that we met at the party were very friendly.
- Ahmed is my neighbour. I go to the club with him.
- Ahmed, who/whom I go to the club with, is my neighbour.

بعدها فاعل فهى محل مفعول

فى الجملة الأخيرة لاحظ عدم وضع that لأن الجملة بها comma لأن جملة الوصل non-defining ولاحظ أيضًا أن حرف الجر with لم يأتِ قبل ضمير الوصل، فإذا جاء قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم إلا whom.

- Ahmed, with whom I go to the club, is my neighbour.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police caught the man ..... killed his neighbour.
   a) whose b) he c) whom d) who
2. Mr. Osama, ... you met at the theatre, was my classmate.
   a) whose b) whom c) where d) which
3. I'm not one of those people ..... eat standing up.
   a) whose b) which c) whom d) who
4. I know the man ..... you were talking to.
   a) which b) where c) who d) whose
5. My aunt, with ..... I live, is very kind to me.
   a) whom b) that c) who d) whose

Answers 1) d 2) b 3) d 4) c 5) a

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

3 which/that + الذى/التى/الذين + verb/subject + اسم غير عاقل

يحل (which/that) محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية إذا كانتا محل فاعل فياتى بعدهما فى الربط فعل وإذا كانتا محل مفعول فياتى بعدهما فاعل.

- The watch is expensive. It is made in Switzerland.
- The watch which/that (It) is made in Switzerland is expensive.

(بعدهما فعل فهما محل فاعل).

- The watch is expensive. I have just bought it.
- The watch which/that I have just bought (it) is expensive.

(بعدهما فاعل فهما محل مفعول).

فى الجمل السابقة وضعت that لان جملة الوصل defining ولم نضع comma ايضا ولكن لاحظ الجملة الآتية:

- The Nile is the main source of water in Egypt. It flows from south to north.
- The Nile, which flows from south to north, is the main source of water in Egypt.

جملة «ينساب من الجنوب إلى الشمال» معلومة إضافية فهى تعتبر non-defining ولذلك لم نضع that ووضعنا comma.

إذا وجد حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم that ونستخدم which فقط.

- That is the hotel at which (~~that~~)I stayed.

4 whose + للملكية + sentence (S + V + O) + اسم عاقل/غير عاقل

تستخدم (whose) للملكية ويتبعها اسم يملكه الاسم الذى قبلها.

تحل محل صفات الملكية الآتية his/her/its/their.

- The writer was extremely delighted. His novel won the Nobel Prize.
- The writer whose novel won the Nobel Prize was extremely happy.
- Mr Ahmed visits England a lot. His wife is English.
- Mr. Ahmed, whose wife is English, visits England a lot.

فى الجملة الثانية وضعنا comma لأن جملة الوصل «زوجته إنجليزية» معلومة إضافية non-defining.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, give me the keys ..... are on the table.
   a) whose b) which c) what d) whom
2. Saber, ... house has been demolished, is very sad.
   a) whose b) who c) whom d) that
3. Where are the shoes ..... I bought this morning?
   a) whose b) whom c) what d) that
4. The book ..... I'm reading now is very exciting.
   a) what b) who c) whom d) which
5. Tom, ... friend lives in Cairo, has gone on holiday to Egypt.
   a) who b) when c) whose d) that

Answers 1) b 2) a 3) d 4) d 5) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

5 مكان + where = which .... حرف جر + sentence

(in/on/at + place/here- there) - تستخدم (where) للمكان بمعنى حيث. المكرر فى الجملة الثانية

- The place was really beautiful. We spent our holiday there.
- The place where we spent our holiday was really beautiful.
- The hotel was very clean. we stayed there for 3 days.
- The hotel where we stayed for 3 days was very clean.

تحل where محل ظروف المكان here- there اما which تحل محل it/they لغير العاقل ويمكن ان تاتى which وقبلها مكان بدون حرف جر وذلك لأنها جاءت محل الضمير المكرر it او they

- Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is very crowded.
- Cairo, which is very crowded, is the capital of Egypt.

6 اسم يدل على الزمن + when = that/which ... حرف جر + sentence

(in/on/at + time/then) - تستخدم (when) للزمان بمعنى عندما .المكرر فى الجملة الثانية

- It's seven o'clock. I get up ~~at that time~~.
- It's seven o'clock when I get up.
- Ramadan is a holy month we fast in it.
- Ramadan when we fast (which/that we fast in) is a holy month.

Check Point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The meeting at ..... I met a lot of my friends was fruitful.
   a) when b) which
   c) what d) where
2. Cairo, ... I live, is a crowded city.
   a) which b) that
   c) where d) when
3. Six is the age ..... most children start primary school.
   a) at when b) on which
   c) in which d) at which
4. October, 1973 was the month ..... our armed forces won a great war.
   a) which b) when
   c) where d) whose
5. This is the factory ..... my father used to work.
   a) where b) whose
   c) that d) which

Answers: 1) b 2) c 3) d 4) b 5) a

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Extra Points

- تستخدم what كرابط بمعنى (ما) وهى تساوى the thing(s) that

فاعل/فعل		فعل أو ضمير أو اسم لا تعود هى عليه
	what	

- I didn't understand what he had said. (what had been said).
- I can't give him (Ahmed) what he needs.
- What makes me angry is that Ahmed always comes late.

- تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها.

- My brother won a valuable prize, which made me happy.

- تستخدم whose بدل من أشكال الملكية كلها مثل:

- The girl ~~with~~ blue eyes is my sister.
- The girl whose eyes are blue is my sister.
- The man is rich. ~~He has~~ a red car.
- The man whose car is red is rich.
- The car won the race. Its colour is red.
- The car whose colour is red won the race.

- لاحظ استخدام مصطلح .... It's he/she/they who

- It's he who believes in magic.

- لاحظ الفرق بين whose/who's

- who's + v.ing/noun = who is ... who's + P.P. = who has ...
- The boy who's running there is my cousin.
- The boy whose phone was stolen was furious.

- هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـwhose مثل:

stay, dream, work, play, likes and dislikes, end, hope, etc.

- I like the stories whose ends are happy.

- نستخدم that بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:-

all - any(thing) - every (thing) – few – little – many – much - no(thing) – none - some(thing)

- Is this all that you want me to do?
- There isn't anything that we can eat in this house.
- This is the best book that I have ever read.

- يمكن استخدام (why/for which) كضمير وصل كالآتى:

- I'd like to know the reason why (for which) he decided not to come.

Scanned with CamScanner

حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

١ إذا كان محل مفعول به فى الجمل التى تحتوى على defining relative clauses.

- The flat was very expensive. They bought it.
- The flat (which/that) they bought was very expensive.
- The man has just come in the room. You were talking about him.
- The man (who/whom/that) you were talking about has just come in the room.

٢ إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول فنحذف which + v-to be ونضع P.P. :

- I still remember the encouragement given to me by my parents. (which was)

٣ إذا كان بعده معلوم فنحذف which/who ونضع v.ing:

- The boy sitting beside me is naughty. (who sits/who is sitting)

٤ إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف who/which + v.to be ولا نضع شيئا :

- Hossam Hassan, a famous footballer, won many prizes. (who was)

لاحظ

١ يمكن حذف when كضمير وصل كالآتى:

- I remember the day when I met him.
- I remember the day I met him.

٢ لا يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان محل فاعل.

٣ لا يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان مفعولًا فى الجمل التى تحتوى على non-defining clauses.

- I always remember Osama, who I go to school with.
- ~~I always remember Osama, I go to school with~~.

٤ لا يمكن حذف where/whose

- That's the restaurant where I work.
- That's the author whose books I read.

Check Point 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He told me about all ..... happened to him in his childhood.
   a) that b) when c) which d) where
2. Shakespeare, ... plays are well-known worldwide, is a great playwright.
   a) where b) that c) whose d) who
3. My cousin, ... thirty this weekend, has bought a house in Port Said.
   a) that b) who's c) whom d) whose
4. I went to buy a new bag, but I couldn't find ..... I wanted.
   a) which b) whose c) that d) what
5. There's a girl ..... for you outside the gate to help her.
   a) waiting b) waits c) waited d) is waiting

Answers 1 a) 2 c) 3 b) 4 d) 5 a)

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The student ..... has come first in the competition is being awarded a medal.
a) whose b) who c) whom d) when

2 Their argument ..... continued for 3 hours was finally resolved.
a) whose b) when c) what d) which

3 February is the month ..... a lot of tourists visit Egypt.
a) when b) which c) what d) where

4 Sharm El Sheikh is the resort ..... we enjoy diving.
a) which b) whose c) where d) when

5 The person, ... car had been stolen, reported the police.
a) whose b) where c) which d) that

6 The scientist ..... discovered a new planet has won the Nobel Prize.
a) when b) which c) who d) whom

7 The boy ..... we punished was guilty.
a) which b) where c) whose d) whom

8 I want to speak to the person ..... is responsible for the garage.
a) whom b) that c) where d) whose

9 My teacher wanted to know the reason ..... I was always late for school.
a) what b) why c) that d) which

10 The shop didn't have ..... we wanted.
a) what b) which c) that d) where

11 Adel, ... brother won the poetry competition, is my friend.
a) who b) whom c) whose d) that

12 That's the house ..... entrance is guarded by two big dogs.
a) which b) in which c) where d) whose

13 He invited me to the party, ... was very kind of him.
a) which b) that c) when d) whose

14 The man ..... that bus is my brother.
a) that driving b) whom drives c) who driving d) driving

15 People ..... stealing are imprisoned.
a) who caught b) caught c) who catch d) who are catching

16 The man ..... on the train last week was an old classmate.
a) whose meeting b) meeting c) I met d) who met

17 The students ..... wishes have come true are very happy.
a) who b) whose c) that d) whom

18 At the end of our street, there's a baker's ..... we buy our bread.
a) who b) whom c) where d) that

Scanned with CamScanner

19 The man in ..... house we live is very generous.
a) whose b) which c) what d) whom

20 He bought a car, ... I can't remember the brand.
a) where b) of what c) by whom d) of which

21 These days, women have as good an education as men,..... I think is a good thing.
a) which b) when c) who d) where

22 The phone which is in the kitchen is broken. This means that ..... .
a) I don't have a phone now
b) I have got more than one phone
c) I want to buy one instead
d) I have got only one phone

23 The car, which is in the park, needs to be repaired. This means that ..... .
a) I have got only one car
b) I have got more than one car
c) I don't need to repair the others
d) my other cars are in a good condition

24 The sentence that shows that the machine has only one switch is ..... .
a) the switch which is in the back of the machine is off
b) the switch that is in the back of the machine, is off
c) the switch, which is in the back of the machine, is off
d) the switch, that is in the back of the machine, is off

25 One of the following sentences is correctly structured.
a) The computer, she bought last week, is not working.
b) The computer, which she bought it last week, is not working.
c) The computer, she bought it last week, is not working.
d) The computer, which she bought last week, is not working.

26 His father, ..., said he didn't like to work.
a) he gave a series of interviews
b) that had retired a few weeks ago
c) who was already over sixty-five
d) is an electrical engineer

27 There were fifty questions on the test, ...
a) either was easy
b) all of they were very hard
c) all of whom were very interested
d) all of which were difficult

28 It was they ..... .
a) are against the proposal
b) who told us the news
c) which is very late
d) when they came to see us

29 Hassan ordered an enormous steak, ...
a) which cost him a lot
b) was very delicious
c) it wasn't well-done
d) he ate all by himself

30 The students in my class, ..., did very well on yesterday's maths test.
a) they study very hard all semester
b) very few of them had studied very hard
c) most of whom had studied the night before
d) they studied hard last week

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You'll need proof of....., such as a passport or a driving licence to enter the building.
   a) privacy b) transparency c) expectancy d) identity
2. Leila has a very ..... personality. All her friends follow her.
   a) minor b) detested c) dominant d) defied
3. The Egyptian army is ..... one of the best armies in the world.
   a) graded b) classified c) degraded d) deployed
4. The UN asked the two countries to ..... to the agreement they reached to end the conflict between them.
   a) stick b) plug c) reject d) defy
5. To pay for his university fees, Adel found a ..... job in a restaurant. He will work four hours a day.
   a) unsuitable b) permanent c) temporary d) invalid
6. The function of the heart is to pump blood through the body. The noun "function" is similar in meaning to the noun ".....".
   a) mark b) cost c) prefix d) job
7. The young man ..... the judge that the story was true.
   a) puzzled b) convinced c) fled d) disapproved
8. I ..... my red scarf for my sister's blue one to match my new dress.
   a) swapped b) sold c) intended d) washed
9. Alexandria, ... is Egypt's second biggest city, is a wonderful place for a holiday.
   a) that b) which c) where d) in which
10. The people ..... lives were rescued thanked the policeman a lot.
    a) who b) whom c) that d) whose
11. Violent storms are ..... people fear nowadays.
    a) when b) where c) what d) which
12. Miss Ola, ... works at the bank, has been promoted.
    a) who b) whose c) that d) where
13. Mr Gaber is the person ..... I obtain much information.
    a) whom b) from whom c) who d) whose
14. ..... he needs to live comfortably is a big house and a new car.
    a) What b) That c) Which d) Why
15. The moral values with ..... we were brought up are praised by all people.
    a) whose b) that c) which d) what
16. The town ..... I was born is in the north of Egypt.
    a) which b) by which c) from which d) in which
17. Which of the following punctuation marks is used in compound numbers?
    a) Dash. b) Hyphen. c) Colon. d) Comma.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 Which of the following is correctly punctuated?

a) Naglaa and Kenzy, who have been friends for years, met in the park by accident.
b) Naglaa and Kenzy, who have been friends for years met in the park by accident.
c) Naglaa and Kenzy who have been friends for years, met in the park by accident.
d) Naglaa and Kenzy who have been friends for years met in the park by accident.

19 Which type of essay would this title best go with?

My new school is the best school I've ever had.

a) Persuasive.
b) Expository.
c) Descriptive.
d) Narrative.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Stress is a hidden enemy facing every one of us. The complicated living conditions of our modern age, overcrowded cities, traffic jams, pollution, driving hysterically in the streets, unemployment problems, competitions in jobs, etc. have put us under pressure. This pressure causes stress which may lead to a nervous breakdown and sometimes to insanity.

When we are under psychological pressure, many parts of our body are affected such as the stomach, head, skin and heart. As a result, we feel tense. This tension sometimes drives a person to commit suicide. Doctors confirm that the main cause of most illnesses results from the consequences of stress.

Many psychiatrists believe that fighting tension can be achieved by relaxation from time to time. 'All work and no play make Jack a dull boy.' We have to find time to relax and enjoy ourselves. Enjoyment differs from one person to another. You can find it in chatting, having some outdoor sports, walking, running or taking up a certain hobby.

Tension may be relieved if you stop your worries a little. You should be optimistic and always think about the good sides in your life. Pessimism is a deadly enemy that defeats your hopes and aspiration. Don't cry over spilt milk because what is done cannot be undone. A bright dawn always comes after a dark night. The most important thing is to have faith in God who will never forget you even in the most desperate hours.

To conclude, you should always remember that tension would lead you to fatal consequences, which make you sick, miserable and unhappy. Don't forget that the most difficult problem in life has never been the end of the world.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 What does much pressure cause?

a) Optimism.
b) Stress.
c) Loyalty.
d) Aspiration.

21 What may stress lead to?

a) Shortage of food.
b) Joining clubs.
c) Getting up late.
d) Nervous breakdown and insanity.

22 What parts of our body are affected by pressure?

a) The stomach, head, skin and heart.
b) Arms and legs.
c) Eyes and hair
d) The mouth and the nose.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

23 What do the underlined words "commit suicide" mean?

a) Be pessimistic.
b) Immigrate.
c) Kill themselves.
d) Have illness.

24 How can we fight tension as psychiatrists believe?

a) By eating much food.
b) By relaxation from time to time.
c) By searching for another job.
d) By helping others with their work.

25 Why is pessimism considered a deadly enemy?

a) It makes you much cheerful.
b) It makes you hate yourself.
c) It makes you think positively.
d) It kills your hopes and aspiration.

26 The word "insanity" gives the same meaning as "……".

a) reason
b) sanity
c) madness
d) wisdom

27 What is the best title to the passage?

a) Tension and stress.
b) Causes of stress.
c) Stress and madness.
d) How to fight stress.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 Children should not be physically punished. This kind of punishment has a bad effect on a child's life in the future.

a) يجب أن يعاقب الأطفال جسديًا فهذا النوع من العقاب ليس له تأثير سيئ على حياة الطفل فى المستقبل.
b) لا يجب أن يعاقب الأطفال جسديًا فهذا النوع من العقاب له تأثير سيئ على حياة الطفل فى المستقبل.
c) لا يجب أن يعاقب الأطفال ماليًا فهذا النوع من العقاب له تأثير سيئ على حياة الطفل فى المستقبل.
d) لا يجب أن يعاقب الأطفال معنويًا فهذا النوع من العقاب ليس له تأثير سيئ على حياة الطفل فى المستقبل.

29 المواطنة هى أن يتساوى أفراد الوطن الواحد فيما لهم من حقوق وما عليهم من واجبات بغض النظر عن دينهم.

a) Citizenship is that the members of the same country are equal in their rights and duties regardless of their religions.
b) Citizenship is that the organs of the same country are equal in their rights and duties regardless of their religions.
c) Nationalism is that the organs of the same country are equal in their rights and duties regardless of their religions.
d) Citizenship is that the members of the same country are equal in their rights and duties regardless of their regions.

30 لم تعد الوظيفة الحكومية هدفًا يسعى إليه الشباب الطموح كما تشجع الحكومة هذا الاتجاه بتوفير القروض لمشروعات الشباب.

a) A governmental job is no longer a goal which ambitious young people look forward to. The government encourages this attitude by providing loans for youth projects.
b) A governmental job was no longer a goal which ambitious young people look forward to. The government encourages this research by providing loans for youth projects.
c) A governmental job has never been a goal which ambitious young people look forward to. The government encourages this instruction by providing loans for youth projects.
d) A governmental job will no longer be a goal which ambitious young people look forward to. The government encourages this direction by providing loans for youth projects.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

ancestors (n)	أجداد
aspect (n)	جانب
beauty (n)	جمال
chopsticks (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد
embrace (v) (d)	يعتنق/يطوق/يشمل
familiar (adj)	مألوف/على دراية
fortunate (adj)	محظوظ
gap (n)	فجوة
Greek (adj)	يونانى
humour (n)	فكاهة/دعابة
influence (v) (d) (n)	يؤثر/تأثير
lucky (adj)	محظوظ
mark (n) (v) (ed)	علامة/يميز
open-minded (adj)	متفتح العقل/واسع الأفق
pride (n)	فخر
profession (n)	مهنة
relatives (n)	أقارب
rock music (n)	موسيقى الروك
root (n)	جذر
sense (n)	حاسة/حس/إحساس
shape (n) (v) (d)	شكل/يشكل
tend to (v)	يميل إلى
typical (adj)	نموذجى/مثالى

Workbook Vocabulary

arrange (v) (d)	يرتب
carriage (n)	عربة تجرها الخيول/عربة قطار
cultural	ثقافى
end up (v) (ed)	ينتهى الأمر
expatriate (n)	مغترب
fortunate (adj)	محظوظ
home-sick (adj)	شاعر بحنين للوطن
immigrant (n)	مهاجر
Irish (adj)	أيرلندى
mixture (n)	مزيج/خليط
participate (v) (d)	يشارك
rent (v) (ed) (n)	يؤجر/إيجار
sight (n)	موقع سياحى

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at an early age	من سن مبكرة
sense of humour	روح الدعابة/الفكاهة
familiar with	على دراية بـ
learn about	يتعلم/يعرف عن
popular in	مشهور فى
sense of identity	إحساس بالهوية
take pride in	يتباهى بـ
shape into	يشكل إلى
share with	يشارك مع
thanks to	بفضل

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrange	يرتب	arrangement	ترتيب	arranged	مرتب
beautify	يجمل	beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
immigrate	يهاجر	immigration	هجرة	----------	
influence	يؤثر	immigrant	مهاجر	influential	مؤثر
----------		influence	تاثير	proud	فخور
mix	يخلط/يمزج	pride	فخر	mixed	مختلط
participate	يشارك	mixture	مزيج/خليط	----------	
		participation	مشاركة		
		participant	مشارك		

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
ancestors	أجداد	grandparents	grandchildren/descendants أحفاد
familiar	مألوف/على دراية	well-known/knowledgeable	unfamiliar/ignorant غير مألوف/جاهل
humour	فكاهة/دعابة	comedy/fun	sadness/seriousness حزن/جدية
mark	يميز	characterise/indicate	neglect يهمل
pride	فخر	honour/esteem	shame تزى
tend to	يميل إلى	favour	reject ينبذ

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Black Americans' ..... came from Africa in the age of slavery.
   a) frames **b)** grandchildren **c)** descendants **d)** ancestors
2. I'm not very ..... with Chinese food and using chopsticks.
   a) proud **b)** familiar **c)** odd **d)** receptive
3. When my cousin returned home, my aunt ..... him warmly.
   a) rejected **b)** rejoiced **c)** embraced **d)** defied
4. You can buy candles in all ..... and sizes in this shop.
   a) shapes **b)** forms **c)** essences **d)** contents
5. My uncle takes great ..... in his children's achievements; two of them are famous doctors
   a) fun **b)** shame **c)** pride **d)** sadness

Answers 1) d 2) b 3) c 4) a 5) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

5 ways to stay connected with your cultural roots

- Speak it – try to learn some of the language.
- Eat it – you can learn a lot about the culture through its food. Cook it and share it with others.
- Learn it – Read about your heritage. Knowing about your family's roots[1] helps build a sense of identity, and bring you closer to older relatives.
- Embrace [2] your culture – take pride[3] in your family identity. That's the beauty of life; we are all different.
- See it – Travel to where your ancestors[4] come from.

(1) جذور
(2) عانق
(3) فخر
(4) أجداد

Reading Text (2)

Class forum
Please leave your comment

My father is Irish and my mother is Chinese, so I am fortunate[1] to have two cultures to explore. The best thing about being part of a multicultural family is that we tend to be open-minded[2] about new cultural experiences. My parents have shaped me into the person I am today, and the cultures they have shared with me have a big impact on how I see the world and what I am passionate about.

My mum says that I am definitely my father's daughter because we both love soup and rock music, which are popular in Ireland, and we share the same Irish sense of humour[3]. I've never been to Ireland, but I've read a lot about it. One of my favourite authors is Roddy Doyle, an Irish writer, who makes me laugh. Through his books, I've learned about the typical[4] Irish sense of humour.

Thanks to my mum that I am lucky to have grown up using chopsticks[5] and eating rice. I am familiar[6] with the traditions of the Chinese culture, not only because my mum celebrates them, but because my parents introduced them to me at an early age. I have also started to learn Cantonese due to my mum, who is from Hong Kong.

What are your main cultural influences [7]?

(1) محظوظ
(2) متفتح العقل
(3) فكاهة
(4) نموذجى
(5) عصا الأكل الصينية
(6) مألوف
(7) مؤثرات

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many of the teachers of English in Egyptian international schools are ..... living in Egypt
   a) explorers b) pioneers c) expatriates d) aboriginals
2. There are many ways students can ..... in classroom activities.
   a) participate b) defy c) flee d) escape
3. The owner of the house insists that all ..... are paid on the 1st of each month.
   a) additions b) assets c) hires d) rents
4. I'm trying to ..... my work so that I can have a couple of days off next week.
   a) disorganise b) arrange c) perplex d) defect
5. Illegal ..... to the country are sent back across the border if they are caught.
   a) immigrants b) citizens c) innovators d) investors

Answers 1 c) 2 a) 3 d) 4 b) 5 a)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

ancestors أجداد	members of your family who lived a long time ago
embrace يعتنق/يطوق/يشمل	to eagerly accept a new idea, opinion, religion, etc.
humour فكاهة/دعابة	the ability or tendency to think that things are funny, or funny things you say that show you have this ability
pride فخر	a feeling that you are proud of something or someone

Notes on Vocabulary

1. **gap**
   فجوة (مساحة فارغة بين جزأين/شيئين)
   - He has a gap between his two front teeth.

hole
حفرة (مساحة فارغة فى سطح أو شىء)
- A fox had dug a hole under our fence.
- Rain was coming in through a hole in the roof.

space
مسافة/فراغ (مساحة بين شيئين يمكن وضع شىء بينهما)
- Is there any parking space near the hypermarket?

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

shape

تستخدم كلمة shape بمعان مختلفة منها:

- What shape is the table? ١- شكل
- For an old car, it's in pretty good shape. ٢- حالة/هيلة
- Computers have completely changed the shape of our industry. ٣- قوام (شكل الجسم)
- You can't change your natural body shape. ٤- خيال
- A dark shape moved behind the children. ٥- يشكل
- People's political beliefs are shaped by what they see in the media.

relative/relation

قريب (أحد أفراد العائلة وخاصة الذين لا يعيشون معك)

- Most of her relatives were able to come to the wedding.
- Big cities can be lonely places if you have no friends or relations there.

descendant

سليل/حفيد (قريب لأحد الأجداد الذى عاش فى الماضى)

- My friend always says that he is a descendant of King Farouk.

ancestor/forefather

سلف/جد أكبر (أحد أفراد العائلة مات من فترة طويلة)

- My ancestors originally came from Turkey.
- Black American's forefathers were originally Africans who came to America centuries ago.

folks

أهل (خاصة الوالدين)

- Are you going to travel to see your folks at Eid El Fitr?

next of kin

أقرب الأقارب (مثل زوج أو أب والذين يجب إبلاغهم عند حدوث مكروه لك)

- The next of kin must be told about the accident victim's death.

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohamed is in good shape for someone who had surgery six months ago. "Shape" in this sentence means "……".
   a) form b) shadow c) figure d) state
2. Make a …… in the bottom of each plant pot to let the water drain out.
   a) hole b) space c) gap d) hall
3. In Japan, they have a special festival to show respect to the dead …… .
   a) next of kin b) ancestors c) descendants d) grandchildren
4. I could just make out a dark shape in the distance. "Shape" in this sentence means …… .
   a) form b) ingredient c) figure d) state

Answers: 1) d 2) a 3) b 4) c

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1. Some passengers were ..... enough to escape injury when their car crashed. They came back safely to their families.
   a) unlucky b) oppressed c) fortunate d) defensive
2. Most of Adel Emam movie uses ..... to discuss serious issues.
   a) danger b) humour c) sadness d) riddle
3. People ..... to be happier if they have a family and good friends.
   a) trend b) hint c) fend d) tend
4. Many Egyptian film directors are greatly ..... by great directors such as Salah Abu Seif and Youssef Shaheen.
   a) influenced b) resulted c) effected d) reflected
5. The two men are similar in appearance although they aren't ..... .
   a) opponents b) friends c) relatives d) replies
6. The builder of this old house was a direct ..... of the present owner.
   a) ancestor b) grandson c) boss d) architect
7. We all should be open about what's going on with us, and be ..... about the new environment.
   a) well-known b) close-headed c) open-minded d) clear cut
8. Due to capitalism الرأسمالية, there is a widening ..... between rich and poor countries.
   a) leak b) hall c) hole d) gap
9. We all admired the ..... of the scenery in the Red Sea area.
   a) speed b) beauty c) speck d) oddness
10. The students are ..... in alphabetical order of the first letter of their names.
    a) arranged b) released c) reported d) oppressed
11. Most of the Egyptian ..... attend all Egypt's football matches in any country we play.
    a) enemies b) coaches c) expatriates d) workers
12. Cairo Book Fair has a full agenda of many ..... activities such as conferences and seminars
    a) boring b) economic c) social d) cultural
13. When I studied abroad I felt ..... and very much wanted to return to Egypt.
    a) proud b) homesick c) embarrassed d) defeated
14. Your children should have the right to ..... in discussions about their future.
    a) join b) intend c) participate d) depart
15. In the afternoon, the tourists will have a chance to relax or see the ..... .
    a) values b) sales c) scenes d) sights
16. Charities such as Resala and Misr El Khir are run by a .....of volunteers and paid staff.
    a) connection b) mixture c) contact d) link

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 We all should take pride in the achievements of our country. The antonym of the word "pride" is "……".

a) shame b) honour c) regret d) apology

18 It is said that morals and good values are taught …… an early age.

a) in b) at c) for d) on

19 It is important to share your problems and worries …… a parent or a friend.

a) for b) about c) with d) on

20 Microsoft Corporation is one of the most …… companies in the computer market.

a) influence b) influencing c) influential d) influenced

21 Mohamed has a great …… of humour; he can turn a bad situation into a funny one.

a) moral b) fight c) scent d) sense

22 Mr Salah is marked by decency and good behaviour. The synonym of the verb "mark" is "……".

a) recognise b) characterise c) realise d) relieve

23 This dish is too hot. I am not familiar …… Indian food.

a) at b) in c) with d) for

24 You've done a good job. You have the right to …… pride in your work.

a) take b) give c) follow d) make

25 My little daughter like to shape all the cookies we bake …… stars.

a) about b) out c) for d) into

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(B) Language

Compound adjectives

الصفات المركبة

هى الصفة والصفة المركبة؟

١- الصفة هى كلمة تصف الاسم أو الشىء الذى بعدها مثل:

An interesting novel/an expensive car/a red dress/a large house

وأحيانا نستخدم أكثر من صفة لوصف الاسم ولها ترتيب معين، وقد تم شرحها فى الوحدة السابعة.

٢- الصفة المركبة هى صفة تحتوى على كلمتين أو أكثر وتسبق الاسم أيضًا ونضع فى الغالب hyphen لربط الكلمات لبيان أنها صفة أو فكرة واحدة مثل:

a two-day holiday	إجازة ليومين
well-known person	شخص مشهور
meat-eating animals	حيوانات آكلة اللحوم
high-quality crops	محاصيل عالية الجودة

Types of compound adjectives

أنواع الصفات المركبة

Adverb حال + **Past participle اسم المفعول**

well-known, densely-populated ذات كثافة سكانية عالية, highly-respected

- China is a densely-populated country.

Adjective صفة + **Past participle اسم المفعول**

old-fashioned موضة قديمة, ready-made جاهز, short-lived قصير الأمد

- The room was full of big old-fashioned furniture.

Adjective صفة + **Noun اسم**

short-term قصير المدى, long-term, full-time كامل الوقت, high-quality جودة عالية

- Governments should have long-term plans to maintain sustainable economy.

Adjective صفة + **Present participle اسم الفاعل**

good-looking جميل المظهر, easy-going طبيعة سهلة, quick-thinking تفكير سريع

- Although she is over seventy, she is still a good-looking woman.

Number عدد + **Noun اسم**

five-minute, three-hour, ten-storey ذو عشر طوابق, two-way ذو اتجاهين

- I read a fifty-page book in half an hour yesterday.

Noun اسم + **Adjective صفة**

world-famous مشهور عالميًا, smoke-free خالى من التدخين, family-friendly مناسب للعائلة

- The kids were rewarded with ice-cold lemonade.

Noun اسم + **Present participle اسم الفاعل**

English-speaking ناطق باللغة الإنجليزية, record-breaking محطم الرقم القياسى

- I live in an English-speaking country.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Noun اسم	+	Past participle اسم المفعول

wind-powered تعمل بالرياح, middle-aged منتصف العمر, water-cooled مبرد بالماء

› My brother is neither young nor old. He is a middle-aged person.

Noun اسم	+	Noun اسم

part-time جزء من الوقت, north-west الشمال الغربى, bullet-proof ضد الرصاص

› We have 20 part-time members of staff.

1 Adverbs and compound adjectives

لقد تم شرح الحال سابقًا فى الوحدة التاسعة وعلمنا أن الحال يصف الفعل والصفة والحال والجملة، وفى هذه الحالة لا نضع hyphen مثل:

› An extremely long river. A very expensive car. An extremely intelligent girl.

Adverbs + Past Participle

ولكن عندما يستخدم الحال فى الصفة المركبة فيأتى بعده التصريف الثالث وهنا نضع hyphen مثل:

› Well-educated men and women are required for a better future for this country.

مطلوب رجال ونساء متعلمين جيدًا من أجل مستقبل أفضل لهذا البلد.

› He's a widely-recognised expert in telecommunication.

إنه خبير معروف على نطاق واسع فى مجال الاتصالات السلكية واللاسلكية.

› Our speaker tonight is a highly-respected scholar.

المتحدث لدينا الليلة هو عالم يحظى باحترام كبير.

› This densely-populated area has the highest crime rates in the country.

هذه المنطقة المكتظة بالسكان بها أعلى معدلات الجريمة فى البلاد.

2 Adjective + Past Participle

عندما يكون لدينا صفة وبعدها تصريف ثالث فتكون صفة مركبة ونضع بين الكلمتين hyphen وبعدهما يأتى الاسم مفردًا أو جمعًا مثل:

› A narrow-minded politician can't find solutions to people's problems.

السياسى ضيق الأفق لا يمكنه إيجاد حلول لمشاكل الناس.

› I'm sorry about the delay—we're rather short-handed today.

أنا آسف على التأخير - نحن اليوم لدينا نقص فى الأيدى العاملة نوعًا ما.

› Although he is an absent-minded scientist, he is brilliant.

على الرغم من أنه عالم شارد الذهن فإنه بارع.

› The story of these two strong-willed women is one of tragedy and struggle.

قصة هاتين المرأتين ذواتى الإرادة القوية هى قصة مأساة وكفاح.

› Reptiles are cold-blooded creatures.

الزواحف مخلوقات بدم بارد.

3 Adjective + Noun

عندما يكون لدينا صفة وبعدها اسم فتكون صفة مركبة ونضع بين الكلمتين hyphen وبعدهما يأتى الاسم مفردًا أو جمعًا مثل:

› They're looking for full-time staff at the library.

إنهم يبحثون عن موظفين بدوام كامل فى المكتبة.

› Immigrating to Australia was my father's last-minute decision.

كانت الهجرة إلى أستراليا قرار والدى فى اللحظة الأخيرة.

› We watched the full-length version of the movie.

شاهدنا النسخة الكاملة من الفيلم.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Adjective + Present Participle

عندما يكون لدينا صفة وبعدها اسم فاعل فتكون صفة مركبة ونضع بين الكلمتين hyphen وبعدهما يأتى الاسم مفردًا أو جمعًا مثل:

- That delicious meal left a long-lasting taste in my mouth.
  تلك الوجبة اللذيذة تركت طعمًا طويل الأمد فى فمى.
- I was stuck in slow-moving traffic for over an hour.
  كنت عالقًا فى حركة مرور بطيئة لأكثر من ساعة.
- The tired-looking woman seemed to have walked a long way.
  يبدو أن المرأة المتعبة قد قطعت شوطًا طويلاً سيرًا على الأقدام.

5 Periods of Time(Number + noun)

عندما يكون لدينا صفة مركبة من رقم أو عدد ثم مدة زمنية فى شكل مفرد نضع بين الكلمتين hyphen وبعدهما يأتى الاسم مفردًا أو جمعًا مع ملاحظة أن الرقم يكتب بالحروف وليس أرقامًا مثل:

- I work eight hours every day. I work an eight-hour day. (~~not: an 8-hour day~~)
  أعمل ثمانى ساعات كل يوم.
- I'm going on vacation for three weeks. I have a three-week vacation.
  لدى إجازة لمدة ثلاثة أسابيع.
- There was a delay of 5 minutes. There was a five-minute delay.
  كان هناك تأخير لمدة خمس دقائق.

6 Noun + Adjective

عندما يكون لدينا اسم وبعده صفة فيكون صفة مركبة ونضع بين الكلمتين hyphen وبعدهما يأتى الاسم مفردًا أو جمعًا مثل:

- Mohamed Salah is a world-famous footballer.
- There's nothing better than drinking an ice-cold lemonade on a hot summer day.
  لا يوجد شىء أفضل من شرب عصير ليمون مثلج فى يوم صيفى حار.

7 Noun + Present Participle

يتبع الاسم أحيانًا اسم الفاعل وهو v.ing وهنا يصبح صفة مركبة ونضع بين الكلمتين hyphen وبعدهما يأتى الاسم مفردًا أو جمعًا مثل:

- I bought some mouth-watering strawberries.
  اشتريت بعض الفراولة الشهية (التى يسيل لها اللعاب).
- That was a record-breaking jump.
  كانت تلك قفزة قياسية (محطمة للرقم القياسى).
- These time-saving techniques will help you work more efficiently.
  ستساعدك تقنيات توفير الوقت هذه على العمل بكفاءة أكبر.
- It was a thought-provoking novel.
  لقد كانت رواية محفزة على التفكير.

8 Noun + Past Participle

يتبع الاسم أحيانا اسم المفعول وهو p.p. وهنا يصبح صفة مركبة ونضع بين الكلمتين hyphen وبعدهما يأتى الاسم مفردًا أو جمعًا مثل:

- We should start using wind-powered generators to cut costs.
  يجب أن نبدأ فى استخدام مولدات تعمل بالرياح لخفض التكاليف.
- A lot of middle-aged men are dissatisfied with their lives.
  كثير من الرجال فى منتصف العمر غير راضين عن حياتهم.
- I love eating sun-dried raisins.
  أنا أحب أكل الزبيب المجفف بالشمس.

9 Noun + Noun

يتبع الاسم أحيانا اسم آخر وهنا يصبح صفة مركبة ونضع بين الكلمتين hyphen وبعدهما يأتى الاسم مفردًا أو جمعًا مثل:

- She's looking for a part-time job.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like to be surrounded by energetic and ..... people.
   a) open-hearts b) open-hearted c) open-hearting d) open-heart
2. The fire broke out in a ..... which we had been living in before.
   a) two-storeys building b) two-storeys buildings
   c) two-storey building d) two-storey buildings
3. He behaves politely as he is a ..... person.
   a) good-brought up b) well-bringing up
   c) better-bring up d) well-brought up
4. His ..... comment hurt his sister's feelings.
   a) absent-minded b) absent-minding c) absent-minds d) absent-mind
5. ..... babies need much care.
   a) New-born b) Newly-born c) Newly-bearing d) New-bearing

Answers 1) b 2) c 3) d 4) a 5) b

لاحظ

إذا كان من الممكن وضع and بين الكلمتين فلا نضع hyphen مثل:

- I have a big (and) red car.
- He is a world-famous expert.

ولكن نضع الـ hyphen إذا لم نستطع وضع and مثل:

وهكذا الجملة الآتية:

- It's an old coal-mining town.

إنها مدينة قديمة لتعدين الفحم.

فلو وضعنا hyphen بين old وcoal لكان المعنى فحم قديم ولكن القصد من الجملة هو أن المدينة هى القديمة ولذلك يمكن القول.

- The town is old and a coal-mining one.

so/such ... that

1 so+ adjective/ adverb + that

جدًا ... لدرجة أن

- We can use so to mean very, often to emphasise or to give a reason for something.

نستخدم so بمعنى (جدًا)، غالبًا لتأكد أو تعطى سببًا لشىء.

- We use so before an adjective (without a noun) or an adverb:

تستخدم so قبل الصفة بدون اسم وقبل الحال أيضًا.

- That cake is so nice.
- That cake is so nice that I'll have another one!
- They walked so slowly that they missed the train.

We can also use so much + uncountable noun + (that) ... or so many + plural noun + (that) ...

so much/little + uncountable noun + that

- There is so much traffic that we won't be on time.

so many/few + plural noun + that

- He made so many mistakes that he failed.

لاحظ الآتى: نستخدم هذا الشكل آخر الكلام إذا لم نستخدم that

- The film was so boring.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

جدًا ... لدرجة أن

2 such+ adjective + noun + that

- We can use such in the same way but always before a noun.

يمكن أن نستخدم such بنفس الطريقة، ولكن دائمًا قبل اسم.

a) such a/an + adjective + singular countable noun

إذا جاء بعد such أداة النكرة a/an فيكون الاسم الذى بعد الصفة مفردًا معدودًا.

- It was such a useful book that I read it twice.
- It has been such a bad flight that we'll never forget it.

b) such + adjective + plural/uncountable noun

إذا جاء بعد such اسم جمع أو اسم مفرد لا يعد فلا نستخدم a ولا an .

- It was such nice weather that we went to the park.
- They were such cheap books that I bought them all.

c) such a lot of + plural/uncountable nouns

He has such a lot of money that he doesn't know what to do with it.

لاحظ الآتى: نستخدم هذا الشكل آخر الكلام إذا لم نستخدم that

- It was such a boring film.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It's ..... amazing play that you can't miss it.

a) so
b) such
c) such a
d) such an

2 The food in that restaurant is ..... that we go every week.

a) such good
b) good enough
c) so good
d) too good

3 They are ..... good friends that they have never had an argument.

a) such a
b) such
c) so
d) enough

4 There are ..... few wolves left that we have to protect them.

a) so
b) such
c) such a
d) enough

5 It was ..... violent match that the referee sent off three players.

a) too
b) such a
c) such
d) so

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 b) 4 a) 5 b)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ammar had a ..... writing skills.
   a) good-develop b) well-developed c) well-developing d) well-develop
2. His degree course took five years to complete. It was a ..... course.
   a) five-year degree b) five-years degree c) five-year degrees d) five-years degrees
3. My dog has got short legs. It is a ..... dog.
   a) short-legging b) short-leg c) shorted-leg d) short-legged
4. That man always looks rather angry. He is a rather ..... man.
   a) angry-looked b) angry-looks c) angry-looking d) angrily-looking
5. She's a ..... woman who won't stop until she gets what she wants.
   a) strong-willing b) strong-willed c) strongly-willing d) strongly-willed
6. A ..... stranger helped us find the train station.
   a) kindly-hearted b) kindly-hearting c) kind-hearts d) kind-hearted
7. We aim to double the number of young people in ..... .
   a) full-time job b) full-times job c) full-time jobs d) a full-time job
8. The athlete's ..... performance won him the gold medal.
   a) record-broken b) record-breaking c) record-broke d) records-breaking
9. A ..... animal has a body temperature that changes when their environment changes.
   a) cold-blood b) cold-blooding c) cold-blooded d) colder-blooded
10. Because Anas is a ..... boy, he is kind and friendly.
    a) good-nature b) well-nature c) better-nature d) good-natured
11. When Ibrahim got his promotion, he bought a ..... .
    a) brand-new car b) brand-new cars c) brands-new cars d) brands-new car
12. Maher is a pretty ..... child.
    a) old-year six b) six-year-old c) six-old-year d) six-old-years
13. This is a ..... which can be used for dining.
    a) four-feet table b) four-foot tables c) four-foot table d) four-feet tables
14. Look at Leila. She's wearing a/an ..... skirt. She found it in her grandmother's drawer.
    a) old-fashion b) old-fashioned c) new-fashionable d) old-fashioning
15. Nancy is such a ..... girl. She can't even read what's on the blackboard.
    a) short-sighted b) short-sight c) shorted-sight d) short-sighting
16. It takes ten minutes to drive from my house to work. It is a ..... from my house to work.
    a) ten-minute drives b) ten-minutes drives c) ten-minutes drive d) ten-minute drive
17. They planned the attack in a very clever way. It was a very ..... attack.
    a) cleverly-planning b) cleverly-planned c) clever-planning d) cleverly-plan
18. Some people think that we should preserve the ..... traditions of countries.
    a) deeply-rooted b) deeper-roots c) deep-roots d) deeply-rooting
19. My uncle enjoyed designing ..... clothes.
    a) brightly-colours b) brightly-coloured c) brightly-colouring d) bright-colours

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

20 I can't stand ..... people who are intolerant of new ideas.
a) narrow-mind b) narrow-minding c) narrow-minded d) narrow-minds

21 Manal is very fashionable and she loves wearing ..... clothes.
a) newly-designed b) new-designer c) newly-designer d) new-designed

22 His visit left an ..... impression on me.
a) ever-last b) ever-lasting c) ever lasted d) ever-lasted

23 The students gave a ..... musical performance.
a) highly-spiriting b) high-spiritual c) highly-spirits d) high-spirited

24 The woman who won the prize was accompanied by a ..... man.
a) short-haired b) shorter-hair c) short-hair d) short-hairs

25 Her husband was a disagreeable, ... man.
a) well-tempered b) good-tempered c) badly-tempered d) bad-tempered

26 He's the ..... man I have ever met, said Mary about me.
a) good-looking b) best-looking c) good-looks d) good-looked

27 One of the following sentences makes the compound adjective to describe "A story which written well" ..... .
a) a well-written story b) a well-writing story
c) a good-written story d) a good-writing story

28 One of the following sentences makes the compound adjective to describe "A student who works hard" ..... .
a) a hardly-working student b) a hard-worker student
c) a hardly-worked student d) a hard-working student

29 They lived in a ..... house.
a) big three-storey detached nice
b) nice big three-storey detached
c) three-storey detached nice big
d) detached nice big three-storey

30 Choose the sentence with the right word order:
a) My uncle is a dark-eyed tall middle-aged man.
b) My uncle is a tall dark-eyed middle-aged man.
c) My uncle is a tall middle-aged dark-eyed man.
d) My uncle is a middle-aged tall dark-eyed man.

31 He speaks ..... quickly that I can't understand him.
a) so b) such c) enough d) too

32 It was ..... interesting book that I couldn't put it down.
a) such a b) so c) too d) such an

33 It was ..... expensive jewellery that it was kept in a safe.
a) such a b) such an c) such d) so

34 She's got ..... many dresses that she can't decide which one to put on.
a) such b) enough c) too d) so

35 It's ..... nice weather! Do you want to go for a walk?
a) so b) such an c) such d) too

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(C) Writing

An Opinion Essay

Should minority dialects be taught in schools?

A minority dialect is a dialect that's spoken by the minority of a given population, meaning that it's often highly localised and specific to one relatively small community in the world. Though many people who speak minority dialects also speak that of their country. There is a debate about whether minority languages should be taught in schools.

On the one hand, those who are in favour of teaching them in schools argue that without teaching them, they may disappear and become extinct. Moreover, teaching them will help students to know about different cultures. Thus, we spread tolerance and respect for others. Students who speak these languages will be able to keep their community heritage and traditions.

One the other hand, people who are against this argue that teaching these dialects is a waste of time and money which can be used more wisely in more important matters. Besides, teaching these dialects may strengthen minority communities to be separate from the countries they live in. This may lead to conflicts which may affect stability in the world. The crisis in Catalonia in Spain is an example.

In my opinion minority dialects are part of human heritage and we shouldn't neglect them. Teaching them in school will help keeping them. However, I suggest that teaching minority languages should be in special courses for those who wish to learn them. These courses should also stress the need for unity, tolerance and stability in any society.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The exhibition will focus on various ..... of life and culture in the Middle East.
   a) prefaces b) defects c) experience d) aspects
2. Science is a subject that ..... many areas of learning such as chemistry and physics.
   a) hugs b) holds c) embraces d) hints
3. After 20 years in Cairo, I still feel my ..... are in Alexandria where I was born.
   a) branches b) roots c) bottoms d) tops
4. Squares, circles and triangles are different types of ..... .
   a) shapes b) forms c) paintings d) materials
5. With his camera around his neck, he looked like a ..... tourist.
   a) classic b) representative c) typical d) characteristic
6. Our manager always ..... pride in his position at work.
   a) takes b) gives c) makes d) does
7. My father has achieved many goals in life thanks ..... patience and hard work.
   a) for b) to c) in d) at
8. The boy got low ..... because he made a lot of mistakes in the test.
   a) pieces b) signs c) marks d) titles
9. You've given me the wrong change; I gave you a ..... .
   a) ten-euros note b) ten-euro notes c) ten-euros notes d) ten-euro note
10. The debate over the rights and wrongs of this issue has been a ..... discussion.
    a) never-ending b) never-end c) never-ends d) never-endings
11. I tried hard to find a ..... job but I had no success.
    a) good-paid b) well-paid c) good-pays d) well-pay
12. She put a well-..... cause for increasing the fees.
    a) reason b) reasons c) reasoned d) reasoning
13. He claims to have sailed ..... around the world but nobody believes him.
    a) single-hands b) single-handed c) single-handing d) single-hand
14. Being a private university, it developed a ..... charitable programme.
    a) well-organised b) well-organise c) well-organising d) well-organisation
15. She invited .....a lot of guests to her party that there wasn't enough room for all of them
    a) so b) such c) too d) enough
16. Which one of the following is correctly structured?
    a) I was so tired that I went to bed right away.
    b) I was so a tired that I went to bed right away.
    c) I was such tired that I went to bed right away.
    d) I was such a tired that I went to bed right away.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

17 Which sentence uses capital letters correctly?
a) Mona and I study French every friday.
b) Mona and i study french every Friday.
c) mona and I study french every Friday.
d) Mona and I study Japanese every Friday.

18 Choose the suitable topic sentence for the following supporting sentences:
We went there on holiday. It was sunny and breezy. The sand felt warm under our feet. We made sand castles and had lunch on our blanket. It was a fun time.
a) Our family had a nice time at the beach.
b) It was sunny and breezy.
c) We made sand castles and had lunch on our blanket.
d) The beach is my best place.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Twenty years ago, kids in school never even heard of the internet. Now, I'll bet you can't find a single person in your school who hasn't at least heard of it. In fact, many of us use it on a regular basis and even have access to it from our homes! The '**net**' in internet really stands for network. A network is two or more computers connected together so that information can be shared, or sent from one computer to another. The internet is a vast resource for all types of information. You may enjoy using it to do research for a school project, downloading your favourite songs or communicating with friends and family. Information is accessed through web pages that companies, organisations and individuals create and post.

It's kind of like a giant bulletin board that the whole world uses! But since anyone can put anything on the internet, you also have to be careful and use your best judgment and a little common sense. Just because you read something on a piece of paper someone sticks on a bulletin board doesn't mean its good information, or even correct, for that matter. So, you have to be sure that whoever posted the information knows what they're talking about, especially if you're doing research! But what if you're just emailing people? You still have to be very careful. If you've never met the person that you're communicating with online, you could be on dangerous ground! You should never give out any personal information to someone you don't know, not even your name! And just like you can't believe the information on every website out there, you can't rely on what strangers you 'meet' on the internet tell you either. Just like you could make up things about yourself to tell someone, someone else could do the same to you!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

19 What does the term '**net**' in the word internet stand for?
a) Nethermost. b) Nether. c) Netherlands. d) Network.

20 For what can students use the internet?
a) Building. b) Surgery. c) Research. d) Navigation.

21 For what can music lovers use the internet?
a) Research. b) Download music. c) Cooking. d) Surgery.

22 How is information accessed on the internet?
a) Through web pages. b) Through radios.
c) Through music. d) Through cameras.

23 What is ONE thing you should not do when communicating with someone you don't know online?
a) Don't look at their profiles. b) Don't give any information.
c) Don't get any information. d) Do not give out personal information.

24 What do the underlined words "do the same" mean?
a) Chat with others. b) Log on the net. c) Lie to others. d) Make things.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

25 What is the best title to the passage?
a) Using the internet.
b) The internet is the only means of information.
c) The internet at schools.
d) The danger of the internet.

26 What does the expression "on dangerous ground" mean?
a) You're in real danger.
b) Your place is very dangerous.
c) The internet place is wrong.
d) The communications are useless.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

27 Cutting trees means that we add more and more poisons to the air we breathe. Trees are one of the most important factors to solve global warming.

a) قطع الأشـجار يعنى أننا نضيف المزيد والمزيد من السـموم إلى الهواء الذى نتنفسـه حيث تعتبر الأشـجار من أهم العوامل فى حل مشكلة الاحتباس الحرارى.

b) قطع الأشـجار يعنى أننا لا نضيف المزيد والمزيد من السـموم إلى الهواء الذى نتنفسه حيث تعتبر الأشجار من أهم المراحل فى حل مشكلة الاحتباس الحرارى.

c) قطع الأشـجار يعنى أننا نضيف المزيد والمزيد من الهموم إلى الهواء الذى نتنفسـه حيث تعتبر الأشـجار من أهم العوامل فى حل مشـكلة الدفء الحرارى.

d) قطع الأشـجار يعنى أننا نضيف المزيد والمزيد من الملوثات إلى الهواء الذى نتنفسـه حيث تعتبر الأشـجار من أهم العوامل فى حل مشكلة الاحتراز الحرارى.

28 Computer and language skills have become essential qualifications for most jobs nowadays. That's why they are given much care at schools and universities.

a) أصبحـت مهـارات الكمبيوتـر واللغة مؤهـلات ثانوية لمعظم الوظائف فى الوقت الحاضر وهذا هو السـبب فى أنهـم لا يتلقون الكثير من الاهتمام فى المدارس والجامعات.

b) أصبحت مهارات الكمبيوتر واللغة مؤهلات أساسية لمعظم الوظائف فى الوقت الحاضر وهذا هو السبب فى أنهم يتلقون الكثير من الاهتمام فى المدارس والجامعات.

c) أصبحت مهارات الكمبيوتر واللغة مؤهلات أساسية لمعظم الوظائف فى الوقت الحاضر وذلك لأنهم يتلقون الكثير من الأعمال فى المدارس والجامعات.

d) أصبحت مهارات الكمبيوتر واللغة مؤهلات أساسية لمعظم الوظائف فى الوقت الحاضر وذلك لأنهم يتلقون الكثير من الإهمال فى المدارس والجامعات.

29 دافع الكثير من رائدات العمل الاجتماعى مثل هدى شـعراوى ونبوية موسـى وبنت الشـاطئ عن حقوق المرأة فى التعليم والعمل مثل الرجال، وكان لجهودهم أثر كبير فى تحقيق ذلك.

a) Many pioneers of cultural work, such as Hoda Shaarawy, Nabawia Musa and Bint Al-Shati, protected women's rights to education and work as men. Their efforts had a great impact in achieving this.

b) Many pioneers of charitable work, such as Hoda Shaarawy, Nabawia Musa and Bint Al-Shati, defied women's rights to education and work as men. Their efforts had a great impact in achieving this.

c) Many pioneers of social work, such as Hoda Shaarawy, Nabawia Musa and Bint Al-Shati, defended women's rights to education and work as men. Their efforts had a great impact in achieving this.

d) Many inventors of social work, such as Hoda Shaarawy, Nabawia Musa and Bint Al-Shati, defended women's rights to education and work as men. Their efforts had a great shock in achieving this.

30 رغم خسارة الفريق القومى لنهائى كأس الأمم الإفريقية بالكاميرون، إلا أن الجميع أثنى عليهم بسبب أدائهم البطولى فى المباريات كلها.

a) Although the national team lost the African Cup of Nations final in Cameroon, everyone praised the players for their heroic performance in all matches.

b) Although the national team lost the African Cup of Nations final in Cameroon, everyone criticized the players for their heroic performance in all matches.

c) Although the local team lost the African Cup of Nations final in Cameroon, everyone praised the players for their ordinary performance in all matches.

d) Although the international team lost the African of Nations Cup final in Cameroon, everyone praised the players for their heroic training in all matches.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Great Expectations
Exercises Chapter (11)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The nurse ..... up his sprained ملتوى ankle.
a) broke b) bandaged c) smashed d) treated

2 There were no signs that the fire had been set ..... .
a) purpose b) knowingly c) consciously d) deliberately

3 She turned round, looked ..... at me, and left without saying anything.
a) angry b) fiercely c) happy d) friendly

4 I thought the door was closed, but when I turned the ....., I found it open.
a) wheel b) engine c) switch d) handle

5 Winning the championship was an ..... feeling.
a) awful b) ugly c) incredible d) extremely

6 On the night the ..... was committed, the accused man was out of the country.
a) murder b) murderer c) murdering d) murdered

7 The bad weather completely ..... our holiday.
a) injured b) spoiled c) burnt d) rewarded

8 After waiting for two days, a ..... took him home. It was a tiring voyage.
a) plane b) train c) truck d) steamer

9 I put the coins in a piece of cloth, ... it up and put the package in my bag.
a) brought b) tied c) turned d) switched

10 Tourists are not advised to go sightseeing without someone to ..... them.
a) treat b) eat c) feed d) guide

11 When the police arrived, the crowd scattered in all ..... .
a) directions b) objects c) signs d) subjects

12 Being wealthy, she decided to ..... three children from the orphanage.
a) adapt b) bear c) adopt d) offer

13 We had an ..... with the waiter about the bill. It was very high.
a) essay b) article c) agreement d) argument

14 He dreamed of taking ..... on his father's killers.
a) courage b) revenge c) photos d) responsibility

15 He sat on the bed to take his boots ..... .
a) off b) over c) in d) up

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

1 The victim identified her attacker from a/an ..... parade at the police station.
a) feast b) festival c) activity d) identity

2 The government insists on keeping certain documents about their policy ..... .
a) purified b) classified c) intensified d) duplicated

3 When the army leader entered the hall, all the soldiers stood at ..... .
a) focus b) intention c) attention d) repetition

4 The police said the attack at the supermarket was an ..... incident not related to any other one.
a) isolated b) remote c) close d) serial

5 With COVID-19 , the issue of health care have come into sharp ..... .
a) perception b) focus c) inception d) light

6 It is believed that Charles Babbage's calculator model was the ..... of the modern computer.
a) descendant b) relative c) ancestor d) modem

7 Since the young man started a new healthy lifestyle, the ..... between his visits to the doctor got longer and longer.
a) wells b) halls c) holes d) gaps

8 When my father got a new job in England, our family moved to put down ..... there.
a) branches b) roots c) basis d) foundations

9 Although I read it twice, this sentence doesn't make ..... to me.
a) sense b) tense c) lance d) fences

10 It isn't a good idea that students can be on very ..... terms with their teachers.
a) respectful b) honourable c) familiar d) peculiar

11 He is used to ..... in public.
a) be speaking b) the speaking c) speaking d) speak

12 He needs a few ..... .
a) day rest b) day's rest c) days rest d) days' rest

13 She had three sons all ..... became doctors.
a) who b) of whom c) of who d) which

14 You can fly to London today ..... you don't mind changing planes in Paris.
a) provided b) except c) unless d) so far as

15 I'll meet you again ..... the weekend.
a) for b) by c) on d) at

16 I know someone who can climb trees ..... a monkey.
a) as b) like c) the same that d) similar than

17 He was left alone, with ..... to look after him.
a) someone b) anyone c) no one d) not one

18 He ..... live in the country than in the city.
a) would rather b) had better c) wishes d) prefers

19 Put on your raincoat ..... it rains.
a) because b) in case c) otherwise d) in any case

20 It's ages ..... him.
a) that I don't see b) that I didn't see c) ago I saw d) since I saw

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Based on Unit 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police are trying to discover the ..... of the killer, but this will take time.
   a) hobby b) identity c) opportunity d) stability
2. Most five-star hotels in Egypt has a ..... staff to deal with tourists from different nationalities.
   a) multicultural b) multilingual c) multiword d) multiracial
3. These documents are ..... and shouldn't be published in any newspaper.
   a) known b) famous c) categorized d) classified
4. My friend has a good head for ....., so I'm not surprised that she became an accountant.
   a) figures b) skills c) art d) shapes
5. One of the best ways to keep healthy is having a ..... diet.
   a) well-kept b) well-known c) well-balanced d) well-prepared
6. Technology has widened the ..... between people with and without computer skills.
   a) gap b) hole c) space d) leak
7. Women spend millions of pounds on ..... products every year.
   a) wealth b) beauty c) experiment d) sporty
8. She spoke with pride about her son's achievements. The noun "pride" is similar in meaning to the noun ".....".
   a) experience b) doubt c) disrespect d) esteem
9. Lamia, ... father is an important man, was born in Assuit in 2004.
   a) her b) whose c) who d) that
10. The sweater ..... my father bought me is very big.
    a) what b) whose c) whom d) which
11. My grandfather says that he proudly remembers the day ..... he got his university degree.
    a) whom b) where c) when d) whose
12. Have you seen ..... I bought from London?
    a) what b) which c) that d) where
13. Our teacher has ..... voice that every student can hear what he says.
    a) so loud b) such a loud c) enough d) too loud
14. This shop sells ..... sweaters.
    a) well-makes b) well-making c) good-made d) well-made
15. He pays ..... little attention to what I say that it makes me angry.
    a) so b) such a c) too d) such
16. The child behaves well. He is a ..... child.
    a) good-behaved b) well-behaving c) well-behaved d) well-behaviour
17. ..... are used to emphasise a word in a sentence.
    a) Quotation marks b) Ellipses c) Commas d) Dashes
18. Which of the following sentences is CORRECTLY punctuated?
    a) I have very little time to learn the language- my new job starts in five weeks.
    b) I have very little time to learn the language! my new job starts in five weeks.
    c) I have very little time to learn the language, my new job starts in five weeks.
    d) I have very little time to learn the language: my new job starts in five weeks.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

19 In which type of essay do you need to include sensory details
a) Narrative.
b) Argumentative.
c) Explanatory/Informative.
d) None of above.

20 Which of these is a rule to follow when sending an email applying for a job?
a) Sing slang and abbreviations.
b) Using informal language.
c) Using addressee's first name.
d) Signing your full name.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People may be divided into two types: winners and losers. Because our families and friends have a great influence on us as we grow, we are born helpless and dependent on our environment.

Winners are able to change their situation and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking, they listen to others, evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds. Although they may fail at times, yet they keep their self confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They have enthusiasm for life, enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves but they can postpone it if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand, never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers: disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress toward becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers hang on to them, and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored.

They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again. When a student fails a mathematics test and then says:" Oh, well, I've never been good at Maths," it becomes his excuse for not trying to change this idea, and remains a loser.

Losers spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen to save them from their problems with their lives but they never try to change.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Why don't we have a choice to be winners or losers from our early life?
a) Because teachers decide on our future.
b) Because we are born helpless and dependent on our environment.
c) Because we always fail to achieve anything.
d) Because our friends interfere with our affairs.

22 Which one of the following doesn't describe winners?
a) They are independent by being responsible for their own lives.
b) They don't blame others for their mistakes.
c) They only listen to others and follow in their footsteps.
d) They overcome their bad experiences.

23 What do winners do if they fail at times?
a) They keep their self-confidence.
b) They lose hope and go out of the race.
c) They don't try again as it is one chance.
d) They ask others to help them.

24 What happens when losers find excuses and don't try to change?
a) Other people help them to become winners.
b) They find luck and become winners.
c) They say that it's fate.
d) They remain losers.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

25 Which one of the following doesn't describe losers?
a) They are afraid to try new things.
b) They are never good at maths.
c) They repeat their own mistakes again and again.
d) They spend their lives waiting for something wonderful to happen.

26 What does the underlined word "postpone" mean?
a) To stop something.
b) To e-mail something.
c) To put off until a later time.
d) To post it.

27 What is the best title to the passage?
a) What winners win in life.
b) How to be a winner.
c) What losers lose in life.
d) Winners and Losers.

28 Losers usually feel ..... .
a) anxious
b) unhappy
c) bored
d) all of these

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many great inventions are initially greeted with ridicule and disbelief. The invention of the airplane was no exception. Although many people who heard about the first flight on December 17, 1903 were excited and impressed, others reacted with a lot of laughter. Some people called Wilbur and Orville Wright, the inventors of the first flying machine, fools. Negative reactions, however, did not stop the Wrights. Driven by their desire to succeed, they continued their experiments.

Orville and Wilbur Wright had always had a great interest in flying and mechanics. As young boys, they earned money by making and selling kites and mechanical toys. Later, they designed a newspaper-folding machine, built a printing press, and operated a bicycle-repair shop. In 1900 and 1901, the Wrights tested various gliders. In 1903 the Wrights built their first airplane, which cost less than 1,000 dollars. They even designed and made a lightweight petrol engine to power the plane. When they started the engine on December 17, the airplane shook wildly before taking off. The plane managed to fly for 12 seconds, and it flew 120 feet.

By 1905, the Wrights had perfected the first airplane that could turn, circle, and remain in flight for half an hour at a time. Others had flown in balloons and gliders, but the Wright brothers were the first to build a full-size machine that could fly under its own power. As the contributors of one of the most outstanding engineering achievements in history, the Wright brothers are accurately called the fathers of aviation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

29 The first flying machine the Wright Brothers made flew for ..... .
a) half an hour
b) 120 seconds
c) 12 seconds
d) 1000 seconds

30 Some people thought that the Wright brothers had ..... when they made their first machine.
a) been negatively influenced
b) acted without thinking
c) been too careful
d) been mistaken

31 What did the Wright brothers design in addition to the first aircraft?
a) A newspaper-folding machine.
b) A rocket.
c) A bike.
d) A printing press.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

32 Why did the Wrights design a petrol engine?
a) To sell it to factories.
b) To use it in their airplane.
c) To power their bikes.
d) To make kites.

33 The underlined word "power" is similar in meaning to ..... .
a) run
b) change
c) modify
d) design

34 What was the problem of their first flying machine?
a) It didn't start.
b) It burnt.
c) It shook wildly.
d) It couldn't leave the ground.

35 The best title to the passage is "..... ".
a) The brothers of aviation
b) The Wrights' success in the invention of today's plane
c) The Wright brothers and the gliders
d) The Wrights and the invention of the plane

36 The underlined pronoun "its" refers to ..... .
a) the balloon
b) the first airplane
c) the machine
d) the glider

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

37 Egypt is always proud of its distinguished men of arts. Naguib Mahfouz was the first Egyptia novelist to win the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1988.

a) تفخر مصر دائمًا برجال الفنون المتميزين. نجيب محفوظ هو أول روائى مصرى يفوز بجائزة «نوبل» للسلام عام ١٩٩٨.
b) تفخر مصر دائمًا برجال الفنون المتميزين. نجيب محفوظ هو آخر روائى مصرى يفوز بجائزة «نوبل» للسلام عام ١٩٨٨.
c) تفخر مصر دائمًا برجال الفنون المتميزين. نجيب محفوظ هو أول روائى مصرى يفوز بجائزة «نوبل» للآداب عام ١٩٨٨.
d) تفخر مصر دائمًا برجال الفنون الفخورين. نجيب محفوظ هو أول فيزيائى مصرى يفوز بجائزة «نوبل» للسلام عام ١٩٩٨.

38 Addiction is one of the most serious problems that affect peoples' lives everywhere. Technolo addiction is the most widespread type nowadays.

a) يُعتبر الإدمان من أشهر المشكلات التى تؤثر على حياة الناس فى كل زمان، إدمان التكنولوجيا هو النوع الأكثر انتشارًا فى الوقت الحاضر.
b) يُعتبر الإدمان من أخطر المشكلات التى تؤثر على حياة الناس فى كل مكان، إدمان التكنولوجيا هو النوع الأكثر انتشارًا فى الوقت الحاضر.
c) يُعتبر الإدمان من أشهر المشكلات التى تُثرى حياة الناس فى كل مكان، إدمان التكنولوجيا كان هو النوع الأكثر انتشارًا فى الماضى.
d) يُعتبر الإدمان من أخطر المشكلات التى تؤثر على حياة الناس فى كل مكان، استعمال التكنولوجيا هو النوع الأكثر شعبية فى الوقت الحاضر.

تتأثر البيئة بالنشاط البشرى فى شتى مناحى الحياة، لهذا السبب يُعد الإنسان أهم عنصر فى الحفاظ على البيئة أو تدميرها.

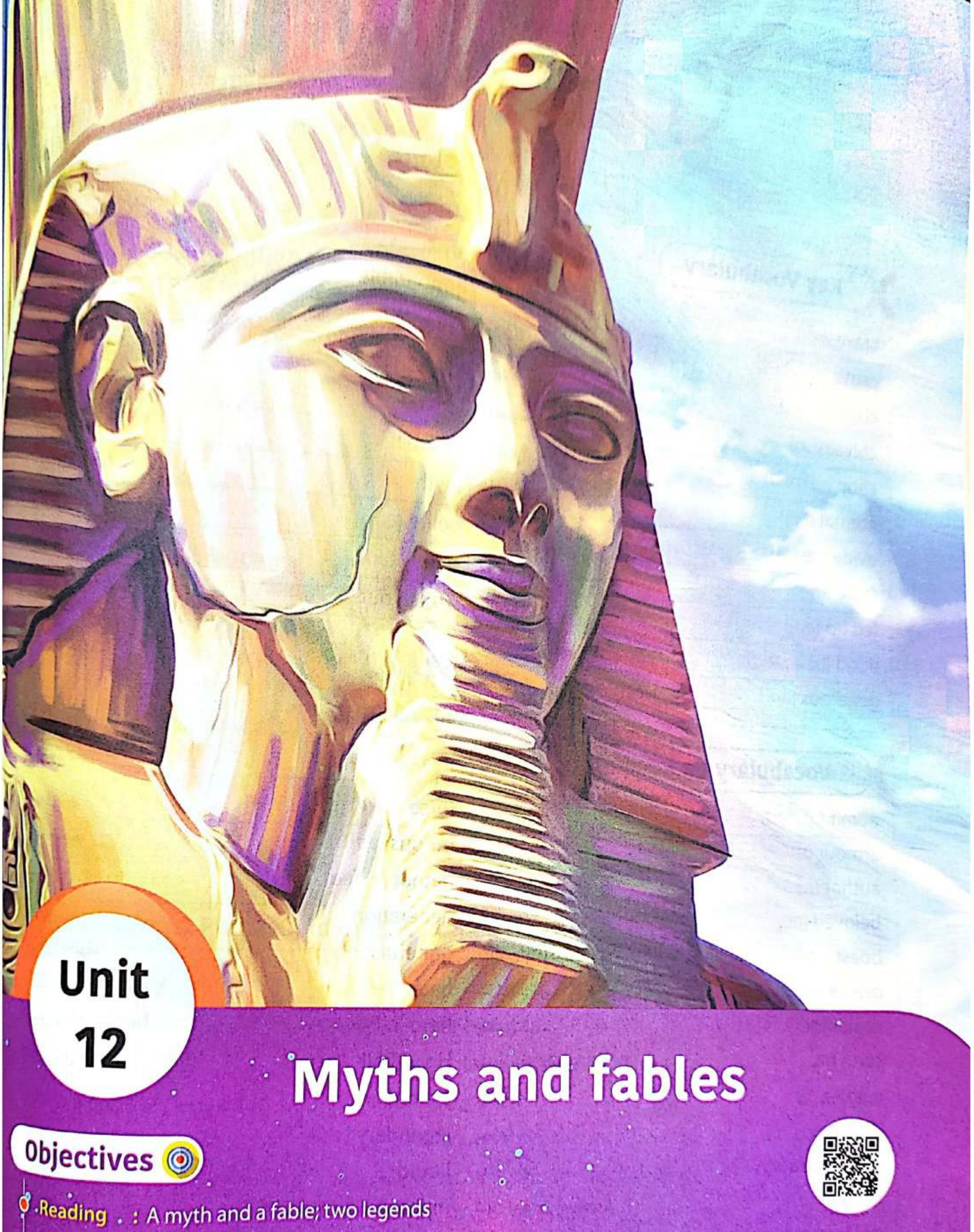
a) The environment is affecting by human activity in various walks of life. For this reason, the man is the most important element in preserving or destroying the environment.
b) The environment is affected by human activity in various walks of life. For this reason, ma is the most important element in preserving or destroying the environment.
c) The environment is infected by human activity in various walks of life. For this reason, ma is most important element in deserving or destroying the environment.
d) The environment is affected by human creativity in various walks of life. For this reason, man is the most important element in deserving or destroying the environment.

يفضل أصحاب العمل الموظفين المؤهلين المهرة الذين يجيدون مهارات الكمبيوتر والإنترنت بالإضافة إلى العمل تحت الضغوط المختلفة.

a) Employees prefer qualified, skilled employers who are proficient in computer and interne skills, and who are able to work under different forms of pressure.
b) Employers prefer qualified, skilled employees who are sufficient in computer and interne skills, and who are able to work without pressure.
c) Employers prefer qualified, skilled employees who are sufficient in computer and internet skills, in addition to being able to work under different forms of pressure.
d) Employers prefer qualified, skilled employees who are proficient in computer and interne skills, and who are able to work under different forms of pressure.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner



Unit 12

Myths and fables

Objectives

- Reading : A myth and a fable; two legends
- Writing : Write your own myth.
- Listening : Listen to guests on a radio show discussing the relevance of myths in modern day society.
- Speaking : Debate about the relevance of myths; Re-tell a story.
- Language : Reported speech
- Life skills : Empathy; Learn from the past and understand our origins

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 1

Lessons 1 & 2

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

brave (adj)	شجاع
cause (n) (v) (d)	قضية/يسبب
cheer (v) (ed)	يشجع/يهتف
chivalry (n)	الفروسية
chop (v) (ped)	يقطع
eternal (adj)	أبدى/خالد
evidence (n)	دليل
fable (n)	خرافة/قصص خيالية
fed up (adj)	متضجر
flood (n) (v) (ed)	فيضان/يفيض
generous (adj)	كريم
honourable (adj)	نبيل/مشرف
humble (adj)	متواضع
knight (n)	فارس
legend (n)	أسطورة
look back (v) (ed)	ينظر للخلف
myth (n)	أسطورة/خرافة
polite (adj)	مؤدب
steady (adj)	ثابت
stretch out (v) (ed)	يتمدد/يقوم بتمرين إطالة
tear (n) (v)	دمعة/يمزق

Vocabulary on Reading

admit (v) (ted)	يعترف
armour (n)	درع
author (n)	مؤلف
beloved (adj)	محبوب
boast (v) (ed) (n)	يتباهى/يتفاخر/تباهى
centre (v) (d) (n)	يتركز/مركز
challenge (v) (d) (n)	يتحدى/تحدٍّ
code (n)	شفرة/رمز/قانون
culture (n)	ثقافة
defeat (v) (ed)	يهزم
demonstrate (v) (d)	يدلل/يثبت
dragon (n)	تنين (مخلوق أسطورى)
encouragement (n)	تشجيع
exaggerate (v) (d)	يبالغ
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
fact (n)	حقيقة
fighter (n)	محارب
fit (n) (v) (ted)	نوبة/يناسب
force (n) (v) (d)	قوة/يجبر
furious (adj)	ثائر/غاضب
gather (v) (ed)	يتجمع
generation (n)	جيل
grateful (adj)	ممتن/معترف
hare (n)	أرنب
hero (n)	بطل
Holy Grail	الكأس المقدسة
jealous (adj)	غيور
legendary (adj)	أسطورى
liquid (n)	سائل
manage (v) (d)	يتمكن/ينجح
Middle Ages (n)	العصور الوسطى
monster (n)	وحش
moral (n)	خلق/فضيلة
motivation (n)	دافع/حافز
musical (n)	فيلم موسيقى
obey (v) (ed)	يطيع

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Myths and fables

real-life (adj)	حقيقى (من واقع الحياة)
reflect (v) (ed)	يعكس
regular (adj)	منتظم
relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى
ruler (n)	حاكم
shining (adj)	لامع
sword (n)	سيف
tortoise (n)	سلحفاة
verbally (adv)	لفظيًا/شفويًا
version (n)	نسخة/إصدار
virtue (n)	فضيلة
youth (n)	الشباب

occur (v) (red)	يحدث
overall (adj)	كلى/شامل
pace (n) (v) (d)	سرعة (المشى/الجرى)/يسرع الخطى
partly (adv)	جزئيا
pause (v) (d)	يتوقف/يصمت
perseverance (n)	عزيمة/إصرار/مثابرة
poet (n)	شاعر
power (n)	قوة
proof (n)	إثبات/دليل
purpose (n)	غرض
qualities (n)	سمات/صفات
race (n)	سباق

Workbook Vocabulary

attack (n) (v) (ed)	هجوم/يهاجم
contest (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
debatable (adj)	قابلة للنقاش/خلافى
defend (v) (ed)	يدافع عن
deserve (v) (d)	يستحق
donate (v) (d)	يتبرع بـ

emergency (n)	طوارئ
fierce (adj)	شديد/عنيف
hunting (n)	الصيد
murder (n)	جريمة قتل
stony (adj)	حجرى
strict (adj)	صارم/حازم

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

(be) made up by	يتم صناعته بواسطة
(be) told aloud	يتم حكايته شفويا/بصوت عالٍ
bring ... back to life	يعيد ... للحياة
follow a code of behaviour	يتبع قانونًا سلوكيًا
force of nature	قوى الطبيعة
from then on	من ذلك الحين فصاعدا
annoyed with	منزعج من
based on	معتمد على
boast about	يتباهى بخصوص
centre around	يتركز حول
cover ... with	يغطى ... بـ
cut into	يقطع إلى

give a shout	يطلق صيحة
in a fit of anger	فى نوبة غضب
keep walking	يواصل السير
make ... interesting	يجعل ... شيقا
take the risk	يأخذ المخاطرة
throughout the world	عبر العالم
drop of	قطرة من
pass on/down	ينتقل من
run along	يجرى عبر
reflected in	معكوس فى
version of	نسخة من

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
defeat	يهزم	defeat	انهزام	defeated	منهزم
demonstrate	يدلل/يبين	demonstration	تدليل/دليل	demonstrative	مبين
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
exaggerate	يبالغ	exaggeration	مبالغة	exaggerated	مبالغ فيه
motivate	يحفز	motivation	حافز/دافع	motivated	متحفز
persevere	يثابر	perseverance	مثابرة	motivational	محفز
prove	يثبت	proof	دليل	persevering	مثابر
reflect	يعكس	reflection	انعكاس	proven	مثبت
shine	يسطع	shine/shininess	سطوع	reflected	منعكس/معكوس
				shining	لامع/مضيء

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
cheer	يهتف	applaud/yell	disapprove/depress يستحسن/يحبط
encouragement	تشجيع	support/backing	discouragement إحباط/عدم تشجيع
exaggerate	يبالغ	overstate/overemphasise	compress/ignore يختصر/يتجاهل
fed up	متضجر	annoyed/dissatisfied	pleased/happy مسرور
force	قوة	strength	powerlessness عجز
furious	ثائر	enraged	calm/gentle هادئ/الطيف
gather	يجتمع	assemble/come together	leave/separate يغادر/ينفصل
generous	كريم	benevolent/charitable	mean/miserly بخيل
grateful	ممتن	appreciative	thankless/ungrateful غير ممتن
jealous	غيور	envious	content راض
manage	يتمكن	achieve/deal with	disarrange لا يرتب
motivation	دافع	inspiration/encouragement	depression ضغط
obey	يطيع	accept/surrender	decline/disobey يرفض/لا يطيع
occur	يحدث	take place/happen	precede يسبق
perseverance	مثابرة	dedication/determination	indifference لا مبالاة
steady	ثابت	stable/reliable	irregular/unsteady غير منتظم
verbally	لفظيا	orally	written مكتوب
virtue	فضيلة	advantage	dishonour عدم تكريم

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 1

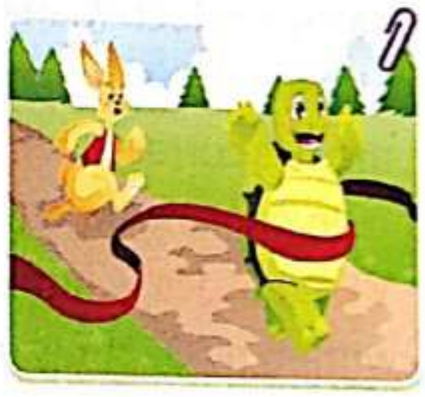
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A famous actor played the role of Hercules - the Greek ..... - in the new film.
   a) fact b) fiction c) adventure d) legend
2. Most students in the class are making ..... progress due to the new excellent teacher.
   a) affecting b) moving c) steady d) helpless
3. If it went on raining for much longer, the river would ..... .
   a) flood b) merge c) decline d) recharge
4. When the children stopped singing, everyone ..... and clapped their hands in admiration.
   a) angered b) chased c) cheered d) shouted
5. When she wasn't elected to be a member of the team, Mary cried and left the room in ..... .
   a) liquid b) pleasure c) tears d) excitement

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 a) 4 c) 5 c)

Reading Text (1)

The Hare and the Tortoise



All the animals were fed up with Hare boasting about how fast he could run. One day, Slow and Steady(1) the tortoise said, "I can challenge you to a race now". It was a hot day. All the animals had gathered to watch. Hare ran along the road for a while, then paused and looked round. He said, "I'm getting bored". He looked back(2) at Slow and Steady and shouted, "You'll never win this race when you are walking at your slow pace".

Hare stretched out(3) in the sun to have a little sleep thinking, "There is plenty of time to relax". While Hare was sleeping, Slow and Steady kept walking. He never stopped until he came to the finish line. The animals cheered(4) loudly for the tortoise. Hare woke up and saw the tortoise crossing the finishing line.

(1) ثابت
(2) ينظر للخلف
(3) يتمدد
(4) يهتف

Isis and Osiris

Osiris was the king of Egypt. He had a wife called Isis and a son called Horus. Osiris's brother, Seth, was very jealous. He said, "I want to be king myself". In a fit of anger(5) he killed his brother Osiris, turned him into little pieces and threw him into the Nile. Isis managed to find the pieces and she brought them to her good friend Anubis, who was very clever. He said, "I could put the pieces back together again, but I don't have the power to bring him back to life".

When Osiris's grandfather Ra found out what happened, he was furious. He said, "I'm going to give Osiris a new job". He made Osiris the god of the dead. Finally, Osiris's son Horus defeated Seth and became the ruler of Egypt.

From then on, Isis travels to the banks of the Nile every year, and remembers her husband, crying tears(6) into the Nile. This is why the Nile rises each year, and sometimes floods(7).

(5) نوبة من الغضب
(6) دموع
(7) يفيض

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (2)

Legend of King Arthur

Have you ever heard of the legend of King Arthur? King Arthur is a legendary king in ancient Britain. The story of King Arthur is based partly on myth[1] and partly on fact. Many people think King Arthur did exist and there are many ideas about who he was, but there isn't enough evidence to prove if any of them is correct.

In ancient times, stories about King Arthur were told aloud. Later, in the Middle Ages[2], authors began to write the stories down. The first story was written by Geoffrey of Monmouth in the 12th century book History of the Kings of Britain. The stories about King Arthur usually centre around a few main characters: King Arthur, Queen Guinevere, and the Knights[3] of the Round Table who helped King Arthur fight for good causes and protect the weak. Knights were fighters in Europe during the Middle Ages. They rode horses and carried swords, and wore heavy armour[4]. Knights also followed a code of behaviour called chivalry[5]. This asked knights to be brave, humble, honourable, generous and polite, especially to women. One of the greatest knights was Sir Lancelot, who was such a brave knight that he defeated[6] many monsters and dragons.

The reader might ask, "How has King Arthur become such a legend?" According to one story, a wise old man called Merlin put a sword in a stone, and said that whoever pulled the sword out would be the king of England. Arthur pulled the sword out and that's how he became king. He was only fifteen years old and many people said he was too young to be king, so they refused to obey him.

A French poet called Chretien de Troyes wrote five stories about King Arthur in the 1100s. He introduced the 'Holy Grail' into the legend, which was a cup that was so powerful that it could bring eternal[7] youth and happiness. In the 1400s, an English writer, Sir Thomas Malory, wrote The Death of Arthur, which became famous, and in the 1900s, another English writer, T. H. White, wrote four novels based on Malory's books. There were also two very well-known films made about King Arthur in the 1960s; a musical called Camelot, and The word in the Stone, a Walt Disney film.

(1) أسطورة/خرافة
(2) العصور الوسطى
(3) فرسان
(4) درع
(5) الفروسية
(6) يحزم
(7) خالد/أبدى

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

A long time ago, a brave knight had a son who was called Setanta. As he was growing up, he loved to stretch out and listen to his father boast about the different adventures he had had. While he was listening to these stories, they would cheer and laugh. One story was about a group of knights called the Red Knights who were the bravest knights in the country. "I really want to join them!" Setanta thought. He practised hard, even though he was still a young boy, and he had developed many new skills which helped him win hunting and sporting contests.

He wanted to join the Red Knights so much that one night he left to find them. He had to walk for a long time and it was dangerous. However, as he had learnt how to defend himself, he thought, "If I keep on walking at a steady pace, I won't face many problems".

Finally, he arrived at the castle of the Red Knights. But they told him, "You are too young to join us". And as he was leaving the castle, he was attacked by a very large and fierce dog. The big dog was not a problem for him and when the Knights saw what had happened they invited Setanta to be in charge of protecting the castle.

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Ziad Sabri's daily blog

It's debatable whether a person from the present can also be a legend. Personally, if I had to choose someone today, I'd consider Mohamed Salah to be a legend. He's an honourable Egyptian footballer and he is also so generous that he has helped lots of people in his country. Although he is famous, he is such a humble person and he has never forgotten his roots. "I am lucky enough to be able to help as many people as possible" he says, "but I wish I had more time in the day to help more people."

To reach as many people as possible, he has created a charity and helped with specific projects too. For example, in an emergency, when he saw there were not enough ambulances to bring people to hospital, he paid for a new ambulance centre in Gharbia. Also, he realised that girls in Nagrig had to walk too far to go to school every day so he helped pay for a girl's school in Nagrig. He also donated 50 million Egyptian pounds to the National Cancer Association. He is well known in Egypt for his charity work and we call him 'the happiness maker' and that's why for me Mohamed Salah is a legend.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My daughter was awarded the first prize in the writing ..... at school.
   a) test b) contest c) race d) fight
2. Due to the economic problems of COVID-19 pandemic, workers had to fight to ..... their jobs.
   a) create b) defy c) prevent d) defend
3. Most animals are always ..... when they protect their young.
   a) fierce b) weak c) easy d) spacious
4. The police are investigating the ..... of a homeless man who was shot in the street.
   a) infection b) search c) murder d) disease
5. Our teacher of English is very ..... about homework. She gets very angry when we forget it.
   a) simple b) strict c) flexible d) weak

Answers 1) b 2) d 3) a 4) c 5) b

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

cheer يشجع/يهتف	give a shout of encouragement
chop يقطع	cut into pieces
fed up متضجر	annoyed or bored
flood فيضان	cover land with a large amount of water
look back ينظر خلفه	look at something behind you
steady ثابت	keeping the same regular pace
stretch out يتمدد	extending your arms and legs
tear دمعة	a drop of salty liquid that comes out of your eye when you are crying

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

1 **myth**
اسطورة (قصة لا تعتمد على حقائق)

legend
اسطورة (قصة تعتمد على حقائق مع المبالغة فيها)

fable
قصة أسطورية (قصة عن الحيوانات أو الطبيعة تتناقلها الأجيال تهدف إلى نصيحة أو تعليم شيء محدد)

- It's a complete myth that eating carrots helps you to see in the dark.
- The castle of Camelot plays an important role in Arthurian legend.
- *"The Hare and the Tortoise"* is an old fable that is known in many cultures.

2 **admit**
يعترف أو يقر بـ وهنا الاسم منها admittance
يسمح بدخول أو الالتحاق بمكان (كمسرح/نادى/جامعة) وهنا الاسم منها admittance/admission

- I must admit that the results were disappointing.
- You will not be admitted to the theatre after the performance has started.

confess
يعترف بجريمة (غالبًا للشرطة أو أى سلطة)

- He confessed to the police officer that he had stolen the money.

3 **stop**
يتوقف (عن السير أو فعل شيء)

- I stopped to have a look at the directions.

pause
يصمت/يتوقف (عن الكلام أو فعل شيء قبل أن يكمل ثانية)

- The spokesman paused for a moment to consider the reporter's question.

4 **exaggerate**
يبالغ (القول أو الكتابة عن حجم أو أهمية شيء أكثر من الحقيقة)

- The writer has exaggerated when he said that the house is like a castle.

overemphasise/overplay
يضخم (يبالغ فى أهمية أو تأثير شيء أكثر من الحقيقة)

- The importance of cleanliness in the preparation of food cannot be overemphasised.

5 **force**
يجبر (يتبعها المصدر + to)

- His poor health forced him to take early retirement.

cause
يسبب (يتبعها المصدر + to)

- What caused you to change your mind?

make
يجعل (يتبعها المصدر بدون to)

- My parents always make me do my homework before I go out.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Reading Texts

- Hare woke up and saw the tortoise crossing the finishing line.

لاحظ استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (see) كما يمكن استخدام (to + infinitive).

- Hare ran along the road for a while, then paused and looked round.

لاحظ استخدام (a while) بمعنى برهة/فترة قصيرة.

- Many people think King Arthur did exist and .....

لاحظ استخدام (did exist) فى الجملة المثبتة للتأكيد.

- There were also two very well-known films made about King Arthur in the 1960s; .....

فى الجملة اختصار لضمير وصل محذوف فالجملة أصلها.

- There were also two very well-known films which were made about King Arthur in the 1960s; .....

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I asked him to give me his mobile phone, he refused without ..... for thought.
   - a) stopping
   - b) pausing
   - c) continuing
   - d) ceasing
2. I think Mr. Essam ..... when he said he caught a 20-kilo fish. It would be too heavy.
   - a) exaggerated
   - b) underestimated
   - c) despised
   - d) overplayed
3. The young man wasn't ..... to the Opera House because he wasn't dressed properly.
   - a) admitted
   - b) confessed
   - c) professed
   - d) rejected
4. My favourite ..... is *"The Lion and the Rat"*. I first read it when I was in primary four.
   - a) myth
   - b) legend
   - c) fable
   - d) lie
5. My mother always ..... me do the washing up before I go out.
   - a) force
   - b) cause
   - c) allow
   - d) make

Answers 1) b 2) d 3) a 4) c 5) d

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Vocabulary Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 While mother was ..... onions, she accidentally cut her finger.
a) baking b) chopping c) growing d) cooking

2 The High Dam helped protect Egypt from ..... and helped the economy as well.
a) hurricanes b) storms c) earthquakes d) floods

3 Mr Essam was really ..... to his two nephews; he gave each of them a gift.
a) generous b) miserly c) helpless d) offensive

4 My grandfather was a/an ..... man who never lied.
a) violent b) patient c) honourable d) decided

5 The new movie which is based on the ..... of Robin Hood was very successful.
a) programme b) legend c) riddle d) preface

6 It is said that the American ..... has been exported all over the world through Hollywood movies.
a) sculpture b) habit c) capture d) culture

7 The police have found new ..... that confirms the story of the robbery.
a) report b) evidence c) puzzle d) publication

8 My grandfather's poor health ..... him into early retirement.
a) helped b) made c) forced d) allowed

9 The novels of Naguib Mahfouz ..... the values of the Egyptian society.
a) reflect b) reject c) defy d) purify

10 The ..... of this dictionary is to help Chinese students who learn English.
a) conclusion b) purpose c) cover d) result

11 The newspaper claimed it had ..... that the suspects are not criminals.
a) signal b) notice c) proof d) title

12 The ..... of life in the countryside is slower than that of the city.
a) cost b) reply c) excitement d) pace

13 The soldiers of the army are trained to get used to ..... orders.
a) obeying b) disobeying c) refusing d) agreeing

14 Strange phenomena ظواهر such as hurricanes and storms can ..... all over the world.
a) occur b) place c) take part d) land

15 We didn't ..... to go to the exhibition because there were no more tickets.
a) run b) manage c) make d) enable

16 All military messages are sent to soldiers in a secret ..... so as not to be discovered.
a) rule b) law c) code d) roll

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

17 The multinational company has come under fierce ..... for its decision to close the factc
a) praise b) pleasure c) prize d) attack

18 Grandma always kept a bit of money away in case there was a/an ..... .
a) emergency b) invention
c) expectancy d) breakthrough

19 It is ..... whether these alternative medical treatments actually work. We aren't sure of th
a) certified b) debatable c) credited d) proven

20 It's true that the young clerk made a mistake but she doesn't ..... to lose her job.
a) accept b) expect c) deserve d) release

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

21 I'm really fed up with all this tiring work. The adjective "fed up" is the opposite of the adjective ".....".
a) decisive b) protective c) annoyed d) pleased

22 Some folk stories such as "Abu Zeid El Hilaly" are still ..... aloud in villages in Egypt.
a) noted b) spoken c) told d) replied

23 As soon as the party started, Wafaa started boasting ..... her achievements.
a) in b) about c) for d) at

24 The speech that the sports star gave was so ..... that all the listeners cheered.
a) motivate b) motivation c) motivational d) motivated

25 If you invest in the stock market, you ..... the risk of losing your money.
a) give b) take c) devise d) offer

26 The story about the hare and the tortoise ..... that success comes with patience and determination.
a) proves b) proof c) proven d) profession

27 It is believed that myth is the version ..... science in the old times.
a) in b) of c) at d) out

28 Our family gathered at my grandmother's birthday party. The verb "gather" is similar in meanin to the verb ".....".
a) comply b) communicate c) assemble d) conceive

29 My cousin achieved his ambition because he ..... and concentrated on his work.
a) persevered b) perseverance c) persevering d) preserved

30 The fans cheered loudly when the actress appeared. The antonym of the verb "cheered" is ".....".
a) encouraged b) yelled c) approved d) disapprove

31 Our neighbour looks jealous of people who are richer than him. The opposite of "jealous" is ".....".
a) angry b) content c) worried d) defensive

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Myths and fables

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

Reported Speech (Direct & Indirect Speech)
الكلام المنقول (المباشر وغير المباشر)

- **Statements** الجمل الخبرية
- **Questions** الجمل الاستفهامية
- **Imperatives (Orders)** الجمل الأمرية

الكلام غير المباشر هو نقل كلام شخص فى وقت غير وقت الكلام ومكان غير المكان وهذا يستلزم تغيير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان.

1) Reported statements

الجمل الخبرية

Omar said," I am ill today."

Omar said that he was ill that day.

عندما قال عمر هذا الكلام كان فى يوم غير وقت نقل الكلام عنه فلزم تغيير الزمن من «يكون» إلى «كان» وظرف الزمان من «اليوم» إلى «ذلك اليوم»

ما يميز الجمل الخبرية:

١ يكـون فعـل القول فـى الجملة الخبرية said أو told وبعد said لا نعـرف المتحدث إليه ولكن بعد told نعرف المتحـدث إليه أى يأتى بعد told المفعول به سواء اسم أو ضمير مفعول مثل me/him/her/us/them.

٢ لا نجد علامات اقتباس فى الجملة المحولة ونربط الجملة الخبرية بـ that ويمكن حذفها.

٣ بعد that دائما جملة كاملة بدايتها الفاعل (اسم أو ضمير) والضمائر تكون موافقة لسياق الجملة.

٤ إذا كان فعل القول (said/told) ماضيًا فلا يوجد مضارع أو مستقبل بعده إلا فى الحالات الخاصة لأن الكلام قد تغير زمنه فنعود بالزمن درجة للوراء كالآتى:

Direct	Indirect
write/writes	wrote
wrote	had written
is/are writing	was/were writing
have/has written	had written
has/have been writing	had been writing
was/were writing	had been writing
will/shall write	would write
shall write	should (asking for advice) write
may write	might write
can write	could write
must write	had to/must (laws) write
will have to write	would have to write

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

ع ظروف الزمان والمكان وضمائر الإشارة تكون موافقة للكلام المنقول أيضا وهى كالتالى:

Direct	Indirect
now	then
this	that
these	those
here	there
today	that day
tonight	that night
this afternoon	that afternoon
tomorrow	the next day
tomorrow morning	the next morning
next week	the following week
next Friday	the following Friday
yesterday	the day before/the previous day
last week	the week before/the previous week
(two days) ago	(two days) before/earlier

- Leila said,"I like tennis and I played a good game this morning,"
- Leila said that she liked tennis and she had played a good game that morning.

لاحظ

لا يتغير الزمن فى الجملة المحولة فى الحالات الآتية:

(أ) الحقائق (facts)

- The teacher told us that the Nile is the longest river in the world.

(ب) إذا كان الكلام مقال حالا أى به كلمات مثل (just now/a moment ago)

- My father said just now that he is going to Alex tomorrow.

(ج) إذا كان فعل القول فى أحد أزمنة المضارع أو المستقبل.

- Ahmed says/has said that he is ready for the exam.

(د) الماضى التام والماضى من modal verbs و had better/used to يبقى كما هو.

- He said that they could see the mountain after they had reached the top of the tower.

يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلًا من said: بلغ/نقل الخبر reported/وافق agreed/أكد asserted/أوضح indicated/ذكر mentioned/complained/ادعى claimed/explained اوضح/shout صاح/promised وعد

- The man said, "The woman was killed yesterday."
- The man reported that the woman had been killed the day before.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

❷ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية ويأتى بعدها v + ing:

suggest/admit/deny/apologize for/objected to/insisted on + (v-ing)

He said, "Let's look for another flat."

He suggested looking for another flat.

بعد deny/admit يمكن تحويل الجملة باستخدام that وبعدها جملة أو استخدام v + ing:

He said, "I didn't steal the bag."

He denied stealing the bag.

He denied that he had stolen the bag. (الفعل بعد deny مثبت)

❸ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية ويأتى بعدها to + inf.:

promise/offer/agree/threaten/refuse/remind/decide/warn/ask/advise/allow/ + (to + inf.)

He said, "I'll help you with your homework."

He promised to help me with my homework.

He promised that he would help me with my homework.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adel ..... he'd given up smoking the week before.
   a) said b) wondered
   c) told d) inquired
2. Sara told me that she ..... a job interview the previous day.
   a) had b) will have
   c) had had d) has
3. She said that China ..... a densely populated country.
   a) would be b) will be
   c) had been d) is
4. He told me that he ..... me to repair my car the following day.
   a) helped b) would help
   c) had helped d) will help
5. Nadia said that she ..... a test the following week.
   a) took b) takes
   c) will take d) was taking

Answers 1) a 2) c 3) d 4) b 5) d

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

الجمل الاستفهامية

2 Reported Questions

- I said to Ali,"What did you buy yesterday?"
  I asked Ali what he had bought the day before.
- He said, " Will the match be on TV tomorrow?
  He asked if/whether the match would be on TV the following day.

- يكون فعل القول فى الجملة الاستفهامية asked وبعدها مفعول أو بدون مفعول.
- أو wanted to know/wondered/inquired-didn't know بدون مفعول.
- لا نجد علامات اقتباس فى السؤال المحول ونربط السؤال بـنفس كلمة الاستفهام أو إذا كان السؤال بـ هل if/whether.
- بعد الربط تكون الجملة خبرية بدايتها الفاعل (اسم أو ضمير) ثم الفعل ثم باقى السؤال.

- He asked what Hany was carrying. ✓
- He asked what was Hany carrying. ✗

- (أ) تحذف علامة الاستفهام ونضع نقطة .
- (ب) إذا بدأ السؤال المحول بـ ... Do you know/Can/Could you tell me نضع علامة استفهام وليس نقطة.
- إذا كان فعل القول (asked) ماضيًا فلا يوجد مضارع أو مستقبل بعده إلا فى الحالات الخاصة.
- فى تحويل الأسئلة نغير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان كما فى النوع الخبرى.

- "Where will you go next week?"
  She asked him where he would go the following week.
- "Do you often write poems?"
  I asked him if/whether he often wrote poems.
- "Where did you have lunch?"
  She asked me where I had had lunch.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Farouk ..... Othman why he was late but Othman didn't answer.
   a) told b) wondered
   c) asked d) wanted to know
2. He asked me if I ..... a nice time on my previous holiday.
   a) have b) have had
   c) had d) had had
3. Nadia asked me where ..... spend my next weekend.
   a) I shall b) I would
   c) would I d) I had
4. Ola's mother asked her if ..... her some bread from the supermarket.
   a) she would get b) had she got
   c) would she get d) she was getting
5. The boss asked Ali what ..... to complete the task in two hours only.
   a) he has done b) has he done
   c) he had done d) had he done

Answers 1 c) 2 d) 3 b) 4 a) 5 c)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Father said that ..... .
   a) I'm at my office
   b) he was at his office
   c) you are at your office
   d) "I'm at my office"
2. Omar said that ..... to Hany two days before.
   a) he'd spoken
   b) he's spoken
   c) you speak
   d) I have spoken
3. I didn't know if he ..... at the airport with his friends.
   a) has been
   b) is going to be
   c) would be
   d) will be
4. Ramy asked his brother .....
   a) where is the hammer.
   b) where was the hammer.
   c) where the hammer was?
   d) where the hammer was.
5. She said, "My brother is a student." She said that ..... a student.
   a) my brother is
   b) your brother was
   c) my brother was
   d) her brother was
6. I don't know whether I ..... succeed in passing my exam or not.
   a) will be
   b) would
   c) will
   d) could be
7. She was sorry that ..... for the meeting.
   a) she was late
   b) she is late
   c) was she late
   d) to be late
8. "I'd like to come." She said. She said ..... to come.
   a) she'd liked
   b) she'd like
   c) I'd liked
   d) I'd like
9. She asked me if ..... to Hala's wedding party.
   a) I was going
   b) I am going
   c) are you going
   d) they are going
10. Nancy wanted to know ..... grammar book.
    a) whether she'd seen my
    b) did I see her
    c) if I'd seen her
    d) I'd seen her
11. Tell me .....
    a) why is she crying.
    b) why she is crying.
    c) why was she crying.
    d) why she was crying?
12. She complained that she ..... for more than an hour before the doctor arrived.
    a) would wait
    b) should wait
    c) has waited
    d) had been waiting
13. Samy asked Sara what she ..... by "globalisation".
    a) was meaning
    b) means
    c) meant
    d) does mean
14. "Fantastic! I've actually passed my exam!" Exclaimed Hoda. Hoda was delighted to find that ..... .
    a) I've passed my exam
    b) she'd passed her exam
    c) she's passed her exam
    d) I'd passed my exam
15. I doubt ..... anybody knows how to solve my problem.
    a) whether
    b) which
    c) why
    d) what

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

16 The teacher promised ..... three English poems.

a) that we can learn
b) who will learn
c) if we learn
d) we would learn

17 He ..... me if I ..... a taxi to the mall the day before.

a) asked/ have taken
b) asks/ will take
c) is asking/ would take
d) asked/ had taken

18 He asked me what I was reading. "....." He asked me.

a) What you are reading
b) What do you read
c) What you were reading
d) What are you reading

19 The doctor asked his nurse ..... .

a) when is she going to give the medicine to the patient
b) if she would come in time the following day
c) if the patient prepared for the operation
d) when the patient feels asleep tell me

20 I wondered ..... .

a) if the train had come on time
b) whether the train comes on time
c) had the train come on time
d) if the train will come on time

21 My daughter ..... her teacher had given her a reward that day.

a) agreed
b) told
c) said
d) complained

22 Nobody knows ..... .

a) who starts the fire
b) what started the fire
c) what starts the fire
d) who'd started the fire

23 My sister said, "I hope we shall go on a day trip to the lake".
My sister said that ..... on a day trip to the lake".

a) she hopes we will go
b) she hoped we were going
c) she hoped they would go
d) she hops we should go

24 She said that she ..... to visit Cairo the following week.

a) was wanting
b) would want
c) will want
d) wanted

25 My mother told Amira that she ..... better clean up the mess in her room.

a) had had
b) had
c) was
d) would

26 I ..... Osama what I had done before going to the interview.

a) wondered
b) didn't know
c) asked
d) told

27 The teacher wanted to know who ..... me with my homework.

a) had helped
b) he had helped
c) has helped
d) did help

28 Could you kindly tell me where .....

a) is the manager?
b) was the manager?
c) the manager is?
d) the manager was.

29 He ..... why he was late, but the teacher didn't believe him.

a) told
b) wondered
c) asked
d) explained

30 I knew that ..... would be difficult.

a) they would come
b) their coming
c) they came
d) they were coming

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new job would provide Sameh with a ..... income to support his family.
   a) steady b) distorted c) temporary d) moving
2. When Selim returned home, he ..... himself out on the sofa and fell asleep.
   a) lied b) stretched c) laid d) swapped
3. All police officers are required to wear bulletproof body ..... on duty.
   a) screens b) weapons c) armours d) pullovers
4. Our neighbour is always ..... about how wonderful her children are.
   a) devising b) contemplating c) considering d) boasting
5. The main story is ..... about two young men, one is a writer, the other is a bank clerk.
   a) mended b) calculated c) centred d) studied
6. The possibility of ..... life after death is a principle belief of all heavenly religions.
   a) vain b) eternal c) unclear d) temporary
7. A dragon is a ..... animal that can breathe out fire and looks like a very large lizard with wings, a long tail, and large claws.
   a) legendary b) factual c) real-life d) truthful
8. My uncle had been a talented musician in his ..... before he retired at 65.
   a) period b) adolescence c) age d) youth
9. Ola said that she was hungry. Ola said, "..... ".
   a) I will be hungry b) I am hungry c) She was hungry d) She is hungry
10. The science teacher said that when you freeze water, you ..... ice.
    a) will get b) would get c) can get d) get
11. Soha ..... Mariam where she was going.
    a) wondered b) inquired c) asked d) advised
12. Could you tell me where .....?
    a) the bus station is b) the bus station was c) is the bus station d) was the bus station
13. I promised that I ..... Mr Othman on Saturday morning.
    a) would contact b) couldn't contact c) contact d) contacted
14. The nurse doesn't understand why the girl ..... .
    a) would cough b) was coughing c) is coughing d) cough
15. I asked him ..... it was true that he had won the first medal.
    a) weather b) whether c) which d) who
16. "I am meeting my boss tomorrow."
    The correct reported speech of the sentence above is "....."
    a) Samy said that he was meeting his boss tomorrow.
    b) Samy said that he was meeting his boss the previous day.
    c) Samy said that he would meet his boss the following day.
    d) Samy said that he was meeting his boss the following day.
17. Choose the correctly punctuated sentence from the options below:
    a) I was late for school this morning the bus was full and I had to walk.
    b) I was late for school this morning: the bus was full and I had to walk.
    c) I was late for school this morning! the bus was full and I had to walk.
    d) I was late for school this morning, the bus was full and I had to walk.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 Choose the correctly punctuated sentence from the

a) Michael wasn't worried at all about the exam because he, had prepared so well over the break

b) Michael wasn't worried at all about the exam because, he had prepared so well over the break

c) Michael wasn't worried at all about the exam, because he had prepared so well over the break

d) Michael wasn't worried at all about the exam because he had prepared so well over the break

19 A good paragraph will have at least 5 sentences. They will be .....

a) run-on, opinion, 3 incomplete sentences

b) interesting, scary, informative and 2 question sentences

c) topic, 3 supporting details, concluding sentence

d) noun, adjective, verb, adverb, and preposition

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People love plastic, they think it is great! You can see why. It is very versatile: you can change its shape and it is very light. It is also very cheap. And it is attractive, you can have it in any colour. But it causes many problems. Because it is cheap, people throw plastic things away, instead of re-using them. Things like: plastic bottles, bags, containers, straws, people use these once and then throw them away. On top of this, a lot of packaging contains plastic. Parts of your McDonald's and packets of certain types of crisps are made from plastic. Why is this a problem? Well, it is unsightly; not nice to look at. However, one of the main problems is that plastic is not biodegradable. It lives for many, many years. It is a particular problem in the seas and the oceans. It breaks up into small pieces and marine life, from whales to the smallest fish, eat these plastic particles. It is poisonous to them. Besides, when humans eat fish and seafood, they are also ingesting these plastic particles. Bigger pieces of plastic, like bottles, can cause problems if larger fish, for example, dolphins, swallow them. They block up the dolphins' stomachs and this can kill the dolphins. We must stop making so much plastic and putting it into our environment. Stop and think before you buy plastic and stop and think twice before you throw plastic things away!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 What do people think of plastic?

a) People hate plastic and they think it is nasty.

b) People love plastic, they think it is grea

c) People love plastic although it is ugly.

d) People hate plastic as it isn't useful.

21 What does the underlined word "versatile" mean?

a) Cheap.

b) Poisonous.

c) Flexible.

d) Expensive.

22 Why do people love plastic?

a) It is very cheap.

b) It is attractive

c) You can have it in any colour.

d) All of these.

23 Which one of the following isn't a problem caused by plastic?

a) Plastic is very flexible and you can change its shape.

b) People throw plastic things away.

c) People don't re-use plastic things as it is cheap.

d) Plastic is not biodegradable.

24 What problem can plastic bottles cause to the dolphins?

a) The dolphins eat them and become fat.

b) They block up the dolphins' stomachs.

c) The dolphins die after eating them.

d) The dolphins spend much time eating them.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

25 What must we do to avoid the problem of plastic?
a) We must stop making so much plastic.
b) We mustn't eat fish.
c) You should continue to buy plastic.
d) All of these.

26 What is the best title to the passage?
a) We can't live without plastic.
b) The advantages of plastic.
c) Plastic in the sea.
d) Plastic is not fantastic.

27 Plastic is dangerous when .....
a) it is thrown in seas and oceans
b) it is made into plates and buckets
c) it is used at homes and offices
d) it is recycled to help the economy

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 Having one of the oldest cultures dating back to before the pharaohs; Egypt's culture is well developed and distinctive. That's why it is still admired all over the world.

a) بـزوال واحـدة من أقـدم الثقافات التى يعود تاريخها إلى ما قبـل الفراعنة تعتبر ثقافة مصر متطورة ومميزة ولهذا السـبب لا تزال تحظى بالإعجاب فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

b) بامتـلاك واحـدة مـن أقدم الثقافات التى يعود تاريخها إلى ما قبل الفراعنة تعتبر ثقافة مصر متطورة ومميزة ولهذا السـبب لا تزال تحظى بالإعجاب فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

c) بقدوم واحدة من أقدم الثقافات التى يعود تاريخها إلى ما قبل الفراعنة كانت تعتبر ثقافة مصر نامية ومميزة ولهذا السبب لا تزال تحظى بالإعجاب فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

d) بامتـلاك واحـدة من أقدم الثقافات التى يعود تاريخهـا إلى ما قبل الفراعنة تعتبر ثقافة مصر متطورة ومميزة ولهذا السـبب كانت تحظى بالإعجاب فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

29 Overpopulation in Egypt has led to many problems like illiteracy, heavy traffic and unemployment. Hence, we should try to find effective solutions for this serious problem.

a) حل النقص السـكانى فى مصر إلى العديد من المشـكلات مثل الأمية وحركة المرور الكثيفة والبطالة ومع ذلك علينا أن نحاول إيجاد حلول فعالة لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

b) أدت الزيادة السكانية فى مصر إلى العديد من المشكلات مثل الأمية وحركة المرور الكثيفة والبطالة ومع ذلك علينا أن نحاول إيجاد حلول فعالة لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

c) حل النقص السـكانى فى مصر إلى العديد من المشـكلات مثل عدم القراءة وحركة المرور الكثيفة والبطالة ومن ثم علينا أن نحاول إيجاد حلول فعالة لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

d) أدت الزيادة السـكانية فى مصر إلى العديد من المشـكلات مثل الأمية وحركة المرور الكثيفة والبطالة ومن ثم علينا أن نحاول إيجاد حلول فعالة لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

30 رغم استمرار انتشار فيروس كورونا فى العالم فإن هناك من يتظاهرون ضد عودة إجراءات الغلق التى اضطرت كثير من الحكومات إلى فرضها مع بداية انتشار المرض.

a) Despite the decreasing spread of the coronavirus in the world, there are people who are demonstrating for the return of the closure measures that many governments were forced to propose with the beginning of the disease's spread.
b) Despite the continuing spread of the coronavirus in the world, there are people who are demonstrating against the return of the closure measures that many governments were forced to impose with the beginning of the disease's spread.
c) Although the continuing spread of the coronavirus in the world, there are people who are demonstrating against the return of the closure measures that many governments were forced to impose with the beginning of the disease's spread.
d) However, the stopping spread of the coronavirus in the world, there are people who are demonstrating against the return of the closure measures that many governments were forced to impose with the beginning of the disease's spread.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 2

Lessons 3 & 4

(A) Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

bend (v)	يلوى/ينحنى
branch (n)	غصن/فرع
childhood (n)	مرحلة الطفولة
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
creature (n)	مخلوق
deliver (v) (ed)	يوصل/يسلم
edit (v) (ed)	يحرر/يعدل
entertaining (adj)	مسلٍّ/ممتع
grasslands (n)	مراع/أرض عشبية
humour (n)	فكاهة/دعابة
imaginary (adj)	خيالى
long-necked (adj)	ذو رقبة طويلة
mythology (n)	ميثولوجيا/علم الأساطير
perspective (n)	منظور
plot (n)	حبكة الرواية
relate (v) (d)	يربط/يصل
relevant (adj)	له صلة بالموضوع
short-necked (adj)	ذو رقبة قصيرة
tasty (adj)	ذو طعم جيد/لذيذ
theme (n)	سمة/موضوع
tragic (adj)	مأساوى
universal (adj)	عالمى/كونى
unrealistic (adj)	غير حقيقى
warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Workbook Vocabulary

bite (v)	يعض
conflict (n)	صراع
context (n)	سياق
dove (n)	حمامة
float (v) (ed)	يطفو
flow (v) (ed) (n)	ينساب/انسياب
hunter (n)	صياد
insect (n)	حشرة
leaf (n)	ورقة شجر
literary device (n)	صورة بلاغية
metaphor (n)	استعارة
moral (n)	مغزى/عبرة
pain (n)	ألم
represent (v) (ed)	يمثل
sharp (adj)	حاد
simile (n)	تشبيه
slip (v) (ped)	ينزلق
solution (n)	حل
tale (n)	قصة
trap (n)	مصيدة/فخ

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

in our opinion	فى رأينا
in return	فى المقابل
in trouble	فى متاعب
gather round	يتجمع حول
re-tell ... to	يعيد حكاية ... لـ
teach about	يعلم عن
make traps	يصنع مصائد/فخاخ
over time	بمرور الوقت
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
escape from	يهرب من
close to	قريب من
relate to	يرتبط/يتصل بـ

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
deliver	يوصل	delivery	توصيل		
entertain	يسلى	entertainment	التسلية	entertaining	مسلٍ
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginary	خيالى
relate	يربط/يصل	relation	علاقة	related	مرتبط
represent	يمثل	representation	تمثيل	represented	ممثل
		representative	ممثل/مندوب		
solve	يحل	relevance	الصلة بالموضوع	relevant	متصل بالموضوع
taste	يتذوق	solution	حل		
trap	يوقع فى فخ	taste	مذاق	tasty	لذيذ
		trap	فخ/مصيدة	trapped	واقع فى فخ

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
edit	يحرر/يعدل	rewrite/refine	disarrange/disorder يخطئ الترتيب
imaginary	خيالى	unreal	factual/real حقيقى/واقعى
tragic	مأساوى	awful/shocking	cheerful/delightful مبهج
universal	عالمى/كونى	worldwide	limited محدود
warn	يحذر	alert	ignore يتجاهل

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists have been ..... data about the virus and the vaccines from various sources.
   a) prevailing b) inspecting c) collecting d) prohibiting
2. Students should learn to ..... their essays for grammar and punctuation.
   a) perplex b) puzzle c) spread d) edit
3. We have to look at climate change from an international ..... .
   a) perspective b) search c) defect d) perfect
4. The cookies which we buy at this bakery are very ..... . We like them very much.
   a) disliked b) tasty c) tasteless d) tasting
5. Many experts ..... us of the dangers of not getting enough exercise.
   a) recommend b) enhance c) rejoice d) warn

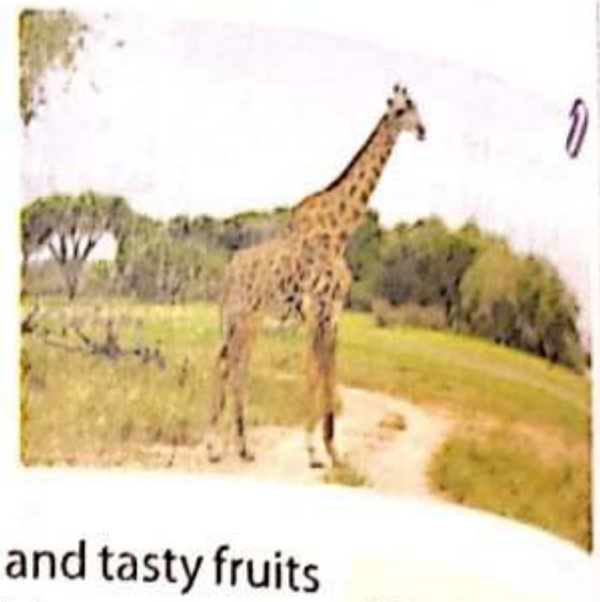
Answers 1) c 2) d 3) a 4) b 5) d

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

Why do giraffes have long necks?



A very long time ago, in Africa there was a family of giraffes with short necks. There was another family of giraffes that had taller necks. The two families lived together in the grasslands(1) near a river. It was very hot there, but there were open spaces where the giraffes could move quickly and drink the water they needed. The giraffes ate grass and fruits of some trees which were not very tall. There were also some tall trees with even more delicious leaves and more tasty(2) fruits.

The giraffes with long necks were able to eat the green leaves and tasty fruits high above, while the other giraffes with shorter necks were able to eat only grass and the leaves which were close to them. When winter came, there was very little grass, and the second family found little to eat. Sometimes it was very dry and it never rained and grass rarely grew.

(1) مراعٍ/أرض عشبية
(2) لذيذ الطعم
(3) يجمع
(4) يميل/ينحنى

Day after day, the giraffes with the shorter necks became weaker and weaker, as the grass and shorter trees were never enough to them. The giraffes with longer necks tried to help their neighbours. One giraffe from the long-necked family said, "We should do something to help. Our friends are suffering. They can't reach taller trees. What can we do?"

They agreed to collect(3) as many leaves as they could and deliver them to the short-necked giraffes, but this was not enough. The long-necked giraffes could not bend(4) their necks much to give the food they collected to their friends.

After many, many years, the number of giraffes from the family with longer necks increased over time, while the opposite happened to the short-necked giraffes. Until one day there were no giraffes with the shorter necks. The giraffes with the long necks were the only ones surviving in the area.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

The Ant and the Dove

Once upon a time on a warm sunny day, an ant was working hard to collect food. The ant said, "I'm thirsty as I have started early this morning and have not stopped once". He saw a river nearby and decided to have a drink before he continued. 1 Setting the context The river was flowing very quickly and although the ant moved slowly towards the water to drink, he slipped and fell into the water. 2 The simple conflict. As he was floating down the river, a dove, which was sitting in a tree above the river, saw the ant in trouble and decided to drop a leaf into the river. The ant was able to climb onto the leaf, which floated to the side of the river, and the ant could climb back onto the land to safety. He was very happy to be alive. As he walked back to thank the dove, he saw a hunter under the tree where the dove was sitting. The hunter was making traps to catch the dove. The ant walked quietly closer to the hunter and bit his leg, with his sharp teeth, as hard as he could. As soon as he had done this, the hunter shouted because of the pain and the dove was able to fly away to safety. 3 The solution We can learn from this story that one good action deserves another in return. 4 The moral

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The two countries are working for peace after a long era of ..... .
   a) conflict
   b) liveliness
   c) assonance
   d) agreement
2. The fisherman made a small raft but he wasn't sure if it would ..... .
   a) fleet
   b) float
   c) flee
   d) speed
3. Each colour on the map ..... a different place such as a river or a desert.
   a) informs
   b) reports
   c) presents
   d) represents
4. We all hope to find an ultimate ..... to the city's traffic problem.
   a) research
   b) finding
   c) solution
   d) key
5. Grandfather says that the best way to catch mice is to set a ..... .
   a) trap
   b) trip
   c) net
   d) post

Answers 1) a) 2) b) 3) d) 4) c) 5) a)

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

grasslands مراعٍ/أرض عشبية	a large area of land covered with wild grass
perspective منظور	a way of thinking about something, especially one which is influenced by the type of person you are or by your experiences
plot حبكة الروايةّ	the events that form the main story of a book, film, or play
theme سمة/موضوع	the main subject or idea in a piece of writing, speech, film

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

1 imaginary — خيالى (غير واقعى)
- A lonely child sometimes creates an imaginary friend to play with.

imaginative — خيالى/مبدع
- We really need an imaginative idea to solve our problems.
- My friend is an imaginative artist.

2 tasty — ذو مذاق جيد/لذيذ
- This cake is very tasty. Can I have another piece?

tasteful — ذو ذوق جيد
- The furniture in the young couple's flat is very tasteful. We all liked it.

3 transport — ينقل بضائع بإحدى وسائل النقل
- The plane is used for transporting military equipment.

deliver — يوصل خطابًا أو منتجًا لبيت أو لمكتب
- Unfortunately, the package was delivered to the wrong address.

4 Plot

تستخدم plot بمعان مختلفة منها:

- The main plot revolves around a young working woman. — ١- حبكة الرواية (أحداث قصة/فيلم/مسرحية)
- He was buried in the family plot at the cemetery. — ٢- قطعة أرض
- The police uncovered a plot against the minister. — ٣- مؤامرة
- He was arrested on suspicion of plotting against the government. — ٤- يتآمر

Check Point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story's incidents happen in a/an ..... world in the year 2050.
   a) false b) real c) imaginative d) imaginary
2. Our house is very ....., although it is furnished in a simple style.
   a) tasteless b) tasty c) tasteful d) tasted
3. He was questioned about an attempted murder plot. "Plot" here means ..... .
   a) a tale b) a conspiracy c) a piece of land d) a decision
4. Tell your father that the mail has just been ..... as he is waiting for an important letter.
   a) delivered b) transported c) carried d) made

Answers 1 d) 2 c) 3 b) 4 a)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening & Workbook Vocabulary

1 There has been a serious ..... over ownership of the land near the old park which lasted for years in courts.
a) agreement b) conflict c) plan d) decision

2 Science fiction films show a lot of different planets and ..... in space.
a) dragons b) habits c) creatures d) wells

3 The doctor told me to avoid ..... and stretching so as not to hurt my back.
a) eating b) chewing c) bending d) entertaining

4 The film's ..... revolves around a woman who is searching for her missing sister.
a) award b) prize c) festival d) plot

5 What experience do you have that is ..... to this position?
a) contacted b) relevant c) dealing d) agreeable

6 In folk stories, calling someone a lion ..... having great courage and strength.
a) represents b) replies c) introduces d) reforms

7 Global warming is one of the most serious ..... problems these days that has bad results all over the world.
a) economic b) local c) universal d) habitual

8 The equator خط الإستواء is just a/an ..... line that passes round the centre of the earth.
a) real b) imaginary c) truthful d) factual

9 It's ..... to expect a little child to solve his problems by himself.
a) unrealistic b) factual c) puzzling d) real

10 The lion is adapted to live in dry, open ..... where a yellow coat is most effective.
a) deserts b) grasslands c) coasts d) floors

11 After the party, we thanked Mr. Sameh, our host, for the ..... meal we had.
a) dull b) tasteful c) tasty d) rotten

12 In this exercise, a word is blanked out and you have to guess what it is by looking at the ..... .
a) record b) tape c) video d) context

13 The brain is dependent on a continuous ..... of blood which provides it with oxygen.
a) float b) flow c) hole d) shock

14 The ..... of this short story is "Don't believe everything you hear".
a) moral b) plot c) setting d) solution

15 As the child ran up the stairs, his foot ....., fell and broke his arm.
a) spotted b) dazzled c) slipped d) highlighted

16 Don't fall into the ..... of thinking you can learn a foreign language without doing any work.
a) plot b) score c) trip d) trap

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

17 The teacher asked me to edit my essay correcting mistakes. The synonym of the verb "edit" is ..... .

a) remove b) reply c) rewrite d) understand

18 All the students were ..... turns reading the texts aloud.

a) making b) taking c) giving d) designing

19 The ant saved the dove from the traps the hunter had ..... to catch it.

a) made b) retried c) retreated d) replied

20 The police say that the two crimes are very closely ..... .

a) relate b) relation c) related d) relative

21 A dragon is an imaginary creature that blows fire from its mouth. The antonym of the adjective "imaginary" is "..... ".

a) real b) imaginative c) false d) fake

22 The children in the nursery school are close ..... each other in age.

a) for b) of c) in d) to

23 The story of the war victim was tragic. The word "tragic" is the opposite of ..... .

a) dramatic b) sad c) delightful d) adventurou

24 Musicians need to use their ..... as well as their technical skills.

a) imagine b) imagination c) imaginative d) imaginary

25 Scientists warn us all against the danger of stress. The verb "warn" is similar in meaning to ..... .

a) ignore b) please c) encourage d) alert

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(B) Language

شاهد فيديو الشرح
تطبيق الأضواء

3 Reported orders, suggestions and advice

الجمل المتعلقة بالأمر والاقتراح والنصيحة

Ali advised his son to work harder.

I suggested leaving/that we (should) leave early.

تستخدم الجملة الأمرية للتعبير عن الأمر والنصيحة والاقتراح وإعطاء التعليمات والأوامر والطلب والاستعطاف والترجى:

يتنوع فعل القول فى الجملة الأمرية بين:

1 Verbs which are followed by object + (not) to + infinitive:

(أ) أفعال يأتى بعدها المفعول ثم to/not to + inf. وهى:

advise	ينصح	help	يساعد	teach	يعلم
ask	يسأل	instruct	يوجه/يعلم	tell	يخبر
encourage	يشجع	invite	يدعو	want	يريد
expect	يتوقع	order	يأمر	warn	يحذر
beg	يستعطف	offer	يعرض	urge	يحث

"Open your books."

The teacher told/asked/ordered us to open our books.

"If I were you, I'd take your coat."

My mother advised me to take my coat.

"Don't waste time."

My father advised me not to waste time.

"Study science at university."

Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.

"Please, please, forgive me!" She said.

She begged me to forgive her.

"You should get in touch with me."

She urged me to get in touch with her.

2 Verbs which are followed by- ing or that + subject + infinitive without to

(ب) أفعال يأتى بعدها المفعول ثم v.ing أو that + subject + infinitive without to وهى:

يحث urge / يزكى-يوصى بـ recommend /يقترح suggest

"Do Exercise 2 again."

Leila suggested doing/that I (should) do Exercise 2 again.

"You should revise quietly."

My friend recommended revising/that I (should) revise quietly.

"Children should be taught to swim."

The report urged that all children (should) be taught to swim.

إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا فلا يوجد مضارع أو مستقبل إلا المصدر الذى بعد to والحالات الخاصة.

يتم تحويل الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان كما فى النوعين الخبرى والاستفهامى.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The policeman instructed the people ..... so fast.
   a) not to drive b) to drive c) that drive d) driving
2. The teacher ..... us to keep quiet.
   a) suggests b) wants c) warns d) says
3. She recommended ..... that book.
   a) to read b) read c) that I read d) should I read
4. She told him ..... all the ingredients in the bowl.
   a) not to putting b) put c) putting d) to put
5. The teacher warned the students ..... to write their names at the top of the page.
   a) to forget b) forgetting c) not to forget d) that they forget

Answers 1) a 2) b 3) c 4) d 5) c

Reported speech (Important notes)

1) لا يحول الزمن إلى الدرجة الأقل مع:

(أ) الحقائق (ب) الكلام المقال حالا

(ج) القوانين (د) فعل القول فى المضارع

2) لا يتحول الزمن بعد فعل القول الماضى إذا كان الكلام قد قيل فى وقت سابق من نفس اليوم أو الشهر أو السنة.

- Ola said that her father is leaving tomorrow. (قبل الكلام قبل مغادرة الأب)
- Ola said that her father was leaving the next day. (قبل الكلام بعد مغادرة الأب)

3) الماضى المستمر يمكن أن يحول إلى الماضى التام المستمر أو يظل كما هو للحفاظ على وحدة الزمن.

- He said that he had been studying all day the day before.
- He said that he fell down while he was playing.

4) هناك أفعال يجب استخدام that بعدها مثل inform/explain/complain/exclaim/remark

والأفعال الآتية فى حالة عدم وجود .to + inf أو v-ing

(agree/deny/promise/claim/threaten/remind/boast/suggest/claim/admit)

- He complained that the service in that restaurant was not good.

5) يمكن تغيير الزمن أو يترك كما هو إذا كان المتكلم يعتقد أن الشىء حقيقى.

He said she likes/liked strawberries very much.

6) إذا كان الشىء غير حقيقى فلابد من تغيير الزمن .

He said that China was a poor country."

7) يمكن تغيير الماضى البسيط إلى الماضى التام أو يبقى كما هو إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا.

She said she was/had been early for the meeting.

8) تحول الحالة الأولى من if إلى الحالة الثانية ولكن الماضى غير الحقيقى فى الحالة الثانية والثالثة والتمنى لا يحول.

- "If you ask Ali, He'll help you." Omar said.
  Omar said (that) if I asked Ali, he would help me. (1st conditional)
- "If my children were older, I'd immigrate." Samy said to me.
  Samy told me (that) if his children were older, he would immigrate." (2nd conditional)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

⑨ إذا كان هناك جملتان يمكن ربطهما بـ and that/and added that.

- He said that he had got his passport and that he would travel the following week.

⑩ لا يأتى الفاعل بعد كلمة الاستفهام إذا كانت تسأل عن الفاعل مثل who وwhat.

- The policeman said , "What caused the fire?"
- The policeman asked what had caused the fire.

Check Point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She told him that he could ask her advice if he ..... any problems.
   a) will have b) had had c) was having d) had
2. The teacher told the students that the Earth ..... around the sun.
   a) is revolving b) revolved c) revolves d) had revolved
3. They said that they ..... the mountain after they had reached the top of the tower.
   a) will see b) could see c) were seeing d) have seen
4. Do you know where .....
   a) Ahmed lives? b) does Ahmed live?
   c) does Ahmed live. d) Ahmed lives.
5. He admitted ..... a mistake the night before.
   a) making b) that he had made c) to make d) Both a and b

Answers 1) d 2) c 3) b 4) a 5) d

⑪ لاحظ ربط الجملة الخبرية بالاستفهامية واستخدام and asked.

- He said, "I have done my homework. Have you done yours?"
- He said that he had done his homework and asked if I had done mine.

⑫ إذا وجدت كلمة or not فى آخر الكلام فيمكن استخدام if/whether أما إذا كانت فى المنتصف فنستخدم whether فقط.

- He asked me if/whether I would visit him or not.
- He asked me whether or not I would visit him.

⑬ عندما تستخدم shall فى طلب النصيحة والاقتراح والعروض تحول إلى should ولكن فى تحويل الجمل العادية والسؤال عن معلومات تحول إلى would.

- "When shall we have our dinner?" Salah said (information)
  Salah asked when they would have their dinner.
- "How shall I install windows 10?" Ali said (advice)
  Ali asked how he should install windows 10.

⑭ هناك أفعال ومصطلحات يستخدم بعدها المصدر بعد الفاعل مثل suggest وrecommend إذا جاء بعدها that وهى:
It is important that/insist that/It is urgent that/It is necessary that/He advised that/propose that/ It is desirable that.

- It is urgent that he arrive on time.
- It is important that he attend the talks between the two countries.

⑮ تستخدم to + inf. بعد wonder what/where/how إذا كان الفاعل قبل فعل القول هو نفس الفاعل الذى قبل المصدر فى الجملة التى بين الأقواس.

- He asked himself, "Where shall I go?"
  He wondered where to go.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

- إذا جاء شخص بعد recommend مباشرة نستخدم to + inf.

He recommended the workers to finish the task and then have a break.

وتأتى بمعنى يرشح شخصًا أو شيئًا لشخص وتأخذ to + inf.

I recommend you "Animal farm" to read or watch.

- يأتى بعد الفعل warn إما to + Inf. أو not to + Inf. حسب المعنى.

My father always warns me not to walk home alone.

Good teachers warn their students to avoid smoking.

- يمكن حذف that بعد suggest ويبقى الفاعل والمصدر كما هو:

I suggest we have dinner first, and then watch the film.

- هناك مجموعة مصطلحات تأتى مع say وtell ولكن فى الجمل التى ليس لها علاقة بالمباشر .

Tell	Say
say good morning/evening, etc.	tell the truth, tell a lie, tell a joke
say something/nothing, etc.	tell (someone) the time,
say a few words, say so,	tell someone one's name, tell a story,
say no more, say a prayer,	tell a secret, tell someone the way,
say for certain, etc.	tell the difference, etc.

Check Point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is important that you ..... late.
   a) don't be b) not be
   c) not to be d) won't be
2. The manager asked Tamer ..... or not he was willing to work at weekends.
   a) that b) if
   c) whether d) where
3. Can you ..... me a good book to read?
   a) recommend b) warn
   c) encourage d) advise
4. A friend warned me ..... for the same kind of job.
   a) that I apply b) to apply
   c) applying d) not to apply
5. Her husband suggested ..... languages.
   a) she studying b) to study
   c) she study d) not to study

Answers 1 b) 2 c) 3 a) 4 d) 5 c)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Language Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher told me ..... my name on the exam paper.
   a) he is writing b) that I write c) to write d) writing
2. "Don't be late." The teacher told us ..... .
   a) not being late b) not to be late c) we don't be late d) to be late
3. "Please be quiet." I asked them ..... quiet.
   a) to be b) not to be c) are d) be
4. I heard that you ..... at the basketball match.
   a) were b) have gone c) are d) been
5. They promised ..... me next year.
   a) to visit b) that they would visit
   c) will visit d) Both a and b
6. The surgeon says that ..... some pain for a few days.
   a) I have b) I had
   c) I may have d) he might have
7. He warned us ..... on that broken bridge.
   a) didn't walk b) not to walk c) don't walk d) to walk
8. "Shall I call a taxi?" He asked me if ..... a taxi.
   a) he should call b) I should call c) should he call d) he will call
9. I don't know ..... .
   a) who's that woman b) who was that woman
   c) who that woman was? d) who that woman is
10. The doctor told him not to eat much. "..... " the doctor said to him.
    a) I don't eat much b) You eat very little
    c) Don't eat much d) Eat very little
11. Mother told me ..... .
    a) that I staying out long b) not to stay out long
    c) stay out long d) did not stay out long
12. The doctor recommended that she ..... in bed for a few days.
    a) stay b) would stay c) will stay d) to stay
13. Emad asked me ..... to the party.
    a) if I could come b) to come
    c) whether I would come d) all are possible
14. I don't know .....
    a) what time is it. b) what time is it?
    c) what time it is. d) what time it is ?
15. He asked me if ..... .
    a) he may use his telephone b) he might use my telephone
    c) he might use his telephone d) I might use his telephone
16. "Oh dear! It looks as if it is going to rain again." Mother was afraid that ..... .
    a) it was going to rain b) it was raining again
    c) it is going to rain again d) it looked like rain again

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

17 I wanted to know why no one ..... to school the week before.
a) hadn't come b) had come c) has come d) hasn't come

18 "Would you like to come to my party?" He invited her ..... .
a) she'd like to come to his party b) if she'd come to his party
c) she'd like to come to my party d) to come to his party

19 I had hoped ..... my letter.
a) that she answer b) she answers
c) that she would answer d) she will answer

20 She said ..... .
a) she had spoken to Hadir a week before. b) I spoke to Hadir last week.
c) I had spoken to Hadir a week before. d) we had spoken to Hadir last week.

21 A man ..... something that caused a fight between the two families for years.
a) told b) said c) complained d) spoke

22 All teachers encourage student ..... in their class activities.
a) participated b) to participate
c) participation d) not to participate

23 The doctor suggested ..... very spicy foods as they are harmful.
a) eating b) that we eat c) not to eat d) not eating

24 We urge that the plans ..... made before thinking carefully.
a) not b) not be
c) not to be d) won't be

25 He ..... if his children were older, he'd immigrate.
a) asked b) told c) said d) wondered

26 He wonders where ..... the new sofa.
a) to put b) he had put
c) he was putting d) does he put

27 Kareem told me that ..... with his half-brother in one flat.
a) he wouldn't have lived b) he won't live
c) he hadn't been living d) he'd rather not live

28 Which sentence is correctly structured?
a) Ali suggests that his friend have a vaccination against COVID-19.
b) Ali suggests that his friend has a vaccination against COVID-19.
c) Ali suggests that his friend had a vaccination against COVID-19.
d) Ali suggests that his friend having a vaccination against COVID-19.

29 She asked me when I had finished my training course. The real question is .....
a) "When have you finished your .....?"
b) "When had you finished your .....?"
c) "When did you finish your .....?"
d) "When were you finished your .....?"

30 "Never eat with your mouth full."
The correct reported speech of the sentence above is "....."
a) My father asked me not eat with my mouth full.
b) My father advised me never eat with my mouth full.
c) My father told me to not eat with my mouth full.
d) My father advised me not to eat with my mouth full.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

A myth

THE GOOSE THAT LAID THE GOLDEN EGGS

There once was a very poor farmer. So poor he lived with only acorns and the odd goose egg to eat and a bale of straw for his bed. But, he was a lazy man. He didn't like work.

'Oh what is to become of me?' said the farmer late one night. 'I have no house, no food and no money and nothing left to sell, I ...' And then he looked at his goose.

'You haven't laid an egg in weeks and your feathers will fetch me a fair few guineas.' And off he went to sleep.

The next morning, he awoke to a glittering dawn. He was surprised to see that his goose had laid a Golden Egg!

So off he went to the market and went back with meat to cook, chicken, feed for his goose and a huge bag of coins. The next morning the same thing happened. And every day the same thing happened. But as fast as the little goose could lay a golden egg the farmer wanted more. 'Why can't you lay more eggs each day? We need more, we need more!' He said.

And then he had an idea. The next morning he killed the goose and opened it – but, of course, to his horror, there was nothing inside the poor goose ... and there would be no golden eggs again. After he spent all his money, he became poor again.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The show that the channel showed last week was so ..... that it was reshown many times.
a) dull b) entertaining c) unexciting d) impossible

2 The report that the newspaper published is greatly ..... to the political problem in Ukraine.
a) damaging b) sports c) relevant d) affecting

3 The case was dealt with from the economic ..... only.
a) perspective b) downside c) depression d) oppression

4 The cheetah jumped very high trying to reach the prey in the tree ..... .
a) root b) house c) fruit d) branch

5 Using literary ..... such as metaphors and similes is common in poetry.
a) essays b) pieces c) devices d) machines

6 The horse rider screamed in great ..... as he fell off the horse to his knees.
a) pain b) joy c) entertainment d) jury

7 The ..... of women's rights run through all the female writer's novels.
a) plot b) theme c) simile d) metaphor

8 Parents give their children all the help they could, and ask for nothing in ..... .
a) return b) advance c) progress d) vain

9 My father warned me ..... alone in dark streets.
a) to walk b) that I walked c) if I walked d) not to walk

10 Dad recommended ..... a nice suit for wedding.
a) to wear b) not to wear c) that I wore d) that I wear

11 The librarian told the boys ..... so much noise.
a) to make b) not to make
c) that they should make d) making

12 **A:** Are you going to complain to the police?
B: Yes, that is ..... .
a) what I have done b) what I'm going to do
c) what I was going to do d) what I would do

13 She said she ..... her friend for ages.
a) doesn't see b) saw c) hasn't seen d) hadn't seen

14 She said ..... to walk back home.
a) she'd prefer b) she'd rather
c) she has got d) she'd better

15 "Yasser, read the story, please." The teacher asked Yasser ..... .
a) that he reads it b) whether he reads the story
c) if he read the story d) to read the story

16 He advised that she ..... the bad news.
a) isn't told b) not be told
c) wouldn't tell d) not to be told

17 Choose the CORRECTLY punctuated sentence:
a) He told his customers what they wanted to hear, that he would stand behind his product.
b) He told his customers what they wanted to hear that he would stand behind his product.
c) He told his customers what they wanted to hear: that he would stand behind his product.
d) He told his customers what they wanted to hear; that he would stand behind his product.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 Your thesis is "Summer is the best season." Which of these is most likely to be one of your three main points?

a) Some schools don't have summer vacation.
b) During the summer months, there are many activities for students to enjoy.
c) Summer camp can be boring and expensive.
d) There are four seasons in a year.

19 Choose the correct concluding sentence:

Play is usually associated with children. Many people consider it to be a waste of time and as something unproductive. In fact, in early years of one's life, play plays an important role in the process of learning. Children should be provided with opportunities to play.

a) Children who play grow up to be intelligent.
b) Play is a waste of time.
c) Play isn't included in the learning process.
d) For children play is another way to observe, participate and learn.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

From very early times, doctors had tried to find some methods of making a patient unconscious during surgical operations. Herodotus, the Greek traveller, tells us that the Scythians breathed the vapour of a certain kind of plant in order to produce a state of unconsciousness, and it is said that the Chinese of ancient times did the same. Pliny, the Roman naturalist, mentions that in his days a plant called mandragora was given to patients who were about to undergo painful operations, so that they might become drowsy till the worst is over; and the power of opium to induce a heavy sleep was known many years ago. Still nobody had discovered a drug that would stop consciousness entirely without putting the sufferer's life in danger until a little less than 172 years ago.

It was on 4th November 1847; Dr. James Simpson, an Edinburgh doctor, and his two young assistants breathed chloroform for the first time. The result was rapid and astonishing. All three slid from their chairs onto the floor, under Simpson's dining table. When the doctor's servant came in and saw them, he felt no surprise or alarm, as in those days it was quite a usual thing for a gentleman to fall upon the carpet after the fifth or sixth borne of wine. He knelt by each figure in turn, loosened his high collar and neck-tie, and took his departure! When the three men came to their senses, they must have realised that a glorious forward step in science had been taken place that night.

A fortnight later, Simpson did an experiment before the doctors and students at the Edinburgh Royal Hospital, and began the amazing battle between the progressive people on one side and the narrow-minded old-fashioned people on the other. Of course the forces of progress won the day, though not without a hard struggle.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20 Why did doctors try to make a patient unconscious during surgical operations?

a) In order to finish quickly.
b) To have success in medicine.
c) To take much money.
d) In order not to feel pain.

21 Why did the Chinese of ancient times breathe the vapour of a certain kind of plant?

a) To fall asleep.
b) To be unconscious.
c) To feed themselves.
d) To know the kind of the plant.

22 Who discovered the drug we know that would stop consciousness?

a) Dr. James Simpson's son.
b) The Chinese.
c) Dr. James Simpson.
d) The Romans.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

23 Why did Dr. James Simpson and his assistants slide from their chairs?
a) They breathed chloroform.
b) They fell asleep.
c) The chairs were broken.
d) Someone pulled the chairs.

24 What did Dr. Simpson conclude when he came to his senses?
a) That they were very weak.
b) That people can fall asleep easily.
c) That he made a breakthrough in science.
d) That chloroform is very bad.

25 What was the result of Simpson's battle?
a) The narrow-minded won the day.
b) The progressive won the day.
c) The forces of progress lost the battle.
d) He and his men lost the day.

26 What is the best title to the passage?
a) Dr. James Simpson's discovery.
b) Dr. James' unconsciousness.
c) How to be unconscious.
d) Using wine as a drug.

27 The synonym of the word "glorious" is "..... ".
a) unsuccessful
b) shameful
c) unimpressive
d) splendid

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 In recognition of women's roles in society, Egypt has made laws to set a definite quota for them in the parliament and other democratic institutions

a) تقديرًا لدور المرأة فى المجتمع قامت مصر بسن قوانين لتحديد حصة محددة لها فى البرلمان والمؤسسات الديمقراطية الأخرى.
b) إنكارًا لدور المرأة فى المجتمع قامت مصر بسن قوانين لتحديد قدرة محددة لها فى البرلمان والمؤسسات الديمقراطية الأخرى.
c) تقديرًا لدور المرأة فى المجتمع قامت مصر بسن قوانين لتحديد قدرة محددة لها فى البرلمان والمؤسسات الاجتماعية الأخرى.
d) دفعًا لدور المرأة فى المجتمع قامت مصر بسن قوانين لتحديد حصة محددة لها فى البرلمان والمؤسسات الديمقراطية الأخرى.

29 يجب أن يدرك الجميع أهمية دور المدرسة فى تنمية القيم والأخلاق فى المجتمع؛ لذا يجب أن تصبح مكانًا ممتعًا لا ينفر منه الطلاب.
a) Everyone should realise the importance of the school's role in deteriorating values and morals in society; so it should become a fun place that students will not be distracted from
b) Everyone should achieve the importance of the school's role in developing values and morals in society; so it might become a fun place that students will not be attracted from.
c) Everyone should realise the importance of the school's role in developing values and morals in society; so it should become a fun place that students will not be alienated from.
d) Everyone should set the importance of the school's role in deteriorating values and morals in society; so it may become a fun place that students will not be alienated from.

30 حققت مصر نجاحًا كبيرًا فى علاج أمراض الكبد فى كثير من القرى المصرية من أهمها تحقيق نسب شفاء عالية لمرض الكبد الوبائى.
a) Egypt has achieved great success in treating liver diseases in many Egyptian villages, the most important of which is achieving high cure rates for hepatitis C.
b) Egypt has achieved great success in treating kidney diseases in many Egyptian villages, the most important of which is achieving high cure rates for pandemic C.
c) Egypt has achieved great success in healing liver diseases in many Egyptian villages, the least important of which is achieving low cure rates for hepatitis C.
d) Egypt has achieved great success in treating heart diseases in many Egyptian villages, the most important of which is achieving low cure rates for epidemic C.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The police try to keep rival supporters ..... at all matches.
a) together b) composed c) collected d) apart

2 A ..... someone who makes and repairs things made of iron.
a) carpenter b) blacksmith c) mechanic d) criminal

3 Someone ..... into my car and stole the radio.
a) ran b) put c) broke d) turned

4 Everyone praised Walid for the ..... way in which he handled the situation.
a) calm b) rash c) hard d) difficult

5 Although they make much money, they ..... themselves to be middle class.
a) ignore b) punish c) interest d) consider

6 The plane crashed, killing two of the ..... and four passengers.
a) staff b) crew c) group d) team

7 He was ..... to discover that they had both been born in the same town on the same day.
a) tired b) bored c) fascinated d) involved

8 Kamal ..... hold of my arm to stop himself falling.
a) grabbed b) left c) pushed d) missed

9 The smaller animals can easily ..... from tree to tree.
a) run b) leap c) walk d) play

10 Somebody ..... me and I fell over.
a) pulled b) grabbed c) seized d) pushed

11 The woman was ..... from her burning home by firefighters.
a) killed b) burned c) rescued d) punished

12 An armed gang ..... a bank in the main street last night.
a) robbed b) stole c) gained d) took

13 She ..... for 10 years to achieve success as an actress.
a) walked b) struggled c) calmed d) ran

14 I felt ..... about not visiting my parents more often.
a) pleased b) satisfied c) shy d) guilty

15 The retired boss was very sincere and had a place in my ..... .
a) head b) house c) heart d) room

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

إجابة هذه التدريبات موجودة بنهاية الكتاب.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young actress was ..... with calls just after the announcement of her engagement.
   a) damaged b) flooded c) pushed d) dried
2. Maradona , Pelé and Johan Cruyff are three ..... in football.
   a) legends b) fables c) myths d) stories
3. Because of the accident, a line of cars ..... for many kilometres.
   a) stiffed b) spilled c) shrank d) stretched
4. I was greatly ..... by the news of winning the prize in poetry competitions.
   a) depressed b) shared c) cheered d) greeted
5. The old director gave up his job in film making because he couldn't stand the ..... .
   a) pace b) repetition c) ladder d) definition
6. The insurance company does not cover damage caused by normal wear and ..... .
   a) fear b) tear c) rear d) bare
7. The elementary school in New York school welcomes children of all ..... . You can see American , Arab and Chinese students there.
   a) fences b) paces c) races d) lenses
8. The new manager managed to .....the committee to her opinion to raise the price of their products.
   a) bend b) make c) refer d) infer
9. To keep them, you must rinse the contact lens with saline ..... .
   a) solution b) produce c) key d) conclusion
10. There was a ..... of interest between the politician's business dealings and his political activities.
    a) fight b) war c) conflict d) agreement
11. ..... have you been in London?
    a) How long ago b) Where c) When d) How long
12. I'm always right to say that English is very important, ... ?
    a) are I b) aren't I c) am I d) aren't it
13. All the guests kept smiling at ..... .
    a) other b) another c) each other d) the others
14. I'll wait in this room ..... you get back.
    a) until b) while c) before d) as well as
15. Ahmed had missed his flight by the time he ..... at the airport.
    a) had arrived b) was arriving c) arrived d) arrives
16. What time ..... them tonight?
    a) are you seeing b) do you see c) you see d) you are seeing
17. Our new flat is ..... than our old one.
    a) biggest b) much big c) more big d) much bigge
18. Have you seen Galal's birthday present? It's a/an ..... mountain bike.
    a) blue, fantastic, Chinese b) fantastic, blue, Chinese c) Chinese, blue, fantastic d) blue, Chinese, fantastic
19. I never ..... speaking German when I lived in Berlin. It was hard for me to learn.
    a) got used to b) got used c) used to d) be used to
20. She always has a cup of tea ..... the afternoons.
    a) in b) on c) at d) for

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Test 6

Based on Unit 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ..... of the Chinese river caused a lot of damage to the houses on its banks.
   a) flood b) hurricane c) rainfall d) storm
2. When Mohamed Salah scored the goal, all the spectators ..... for a long time.
   a) fought b) insulted c) cheered d) screamed
3. The children's good behaviour ..... their good education.
   a) relies b) ignores c) distorts d) reflects
4. The last Olympic Games ..... in Tokyo after they were delayed for a whole year.
   a) occurred b) replaced c) took part d) paced
5. The writer's original article has been edited. The synonym of the verb "edit" is ..... .
   a) reread b) rewrite c) redevise d) reappoint
6. The National Bank has a plan to have new ..... all over the country.
   a) departments b) roots c) branches d) divisions
7. Father bought a small ..... of land in New Cairo to build a house on.
   a) metaphor b) slice c) pot d) plot
8. Kids have to understand how school subjects are ..... to their lives.
   a) relevant b) strange c) avoided d) released
9. The article says that there ..... an increase in the number of university students next year.
   a) will be b) had been c) was d) would be
10. Mona warned us that the animal ..... dangerous.
    a) should be b) will be c) must be d) was
11. She warned her daughter ..... near the campfire because it was dangerous.
    a) to go b) not to go c) that she go d) going
12. Ahmed's father advised him ..... the front door at night.
    a) locking b) that he locking c) to lock d) for locking
13. The doctor warned me ..... after taking those pills as they might make me feel sleepy.
    a) to drive b) driving c) that I drove d) not to drive
14. Many people consider that ..... cruel to send animals in rockets into further space.
    a) to be b) it to be c) it is d) it has been
15. The teacher warned the students against ..... in the final exam.
    a) cheating b) cheat c) not to cheat d) not cheating
16. Adel and Salma have been in the restaurant for an hour and they have not been served yet. Salma is angry. "You said ..... a good place".
    a) to be b) it is c) that it be d) it had been
17. Which sentence below uses quotation marks appropriately?
    a) "Which store do you want to go to?" asked Marie.
    b) Which store do you want to go to?" asked Marie.
    c) "Which store do you want to go to? asked Marie.
    d) Which store do you want to go to? asked Marie.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

18 Select the correctly punctuated sentence.
a) The journalist wrote that, "the movie was based on the real fact."
b) The journalist wrote that the movie was based on the real fact.
c) The journalist wrote that, 'the movie was based on the real fact.'
d) The journalist wrote that," the movie was based on the real fact ".

19 What do you call the paragraphs where key ideas are developed and explained?
a) Introductions b) Body Paragraphs c) Key Paragraphs d) Conclusions

20 Which transition signals an explanation?
a) The author states. b) The author denies.
c) In the same way. d) This illustrates.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There is a famous expression in English: "Stop the world, I want to get off!" This expression refers to a feeling of panic, or stress, that makes a person want to stop whatever they are doing, try to relax, and become calm again. 'Stress' means pressure or tension. It is one of the most common causes of health problems in modern life. Too much stress results in physical, emotional, and mental health problems.

There are numerous physical effects of stress. Stress can affect the heart. It can increase the pulse rate, make the heart miss beats, and can cause high blood pressure. Stress can affect the respiratory system. It can lead to asthma. It can cause a person to breathe too fast, resulting in a loss of important carbon dioxide. Stress can affect the stomach. It can cause stomach aches and problems digesting food. These are only a few examples of the wide range of illnesses and symptoms resulting from stress.

Emotions are also easily affected by stress. People suffering from stress often feel anxious. They may feel tired all the time. Stress can make people angry, moody, or nervous. Long-term stress can lead to a variety of serious mental illnesses. Depression, an extreme feeling of sadness and hopelessness, can be the result of continued and increasing stress. Addictions and eating disorders are sometimes caused by stress.

If stress is allowed to continue, then one's mental health is put at risk. It is obvious that stress is a serious problem. It attacks the body. It affects the emotions. Untreated, it may eventually result in mental illness. Stress has a great influence on the health and well-being of our bodies, our feelings, and our minds. So, reduce stress: stop the world and rest for a while.

Choose the right answer from a,b,c or d :

21 What does the expression "Stop the world, I want to get off!" mean?
a) It means stopping what we are doing. b) It means getting out of a vehicle.
c) It means stopping life and wanting death. d) It means wanting more work and business

22 How can stress affect the respiratory system?
a) It can cause high blood pressure.
b) It can cause the person to lose appetite.
c) It can cause a person to breathe too fast and leads to asthma.
d) It can cause problems digesting food.

23 What may happen if stress is untreated?
a) It may cause stomachache. b) It may increase the pulse rate.
c) It may cause the heart to miss beats. d) It may lead to mental illness.

24 What does the underlined word" anxious "mean?
a) Surprised. b) Worried. c) Happy. d) Excited.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

25 Mental health problems result from ..... .
a) much stress
b) asthma
c) depression
d) hopelessness

26 The synonym of the word "obvious" is " ..... ".
a) ambiguous
b) unclear
c) clear
d) obscure

27 If stress is allowed to continue, it leads to ..... .
a) increasing carbon dioxide
b) depression
c) tension
d) pressure

28 We can protect ourselves from stress by ..... .
a) sleeping
b) yoga
c) discount
d) relaxation

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

William Shakespeare was born in the market town of Stratford-upon-Avon. It is said that he attended the local grammar school, where the principal subject taught was Latin. Nothing certain is known of what he did between the time he left school and his departure for London. Whatever caused him to leave the town of his birth, the world can be grateful that he did so. What is certain is that he set his foot on the road to fame when he arrived in London. It is said that at first he was without money or friends there, but after that he earned a little by taking care of the horses of the gentlemen who attended the plays at the theatre. In time, as he became a familiar figure to the actors in the theatre, they stopped and spoke to him.

They found his conversation so brilliant that finally he was invited to join their company. By 1592, he became one of the three leading members of a company of actors called the Lord Chamberlain's Men. This company was under the protection of the Queen's Court. From what we know of his later life, it is clear that Shakespeare's connection with the theatre made him a wealthy man, since his plays attracted large audiences and he shared in the profits.

Towards the beginning of the seventeenth century, not less than eleven of his plays were produced. These included the great tragedies; "Othello", "Macbeth" and "King Lear". His last work was" The Tempest".

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d :

29 The underlined words "he did so" mean he ..... .
a) set his foot on the road to fame
b) left school
c) learnt Latin
d) left Stratford-upon-Avon

30 The passage gives us a good lesson that it is better to ..... .
a) look after horses
b) talk to actors
c) endure hardships or obstacles
d) be a wealthy man

31 Which one of the following isn't a play of Shakespeare?
a) Othello.
b) Hard Times.
c) Macbeth.
d) The Tempest.

32 Shakespeare founded his company of actors in the ..... century.
a) 17th
b) 16th
c) 15th
d) 14th

33 Why did the actors at the theatre invite Shakespeare to join their company?
a) He didn't have a job.
b) They found his conversation so brilliant.
c) They needed a director.
d) He was very rich.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

34 What language did Shakespeare learn in his early life?
a) Latin. b) English. c) Spanish. d) Italian.

35 Which one is NOT mentioned about Shakespeare in the passage?
a) He studied Latin. b) He left his home town.
c) He became a great actor. d) He go married.

36 The synonym of the word "figure" is "……".
a) leader b) founder c) character d) principal

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

37 Tourism is the most important economic activity that is easily affected by unusual events. That's why, it was the most affected sector by the corona pandemic.
a) السياحة هى أهم نشاط اقتصادى يتأثر بسهولة بالأحداث العادية ولهذا السبب كان القطاع الأكثر تضررا من جائحة كورونا.
b) السياحة هى أهم نشاط اقتصادى يتأثر بسهولة بالأحداث غير العادية ولهذا السبب كان القسم الأكثر تضررا من أزمة كورونا.
c) السياحة هى أهم نشاط اقتصادى يتأثر بسهولة بالأحداث غير العادية ولهذا السبب كان القطاع الأكثر تضررا من جائحة كورونا.
d) السياحة هى أهم نشاط اقتصادى يتأثر بسهولة بالأحداث العادية ولهذا السبب كان الموضوع الأكثر تضررا من أزمة كورونا.

38 The wars in the Middle East and other parts of the world resulted in disastrous problems that are too difficult to solve. Therefore, it is the dream of all nations to end them all over the world.
a) أدت الحروب فى الشرق الأوسط وأجزاء أخرى من العالم إلى مشاكل كارثية يصعب حلها لذلك فإن إنهاءها فى جميع أنحاء العالم هو حلم كل الأمم.
b) أدت الحروب فى الشرق المتوسط وأجزاء أخرى من العالم إلى مشاكل مرنة يصعب حلها. لذلك فإن إنهاءها فى جميع أنحاء العالم هو حلم كل الأمم.
c) أدت الحروب فى الشـرق المتوسـط وأجزاء أخرى من العالم إلى مشاكل مختلطة يصعب حلها. لذلك ، فإن إنهاءها فى جميع أنحاء العالم هو حلم كل الأمم.
d) أدت الحروب فى الشرق الأوسط وأجزاء أخرى من العالم إلى مشاكل كارثية يسهل حلها لذلك فإن إنهاءها فى جميع أنحاء العالم هو طلب كل الأمم.

39 تقوم الحكومة المصرية بجهود كبيرة لترشـيد المياه وتوفير مصادر المياه العذبة مثل تطهير الترع وإنشـاء محطات تحلية المياه حتى نتمكن من مواجهة مشكلة نقص المياه فى المستقبل.
a) The Egyptian government is doing great efforts to consume water and provide fresh water sources, such as disinfecting canals and establishing water desalination planets so that we can face the problem of water shortage in the future.
b) The Egyptian government is making great efforts to rationalise water and provide fresh water sources, such as purifying canals and establishing water desalination plants to we can face the problem of water shortage in the future.
c) The Egyptian government is making great efforts to rationalise water and provide fresh water sources, such as cleaning canals and establishing water desalination plants so that we can face the problem of water shortage in the future.
d) The Egyptian government is doing great efforts to waste water and provide fresh water sources, such as disinfecting canals and establishing water desalination plants so that we can distort the problem of water shortage in the future.

40 كان لاختراع الورق والطباعة دور كبير فى نقل المعرفة والعلوم من جيل إلى جيل لكن البعض يظن أنهما سرعان ما سيصبحان جزءًا من التاريخ.
a) The invention of paper and copying had a major role in delivering knowledge and science from generation to generation, but some people think that they will soon become part of past.
b) The invention of paper and printing had a major role in transforming knowledge and science from generation to generation, but some people think that they will soon become part of history.
c) The invention of paper and copying had a major role in transmitting knowledge and science from generation to generation, but some people think that they will soon become part of subject.
d) The invention of paper and printing had a major role in passing knowledge and science from generation to generation, but some people think that they will soon become part of history.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Revision (4)
Units 10, 11 & 12

Vocabulary on Reading

audience (n)	متفرج/ أحد الجمهور
actually (adv.)	فى الواقع/ بالفعل
aware (adj)	واع/ مدرك
Babylon (n)	بابل(مدينة عراقية قديمة)
case (n)	حالة
comedian (adj)	كوميدى
hanging (adj)	معلق
historian (n)	مؤرخ
irrigation (n)	رى
majority (n)	أغلبية
man-made (adj)	صناعى/ من صنع الإنسان
native language (n)	اللغة الأصلية
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
pride (n)	فخر
proof (n)	إثبات/دليل
remains (n)	بقايا طعام
size (n)	حجم/ مقاس
streaming (adj)	متدفق
supply (v) (y ied)	يزود/يوفر
system (n)	نظام
tiny (adj)	ضئيل
truth (n)	الحقيقة
vast (adj)	شاسع
view (n)	منظر
welsh (adj)	ويلزى (من إمارة وايلز)

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

feel like	يشعر برغبة
get fed up	يمل من
have pride in	لديه فخر بـ
just in time	فى الوقت المناسب
die out	ينقرض
invite to	يدعو لـ
on the point of	على وشك
ran for their lives	ركضوا للنجاة بحياتهم
set a goal of	يضع / يحدد هدفًا
thanks to	بفضل
popular with	مشهور لدى
return to	يرجع/ يعود إلى

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

Welsh saved from extinction

Just a generation ago, the Welsh language was on the point of dying out completely, joining the hundreds of other languages which are no longer spoken. Growing up in West Wales in the 1950s and 1960s, Tony Evans was very aware that his native language was not relevant. 'Although I was born and grew up in a Welsh-speaking area, at school we were taught mostly in English; everything around us was in English. It was being predicted that there would be no Welsh speakers by the end of the century.' Thanks to politicians and public action groups like the Welsh Language Society, Welsh is widely spoken in Wales today, and has even become 'cool'. There are many children who have been raised to speak Welsh as their first language, and only speak English outside the home. The number of speakers has risen from 726,000 in 2008 to 874,700. The vast majority are bilingual. The government in Wales has set a goal of one million Welsh speakers by 2050, out of a population of around 3.5 million. Road signs are in Welsh and English, and there are Welsh-language TV channels.

There certainly seems to have been a cultural change in the country; young people today have pride in being Welsh. People are embracing Welsh culture, streaming pop bands such as Alffa and singers like Gwenno. TV dramas such as Hinterland, which were originally produced for Welsh speakers, have become popular with wider audiences through streaming services like Netflix. The well-known Welsh comedian Kiri Pritchard-McClean was born in Wales in 1986, but is only now learning the language. 'I love the country, I love the countryside, I love the history. But I can't speak the language … I feel like I am missing part of my own identity by not speaking it.' She is just one of many Welsh people who are taking pride in their culture and choosing to celebrate what makes them different.

Reading Text (2)

Town mouse and country mouse

Once upon a time there were two mice who were cousins. One mouse lived in a small simple house in the country. The other mouse lived in a large grand house in the city. One day the city mouse went to visit his cousin in the country. The country mouse was very happy to see the city mouse. He invited him to lunch. He served a simple meal of fresh peas and corn. As they were eating the city mouse became less cheerful. Suddenly he said, "Dear cousin, don't you get fed up with such simple food?" "I'm sorry, cousin but this is what we eat most of the time in the country". They city mouse invited the country mouse to the city.

"We have such wonderful food in the city that I'm sure you won't want to return to the country." So, the city mouse and the country mouse set off to the city.

They arrived that evening. The country mouse saw that his cousin lived in a very grand house.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

"Quiet please" the city mouse said as they entered the house through a tiny hole in the wall. "We don't want anyone to hear us." He took his cousin into the dining room and climbed up on to a huge table there were the remains of a delicious meal. "This is how we eat every day in the city," said the city mouse. There was enough food to feed a hundred mice; grapes, chocolate cake, cheese and special bread. I've never eaten such fine food. I'm too full to eat another thing," said the country mouse. Then both mice suddenly heard a noise. An angry looking cat appeared in the dining room. The two mice ran for their lives and escaped just in time. The country mouse was so frightened that he couldn't speak. He had never been in such danger before. He thought about his simple house in the country and realised how much better he would like it there. So, he left the big house and went back to the country where he felt safe and happy.

Reading Text (3)

Myths about the Hanging Gardens of Babylon

The Hanging Gardens of Babylon are thought to have been built in the ancient city of Babylon. Even though there is no proof that they actually existed, they are considered to be one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World.

Why do we think they might have existed?

Several ancient Roman and Greek writers wrote about the gardens. They wrote about why there were built, how they were built, and the size of the gardens. They even described how the gardens were watered. One Greek historian named Diodorus Siculus described the gardens as being 400 feet wide and 400 feet long. He said that the walls were more than 80 feet high.

If this was the case the water must have been transported to the top of the gardens by some kind of irrigation system (a system to supply the land with water so plants will grow). There were lots of different views on why the gardens were built and who they were built for. The most popular idea was that the gardens were built by King Nebuchadnezzar II to make his wife happy.

If they did exist, what happened to the gardens?

Some historians think they might have been ruined by war. Others believe that they could have been destroyed by earthquakes. Although we might never know the truth about the Hanging Gardens, we can certainly say that if they did exist, they must have been the most beautiful man-made gardens ever created.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Giza Necropolis is a well-known ..... in Egypt.
   a) column b) landmark c) remains d) myth
2. Amir is not here now, so he ..... have gone to the museum by himself.
   a) must b) can't c) should d) can
3. It ..... easy for the man to walk last week because he had a broken leg.
   a) can't be b) should be c) can't have been d) must have been
4. There is a huge ..... which controls the amount of water in the Nile.
   a) bridge b) ferry c) gateway d) dam
5. It is highly recommended to ..... young children to learn more than one language; this very helpful.
   a) arise b) raise c) rise d) risk
6. Large cities are usually very ..... as many different nationalities live together.
   a) multicultural b) bilingual c) mother tongue d) limited
7. English is one of the most ..... language in the world, so it's important to learn to speak
   a) widely-spoken b) well-known c) difficult d) unfamiliar
8. We can learn a lot from our ..... and we should study our family trees more.
   a) identities b) root c) ancestors d) pride
9. Students know much more about the past due ..... the internet.
   a) to b) for c) in d) of
10. My grandfather is the person ..... knows most about our family history.
    a) where b) when c) which d) who
11. The temple of Karnak, ... many pillars are very tall, was built over 1,000 years ago.
    a) when b) who c) whose d) which
12. What ..... at 7 pm yesterday?
    a) are you doing b) were you doing c) have you done d) you were doing
13. If the High Dam didn't exist, the Nile would ..... a lot of land.
    a) help b) flood c) pour d) water
14. I lent Hatim the book which I..... enjoyed reading: it is really interesting!
    a) hadn't b) haven't c) had d) have
15. Legends are usually about ..... figures who face dangerous situations.
    a) brave b) humble c) polite d) bravely
16. Tourists who come to Egypt are ..... by how huge the Pyramids are.
    a) struggled b) fascinated c) fed up d) rescued
17. Choose the correct option to put the sentence into reported speech: My friend said to me, "I don't know why Ayman has behaved in this strange way".
    a) My friend asked me why Ayman has behaved in that strange way.
    b) My friend told me that he doesn't know why Ayman has behaved in that strange way.
    c) My friend told me that he didn't know why Ayman had behaved in that strange way.
    d) My friend told me that he hasn't known why Ayman had behaved in that strange way.
18. Abu Simbel is two massive rock-cut ..... in the village of Abu Simbel, Aswan Governor
    a) myths b) temples c) hills d) caves

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

19 Kamel said to his sister, "I can't go out with you because I am busy revising for the exam". Report what Kamel said to his sister.
a) Kamel told his sister that she couldn't go out with him because she was busy revising for the exam.
b) Kamel told his sister that he would go out with her because he had finished revising for the exam.
c) Kamel told his sister that he couldn't go out with her because he was busy revising for the exam.
d) Kamel told his sister that he didn't go out with her because he hadn't finished revising for the the exam.

20 The man paid for his life. This means that ..... .
a) he had to protect himself against those who tried to kill him
b) he was punished for the crimes he had committed
c) he had to pay to let others set him free
d) he had to show others that he was not guilty

21 Which of the following is punctuated correctly?
a) Wael try to keep calm during the exam: this will let you concentrate more.
b) Wael, try to keep calm during the exam: this will let you concentrate more.
c) Wael, try to keep calm during the exam this will let you concentrate more.
d) Wael. Try to keep calm during the exam. this will let you concentrate more.

22 "Haidy, I can challenge you to a tennis match now!" Reem said.
Reem said that she .....challenge Haidy to a tennis match then.
a) can b) could c) should d) will

23 Coronavirus pandemic is still spreading. However, a lot of people don't care much about this danger. The second sentence shows .....
a) addition b) cause c) result d) contrast

24 Which of the following is part of an essay on the advantages of learning more than one language?
a) A lot of people are against teaching young children more than one language at an early age.
b) In my opinion, I think that modernising education is the most important issue to adopt. Good education surely leads to building up great generations that can face global challenges.
c) The benefits of being bilingual are clear cut; it is a well-known fact that being bilingual can improve some brain functions, like the ability to focus attention and perform mental tasks.
d) In my opinion, those who are against modernising education believe that they are right because they need to accept change gradually.

25 A surgeon must have ..... hands to perform a surgery.
a) small b) steady c) vibrating d) trembling

26 Which of the following is structurally correct?
a) Having finished work, I returned home and had lunch.
b) Having finished work, I had returned home and had lunch.
c) After I had finished work, I had returned home and had lunch.
d) After I had finished work, I will return home and had lunch.

27 We are proud of our ancestors who made an amazing civilisation thousands of years ago. The antonym for ancestors is ..... .
a) parents b) descendants c) grandparents d) grandchildren

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Read the following passage:

Hidden treasures

Do you like visiting the most typical landmarks when you travel to a different city? We all love a selfie in front of famous places, so we can say 'I've been there'. However, there are many places of cultural interest that are not on the lists of tourist attractions but are still very important heritage sites.

One such site can be found in a park on the outskirts of London. For over 170 years the different nations of the world have been celebrating the International Registered Exhibitions (also called the Expo) which are opportunities for different countries to come together to find solutions to the problems of humankind and share the world's diverse culture in huge pavilions through cultural experiences. These are often extravagant displays of the country's culture for everyone to enjoy under one roof.

Back in 1851 the very first Great Exhibition was held in London. Initially, the building which held the event was built in Hyde Park but then moved to an area outside the city. The construction, which was designed by Joseph Paxton, was similar to a giant greenhouse made of iron and glass. The building was unfortunately destroyed by fire in 1936 but the remains can still be seen in the park which is named after the historic building. So, if you want to see a place of cultural interest in London which is not a typical tourist attraction, you might want to visit the Crystal Palace.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

28 According to the article, we love to take a selfie ..... .

a) with well-known people
b) in front of famous places
c) in London only
d) with the people we work with

29 In 1851, ...

a) the giant greenhouse was burnt
b) the first Great Exhibition was destroyed
c) the International Registered Exhibitions were set up
d) the first Great Exhibition was held in London

30 The Expo ..... .

a) has been celebrated for less than 180 years
b) was designed by Joseph Paxton
c) was destroyed in 1936
d) was opened in 1851

31 What does the article focus mainly on?

a) Taking a selfie of a famous place.
b) Finding solutions to the problems of mankind.
c) Displays of a country's culture.
d) Places of cultural interest.

32 The underlined word "construction" is an antonym for ..... .

a) obstruction
b) destruction
c) instruction
d) deterioration

33 According to the article, the reason for celebrating the Expo is ..... .

a) to throw a party after reaching solutions to the problems of mankind
b) to make more propaganda about that place
c) to find solutions to the problems of mankind
d) to prevent other countries from sharing in that event

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

34 According to the article, which of the following is correct?
a) There are ordinary displays of the countries' cultures during celebrating the Expo.
b) The Great Exhibition was held in Paris.
c) The celebration of the Expo aimed at sharing the world's diverse languages.
d) Joseph Paxton designed the building the Great Exhibition.

35 The building of the Great Exhibition was .....
a) similar to a giant greenhouse made of iron and glass.
b) different from a giant greenhouse made of iron and glass.
c) held in an African country.
d) similar to a giant greenhouse made of rock and metal.

Read the sentences and choose the correct translation from a, b, c or d.

36 Culture and language are inextricably linked: you can't understand a culture without first learning a language. Therefore, it is better to be bilingual to know more about other cultures.

a) ترتبـط الثقافـة والحضـارة ارتباطًا وثيقًا. لا يمكنك فهم حضارة ما دون تعلم اللغة أولاً. من الأفضل أن تكون ثنائى الثقافة لمعرفة المزيد عن تاريخ الشعوب الأخرى.

b) ترتبـط الثقافـة واللغة ارتباطًا وثيقًا. لا يمكنك فهم حضارة ما دون دراسـة تاريخهـا أولاً. من الأفضل أن تكون ثنائى اللغة لمعرفة المزيد عن تاريخ الدول الأخرى.

c) ترتبط الحضارة والتاريخ ارتباطًا وثيقًا. لا يمكنك فهم حضارة ما دون دراسـة التاريخ أولاً. لذلك من الأفضل أن تكون ثنائى اللغة لمعرفة المزيد عن تاريخ الدول الأخرى.

d) ترتبـط الثقافـة واللغة ارتباطًا وثيقًا، لا يمكنك فهم ثقافة ما دون تعلـم اللغة أولاً، لذلك من الأفضل أن تكون ثنائى اللغة لمعرفة المزيد عن الثقافات الأخرى.

37 Egypt has wonderful great monuments that reflect its great civilisation throughout history. This magnificent heritage must be a source of pride for us as well as a motivator to achieve great things.

a) تمتلـك مصـر الحضـارة الفرعونية العريقة التى تبرز آثارها العظيمة عبر التاريخ. يجب أن يكـون هذا التاريخ الرائع مصدر فخر لنا وكذلك دافعًا لتحقيق أحلام عظيمة.

b) تمتلـك مصـر العديد من الآثار العظيمـة التى تؤثر على حضارتها العظيمة عبر التاريخ. يجب أن يكون هذا التاريخ الرائع مصدر فخر لكل العالم وكذلك دافعًا لتحقيق أشياء عظيمة.

c) تمتلك مصر العديد من الآثار الرائعة التى تعكس حضارتها العظيمة عبر التاريخ. يجب أن يكون هذا التراث الرائع مصدر فخر لنا وكذلك دافعًا لتحقيق أشياء عظيمة.

d) تمتلـك مصـر الحضـارة المعمارية الرائعة التى تعكس تاريخهـا المجيد عبر التاريخ. يجب أن تكون هذه الحضـارة النادرة مصدر فخر لنا وكذلك دافعًا لتحقيق أشياء عظيمة.

38 أعلنت منظمة الصحة العالمية أن متحور فيروس كورونا الجديد – الذى تطلق عليه اسم "أوميكرون"- هو الأشد عدوى بين كل متحورات الفيروس التى ظهرت حتى الآن.

a) The World Health Organization announced that COVID-19 - which it calls "Omicron"- is the most contagious between all the virus mutations that have been developed so far.
b) The Egyptian Ministry of Health and Population announced that the new Coronavirus mutant - which it calls "Omicron"- is the most contagious among all the virus mutations that have been cured so far.
c) The World Health Organization denied that the new Coronavirus mutant - which it calls "COVID"-19 - is the simplest among all the virus mutations that have appeared so far.
d) The World Health Organization announced that the new Coronavirus mutant - which it calls "Omicron" - is the most contagious among all the virus mutations that have appeared so far.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

لم تكشف كل أسرار الحضارة المصرية القديمة حتى الآن، من حين لآخر يفاجئنا علماء الأثار باكتشاف المزيد من القطع الأثرية الفريدة التى تزيل الغموض عن طبيعة الحياة منذ آلاف السنين.

a) Not all the secrets of modern Egyptian antiquities have been revealed yet. From time to time, archaeologists surprise us by discovering more unique artefacts that add to the history of the ancient Egyptian civilisation hundreds of years ago.

b) Not all the secrets of ancient Egyptian antiquities have been written down yet. From time to time, archaeologists surprise us by discovering more unique artefacts that show the majesty of the Egyptian civilisation thousands of years ago.

c) Not all the secrets of ancient Egyptian civilisation have been revealed yet. From time to time, archaeologists surprise us by discovering more unique artefacts that uncover the mystery of the nature of life thousands of years ago.

d) A few of the secrets of ancient Egyptian civilisation have been revealed yet. From time to time, geologists surprise us by discovering more unique rocks that uncover the mystery of the nature of the desert thousands of years ago.

40 **Write an essay of about 200 words on one of the following topics:**

a) What are the advantages and possible disadvantages of many nations coming together to share their past and present culture in one place?

b) A myth, a fable or a legend you have heard of and which has taught you some sort of valuable lesson. Include some information on its culture, where it came from and the people who created it.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words from the box.

steamer - coincidence - confirm - criminal - find - guilty - murder - related - tie up

1 Before Molly worked for Mr Jaggers, she had been a homeless ..... .
2 It was a ..... that Mr Jaggers was the lawyer of both Miss Havisham and Provis.
3 It turned out that Provis was ..... to Estella. He was her father.
4 People thought that Molly had ..... her daughter.
5 Orlick nearly killed Pip when he tricked him into going to a house on the marshes, and ..... him ..... .
6 Pip tried to help Provis escape on a ..... which was going to Hamburg.
7 Miss Havisham ..... that Molly was Estella's mother.
8 Orlick was ..... of breaking into Uncle Pumblechook's house.

2 Read the sentences and choose the best answers a, b or c.

1 Five of Pip's brothers and sisters ..... .
a) had died when Pip was very young
b) lived with Pip
c) lived in the same village

2 On Christmas morning Pip went back to the graveyard ..... .
a) to visit his parents' graves
b) to take the escaped convict some food
c) to help the escaped convict take off the leg-irons

3 When Joe visited Pip in London he felt ..... .
a) embarrassed
b) very happy
c) angry

4 On the marshes a fight took place between ..... .
a) two escaped convicts
b) Joe and the soldiers
c) the soldiers and the escaped convicts

5 Joe wasn't happy that ..... .
a) Pip didn't have any friends
b) Pip didn't like Mrs Joe
c) Mrs Joe was unkind to Pip

6 Estella made Pip sad because ..... .
a) she wouldn't play with him
b) she wouldn't put the food and drink in his hands
c) Estella was crying

7 Pip thought the large dark-haired man visiting Miss Havisham was ..... .
a) a relative
b) a doctor
c) a neighbour

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

8 When Pip grew up he wanted ..... .

a) to be an apprentice
b) to improve his position in life
c) to earn a lot of money

9 Joe ..... .

a) was angry about Pip taking an afternoon's holiday
b) didn't mind Pip taking an afternoon off work
c) let Orlick have an afternoon off work as well

3 Match the characters with the best pair of adjectives. Then give reasons for your choices with examples and quotes from Chapters 1-12.

1. Estella	**a)** friendly and optimistic
2. Joe	**b)** loyal and forgiving
3. Herbert Pocket	**c)** cruel but honest
4. Pip	**d)** caring but unrealistic

4 Choose two adjectives to describe the following characters, giving your reasons.

- Biddy .....

.....

- Miss Havisham .....

.....

- Magwitch .....

.....

.....

5 Read the quotes from Chapters 1-12, work in pairs to answer the questions for each quote.

'... I realise that until now, I have misunderstood everything!'
'It is my fault that Estella is so cruel. Forgive me, Pip!'
'I am going to stop you. You have always spoiled things for me.'
'You can become a gentleman without me, my boy.'
'I have been hurt, just as much as I hurt you ... and now I understand how you felt.'

1 Who says this?
2 Which chapter does the quote come from?
3 Who are they speaking to?
4 Explain what the speaker means.
5 What do we learn about the speaker from this?

6 Rewrite the final paragraphs of Chapter 12, using Estella as the narrator. Start with the following sentence.

As I returned to the place where I had lived for so long with Miss Havisham, I thought of Pip.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Choose the correct words to complete the sentences:

1. A/An ..... an idea or story that many people believe, but which is not true.
   a) fact b) debate c) myth d) spirit
2. The Statue of Liberty is probably one of the most famous ..... in the world.
   a) landmarks b) landfills c) landscapes d) landlords
3. Your support would be gratefully appreciated. The antonym of the verb "appreciate" is ..... .
   a) exaggerate b) respect c) value d) disrespect
4. The state of the economy is probably the ..... subject of any election.
   a) minor b) dominant c) trifling d) imaginary
5. The terrorist used a fake passport to assume a false ..... and escape abroad.
   a) identity b) balance c) account d) secrecy
6. You should be ..... enough to admit your mistakes and learn from them.
   a) eloquent b) vain c) humble d) creative
7. Fortunately, the petrol prices have remained ..... over the last three months.
   a) elevated b) valueless c) changing d) steady
8. The young man smashed the vase in a/an ..... of anger when he heard the bad news.
   a) fit b) stroke c) shock d) attack
9. My friend told me the homework was on page 41, but there isn't page 41. He ..... been mistaken.
   a) can't have b) must have c) should have d) will have
10. When I was young, I ..... a room of my own and so did my sister.
    a) used to have b) would have c) would buy d) used to buy
11. Cleopatra ..... was the last pharaoh of Egypt.
    a) ,that was very beautiful, b) ,was very beautiful,
    c) who was very beautiful d) ,who was very beautiful,
12. Woman's Day, ... marks an important event in 1909, is on March 8th.
    a) that b) when c) which d) in when
13. They were going to build a ....., but money ran out so they bought a large flat instead.
    a) two-storey houses b) two-storeys house
    c) two-storey house d) two-storeys houses
14. Everybody said, "We're glad the danger is over." Everybody said that ..... .
    a) he was glad the danger was over b) they are glad the danger is over
    c) they were glad the danger was over d) he is glad the danger is over
15. He agreed that he ..... anyone what I had said.
    a) won't tell b) hadn't told c) would not tell d) didn't tell
16. Whenever my computer breaks down, my father suggests ..... the computer expert.
    a) to call b) that I called c) not to call d) calling
17. "What are you talking about?" Dick asked me what ..... .
    a) am I talking about b) I was talking about
    c) he is talking about d) was he talking about
18. Use ..... to enclose extra material and afterthoughts.
    a) hyphens b) semi colons
    c) parentheses d) exclamation marks

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

19 Why is there a comma in the following .....?
Dear Jane, I am sorry that I have not written in such a long time.
a) Comma separates an appositive
b) Comma after the salutation of a letter
c) Comma after an introductory element
d) Comma separates items in a series

20 ..... means the paragraph and details in each paragraph are in the most effective order.
a) Unity b) Coherence c) Support d) Development

21 Which of the following is a good topic sentence for an argumentative paragraph?
a) There are several types of tropical fruit that can be grown in cold weather.
b) I learned diligence, patience, and reverence while working at the monastery
c) Several months ago, I got my first part-time job.
d) People don't agree about whether all students should study science

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If you want to be healthy and fit you need to follow certain rules, whether you're a boy, a girl, young or old. People are advised to eat healthy food. It is really important if you want to be a healthy one. You don't need to go on a diet, just pay attention to what you're putting in your body. You can eat three meals a day or 5-6 mini-meals a day. NEVER skip meals. Try healthy alternatives, instead of having a bowl of ice-cream, go for a frozen yogurt. Drink more water. This is basically the most important thing of all. If you drink more water you will be much healthier because it flushes the toxins out of your body and gives your skin a healthy glow.

It's important to exercise more whether it's walking in the park, or cycling do at least 20 minutes of physical activity several times a week. You should not exercise every day. Exercise will make you stronger and strengthen your muscles. You can go to the gym and swim or run. Exercising will make you healthier and happier about your body. It also reduces stress and helps to calm the mind!

During adolescence, you'll find you need more sleep. Sure, it's tempting to stay up late chatting with friends on the phone or computer, but the next morning you'll be miserable. You need to get a minimum of 8 hours of sleep every night. It may be tough if you get back late and have to wake up early on a normal school day, but if you put things in the right way, you will feel much more refreshed the next morning. This will help your concentration and you will be in a much happier and more friendly mood.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

22 What do you need to be healthy?
a) Go on a diet.
b) Follow certain rules.
c) Neglect meals.
d) Drink little water.

23 How many meals can we eat a day?
a) We can eat more than three meals.
b) We can only eat three meals.
c) We can only eat two meals.
d) We can only eat one meal.

24 What can you eat instead of an ice-cream?
a) 5-6 mini-meals.
b) A kilo of meat.
c) A frozen yogurt.
d) Three meals.

25 Why is water important to our bodies?
a) It flushes the toxins out of your body.
b) It gives your skin a healthy glow.
c) It makes you healthier.
d) All of these

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

26 What can exercising do to us?
a) It can make us healthier and happier.
b) It can give us stress.
c) It can reduce the peace of mind.
d) It can weaken our muscles.

27 What does "put things in the right way" mean?
a) chat a lot with friends.
b) make extra effort.
c) get up early.
d) sleep well.

28 One of the following doesn't give the meaning of the word "alternatives" .....
a) replacements
b) substitutes
c) elements
d) options

29 The most suitable title to the passage is ".....".
a) Good food and its effects on health
b) How to keep healthy
c) Water and its effects on health
d) Exercise makes us healthy

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

According to aviation industry statistics, almost 80 percent of airline accidents are survivable. But passengers can increase their chances of their survival by learning and following certain tips. Experts say that you should read and listen to safety instructions before takeoff and ask questions if you have uncertainties. You should fasten your seat belt low on your hips and as rightly as possible. Of course, you should also know how the release mechanism of your belt operates. During takeoffs and landings you are advised to keep your feet flat on the floor. Before takeoff you should locate the nearest exit and an alternative exit and count the rows of seats between you and the exits so that you can find them in the dark.

In the event that you are forewarned of a possible accident, you should put your hands on your ankles and keep your head down until the plane comes to a complete halt. If smoke is present in the cabin, you should keep your head low and cover your face with napkins, towels or clothing. If possible, wet these for added protection against smoke inhalation. To evacuate as quickly as possible, follow crew commands and do not take personal belongings with you. Don't jump on escape slides before they are fully inflated, and when you jump, do so with your arms and legs extended in front of you, when you get to the ground, you should move away from the plane as quickly as possible and never smoke near the wreckage.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

30 How many airline accidents can be liable to danger?
a) About 80 percent.
b) About 20 percent.
c) About 100 percent.
d) About 50 percent.

31 Which precautions should passengers take to increase their chances of survival?
a) Fasten their seat belts.
b) Read and listen to safety instructions.
c) Locate the nearest exit.
d) All of these.

32 Which of the following are passengers advised not to do?
a) Investigate about safety instructions.
b) Fasten their seat belts before taking off.
c) Carry their luggage in an emergency.
d) Jump on escape slides after they are fully inflated.

33 What does the word "tips" in line 3 mean?
a) Money given to the crew
b) Chances of survival.
c) Mechanism of seat belts
d) Pieces of advice.

34 When are passengers more likely to survive fires?
a) Keep their heads low
b) Wear a safety belt.
c) Don't smoke in or near a plane.
d) Read airline safety statistics.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

35 Why is it necessary to wet napkins, towels or clothing in case of smoke?
a) In order not to breathe smoke.
c) In order not to increase smoke.
b) In order not to cause fires.
d) In order not to explode the plane.

36 Which of the following can be a good title to the passage? "……".
a) Safety measures on a plane.
b) Aviation industry
c) Smoking is not allowed on the plane
d) Takeoffs and landings

37 The synonym of the word "inhalation" is …… .
a) addiction
b) digestion
c) takeoff
d) breathing

38 The best way to discipline your child is to help him/her make better choices. Be encouraging when they make the right choices.

a) أفضل طريقة لتوبيخ طفلك هى مساعدته على اتخاذ خيارات أفضل وكن مشجعًا عندما يتخذون الخيارات الصحيحة.
b) أفضل طريقة لتأديب طفلك هى مساعدته على اتخاذ خيارات أفضل وكن مشجعًا عندما يتخذون الخيارات الصحيحة.
c) أفضل طريقة لتوبيخ طفلك هى مساعدته على اتخاذ اختيارات أفضل وكن مثبطا عندما يتخذون الخيارات الصحيحة.
d) أفضل طريقة لتأديب طفلك هى مساعدته على اتخاذ خيارات أفضل وكن مشجعًا عندما يتعرضون للخيارات الصحيحة.

39 Research has shown that listening to calm classical music reduces stress hormone levels in the blood. Moreover, singing can reduce stress - even if you have a terrible voice!

a) أظهرت الأبحاث أن الاستماع إلى الموسيقى الكلاسيكية الهادئة يفعّل من مستويات هرمون التوتر في الدم وعلاوة على ذلك يمكن للغناء أن يقلل من التوتر – إلا إذا كان صوتك فظيعًا!
b) أظهرت الأبحاث أن الاستماع إلى الموسيقى الكلاسيكية الهادئة يقلل من مستويات هرمون التوتر فى الدم وعلاوة على ذلك يمكن للغناء أن يقلل من التوتر - إلا إذا كان صوتك فظيعًا!
c) أظهرت الأبحاث أن الاستماع إلى الموسيقى الكلاسيكية الهادئة يقلل من مستويات هرمون التوتر فى الدم وعلاوة على ذلك يمكن للغناء أن يقلل من التوتر - حتى لو كان صوتك فظيعًا!
d) أظهرت الأبحاث أن الاستماع إلى الموسيقى الكلاسيكية الهادئة يقلل من مستويات هرمون التوتر فى الدم وعلاوة على ذلك لا يمكن للغناء أن يقلل من التوتر - حتى لو كان صوتك فظيعًا!

40 يا ليتنى لم أتناول ذلك الطعام السيئ، ما كنت حملت إلى المستشفى. ولقد نصحنى الطبيب بالحفاظ على قواعد النظافة العامة والنظافة الشخصية.
a) I wish I hadn't eaten that bad food, I wouldn't have been carried to the hospital. The doctor advised me to maintain the rules of sanitation and personal hygiene.
b) I wish I didn't eat that bad food, I wouldn't be carried to the hospital. The doctor advised me to maintain the rules of sanitation and personal hygiene.
c) I wish I didn't eat that bad food, I wouldn't have been carried to the hospital. The doctor advised me to maintain the rules of sanitation and personal hygiene.
d) I wish I hadn't eaten that bad food, I wouldn't have carried to the hospital. The doctor advised me to maintain the rules of sanitation and personal hygiene.

41 مع توجه الحكومة للتحول الرقمى يتم إعادة تأهيل وتدريب هيئة الموظفين فى كل المؤسسات لاستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة
a) With the government's invention to digital transformation, staff members in all institutions are rehabilitated and trained to use modern technology.
b) With the government's reproach to digital transmission, staff members in all institutions are rehabilitated and trained to use modern technology.
c) With the government's approach to digital transformation, crew members in all institutions are rehabilitated and trained to use modern technology.
d) With the government's approach to digital transformation, staff members in all institutions are rehabilitated and trained to use modern technology.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Great Expectations

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Introduction

(A) The Writer

Charles Dickens was born in Portsmouth, on February 7, 1812. Charles was the second of eight children to John Dickens, a clerk موظف and his wife Elizabeth Dickens. The Dickens family moved to London in 1814. The defining moment of Dickens's life occurred حدثت when he was 12 years old. His father, who had a difficult time managing money and was constantly in debt, was imprisoned تم سجنه. Because of this, Charles left school and worked in a factory. This experience left great effects on Charles.

After a few months Dickens's father was released from prison and Charles was allowed to go back to school. At fifteen his formal education ended and he found employment as an office boy. From 1830 he worked as a clerk in the courts المحاكم and afterwards as a newspaper reporter.

In 1833 Dickens began to write short stories and essays to periodicals. Dickens's first book, a collection of stories titled Sketches by Boz, was published in 1836. In the same year he married Catherine Hogarth. They had 10 children before they separated in 1858. His most famous novels are Oliver Twist, Nicholas Nickleby, A Christmas Carol, The Cricket on the Hearth, Hard Times, A Tale of Two Cities, and Great Expectations.

Charles Dickens died at home on June 9, 1870 after suffering a stroke أزمة. Contrary to his wish to be buried in Rochester Cathedral, he was buried in the Poets' Corner of Westminster Abbey. The inscription on his tomb reads:

"He was a sympathiser متعاطف to the poor, the suffering, and the oppressed المضطهدون; and by his death, one of England's greatest writers is lost to the world."

(B) The Novel (Great Expectations)

Great Expectations was first published serially in All the Year Round in 1860–61 and issued in book form in 1861. The classic novel was one of its author's greatest critical and popular successes. It tells the coming of age of the orphan Pip while also addressing such issues as social class الطبقة الاجتماعية and human worth قيمة الإنسان.

(C) Summary of the Plot

Pip (Philip Pirrip) narrates يحكى the tale from an unspecified غير محدد time in the future. He grows up in the Kent, where he lives with his sister and her husband, the blacksmith Joe Gargery. While visiting his family members' graves قبور, the young Pip encounters يقابل Abel Magwitch, an escaped convict مدان . Pip brings him food and a file, but the fugitive and Compeyson—his former partner in crime and a supposed gentleman who is now his enemy—are soon caught. Later Pip is requested to pay visits to Miss Havisham, a woman driven half-mad years earlier by her lover's departure

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

on their wedding day. Living with Miss Havisham at Satis House is her adopted daughter, Estella, whom she is teaching to torment يعذب men with her beauty. Pip, at first cautious حريص, later falls in love with Estella, who does not return his affection. He grows increasing ashamed of his humble متواضع background and hopes to become a gentleman, in part to win over Estella. However, he is disappointed when he instead becomes Joe's apprentice متدرب/صبى حرفة.

Several years later a lawyer named Mr. Jaggers appears and informs Pip that an anonymous مجهول benefactor فاعل خير has made it possible for him to go to London for an education; Pip believes that the money is from Miss Havisham. Once in London, Pip is taught to be a gentleman by Matthew Pocket and his son Herbert, the latter of whom Pip met years earlier at Satis House. Also receiving instruction is the slow-witted متبلد العقل and unlikable Bentley Drummle.

The increasingly snobbish مغرور Pip is later horrified to discover that his mysterious benefactor is Magwitch. Not only is Magwitch in danger of being arrested, Pip's social standing موقف اجتماعى is threatened. Pip reveals the situation to Herbert, and it is decided that Magwitch and Pip should leave England. Before departing, Pip visits Satis House, where he confronts يواجه Miss Havisham for letting him believe she was his patron راعٍ. He also professes يعترف his love to Estella, who rejects him. Knowing that Drummle is pursuing her, Pip warns her about him, but she announces that she plans to marry him. Pip makes several startling discoveries, notably that Magwitch is Estella's father and that Compeyson was Miss Havisham's lover. He also grows close to Magwitch, whom he comes to respect يحترم.

As Pip and Magwitch attempt to leave London via a boat, the police and Compeyson arrive. The two convicts end up fighting in the Thames, and only Magwitch surfaces يظهر على السطح; Compeyson's body is later recovered. The injured Magwitch is arrested, convicted, and dies awaiting execution إعدام. A despondent يائس Pip is arrested because of his debts, but his failing health prevents him from being jailed. Joe subsequently arrives and nurses Pip back to health. Joe also informs him that Miss Havisham has died. After Joe leaves, Pip discovers that his brother-in-law has paid all of his bills فواتير. Pip later accepts a job offer at the Cairo branch of Herbert's firm, and he enjoys a simple but content life. After more than 10 years away, he returns to England and visits the place where Satis House once stood. There he encounters Estella, who is now a widow أرملة. As they leave, Pip takes her hand, believing that they will not part يفترق again.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (7)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

adore	يعشق
clients	عملاء
dismiss	يطرد
elegant	انيق
gatekeeper	حارس/بوّاب
gloomy	عبوس/كئيب
influence	يؤثّر فـ
instructions	تعليمات
introduce	يقدم
jealous	غيور
proud	متكبّر/مزهوّ
recover	يشفى/يفيق
rude	وقح
set off	ينطلق
suitable	مناسب/ملائم
unpleasant	غير مرضٍ
wealthy	ثري/مقتدر
whisper	يهمس

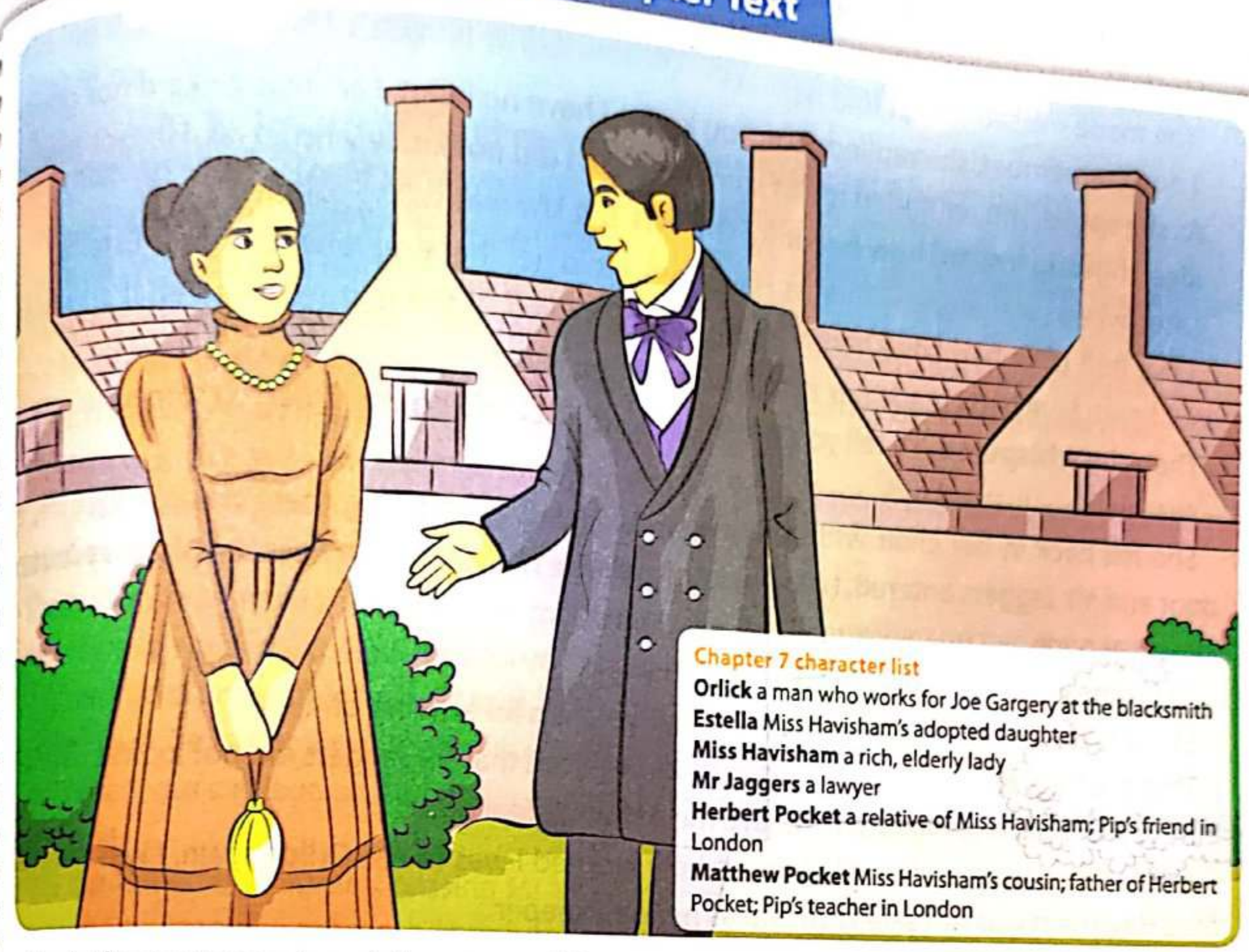
Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

at all	على الإطلاق
walk together	يسيران معًا
made the decision	يتخذ القرار
in surprise	مندهشا
neither kind nor good!	لا عطوف ولا جيد
reminded me of someone	ذكرنى بشخص ما
breaks your heart	يجعلك حزينا/يكسر القلب
Do come in	تفضل بالدخول (تفيد التأكيد)
thanked him for arriving on time	شاكرًا إياه على الوصول فى الوقت المحدد
Leave it to me	ترك الأمر لى
kept away from	بتعدت
feeling guilty	شعورًا بالذنب

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter Text



Chapter 7 character list

Orlick a man who works for Joe Gargery at the blacksmith
Estella Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
Miss Havisham a rich, elderly lady
Mr Jaggers a lawyer
Herbert Pocket a relative of Miss Havisham; Pip's friend in London
Matthew Pocket Miss Havisham's cousin; father of Herbert Pocket; Pip's teacher in London

Early the next morning, at the gate to Miss Havisham's house, I had an unpleasant surprise. Orlick let me in. He told me that he was Miss Havisham's **gatekeeper** now. I felt worried and I went to see her at once.

As I entered her room, I found that neither she nor her house had changed at all since my last visit more than a year ago.

Then I noticed an **elegant** lady sitting next to Miss Havisham. When she looked up and I could see her face, I realised it was Estella!

She was more beautiful than ever, but she made me feel like a poor working boy again.

'Has Estella changed much, Pip?' asked Miss Havisham.

'Yes, at first, I didn't recognise her,' I began.

'But now I can see…'

'What? Please don't say that she is the Estella you knew!' Miss Havisham said, annoyed.

'That Estella was proud and rude to you.

Don't you remember?'

'Well, perhaps, but it was a very long time ago,' I said, not quite sure of myself.

Estella agreed with Miss Havisham that she had been unkind to me.

'Has Pip changed?' Miss Havisham asked her.

'Very much,' Estella replied.

Miss Havisham laughed, and told us to walk together in the garden.

'As you have become a fine gentleman, I expect you have new friends,' Estella said.

'The ones you had in the village wouldn't be good enough now, would they?'

I agreed with her. And at that moment, I made the decision not to see Joe again.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

'Do you remember when you were cruel to me?' I asked Estella.

She looked at me in surprise.

'You made me sad then,' I told her.

'I don't remember,' she replied. 'But, you know, I have no heart; I am neither kind nor good!'

As she spoke, she reminded me of someone, but I did not know who it was. I forgot the idea, thinking instead how beautiful she was. But she was still so cold!

Later, when I was alone with Miss Havisham, I told her that everyone must love Estella.

'Love her! Love her! Love her!' Miss Havisham replied. 'If she is cruel, love her! If she breaks your heart, love her! I made her what she is – to be loved!'

Then she **whispered**, 'I'll tell you what real love is! It is giving your heart to someone completely – just as I did!'

She fell back in her chair with a loud cry. As I tried to help her, there was a knock on the door and Mr Jaggers entered. I did not know why he had come, but Miss Havisham **recovered** almost at once.

'Do come in, Mr Jaggers,' she said.

She was obviously expecting him, and thanked him for arriving on time.

That evening, as we all ate dinner together, I noticed that Mr Jaggers did not look at Estella at all. But she looked at him often. It gave me a strange feeling.

As soon as possible, I told Mr Jaggers how worried I was to see Orlick again. I was sure that Miss Havisham was not safe with him as her gatekeeper.

'**Leave it to me**!' he replied, and he promised to **dismiss** Orlick.

Estella planned to visit London soon, and I had agreed to meet her off the coach when she arrived. I was secretly delighted and could not sleep that night.

'I love her! I love her! I love her!' I thought, again and again. I was now sure that Miss Havisham wanted me to marry Estella.

In the morning, as I took a walk through the village, I saw several people that I knew. I did not speak to any of them, however; I was too proud of myself and my new life. I also **kept away from** Joe, but feeling guilty that I had not seen him, I sent him a present before I left.

On my return to London, I told Herbert about my feelings for Estella. 'I **adored** her before, but I adore her twice as much now!' I said.

'She will make you unhappy,' he replied. 'You should try to forget her!'

I knew that would be impossible.

When Estella arrived in London, some weeks later, I thought once again that she reminded me of someone.

'But who could it be?' I asked myself.

Estella climbed out of the coach. In her new coat, she seemed more beautiful than ever before.

She stood outside the inn while I brought her luggage to her. Then I asked where she was going.

'I am going in a carriage to Richmond,' she answered, 'and you are coming with me. You must take this purse and pay for everything!

We are not free to do what we want, you know; we have to follow our instructions.'

She did not seem annoyed that I was going with her, however.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

While we waited for a carriage to arrive, we went into the inn to drink some tea. The room that we sat in was dark and gloomy, but I was happy because Estella was with me. Then Estella told me that she would be staying with a wealthy lady, who would be paid to introduce her to suitable people in London.

'Do you like your teacher, Mr Matthew Pocket?' she asked, after a few moments.

'As much as I could like anyone who is not you!' I replied.

'You silly boy!' said Estella, 'how can you say that? To return to Mr Matthew Pocket; I am sure that he is a much better person than some other members of his family! They are Miss Havisham's relatives, you know, and they are **jealous** of you. I have heard them complain about you! But Miss Havisham refuses to discuss you with them, so they cannot **influence** her.'

A carriage soon arrived, and we set off to Richmond.

On the way, we saw the walls of Newgate Prison. I told Estella that Mr Jaggers visited his clients there, and knew all the secrets of that terrible place.

'He knows the secrets of every place, I think!'

Estella replied. 'I have known him for most of my life, but I know him no better now than I did when I was a small child. How well do you know him?' she asked.

'I have had dinner at his house,' I said.

'That must be a very interesting place,' replied Estella.

Just then, our carriage passed under a street light and I knew again that she reminded me of someone.

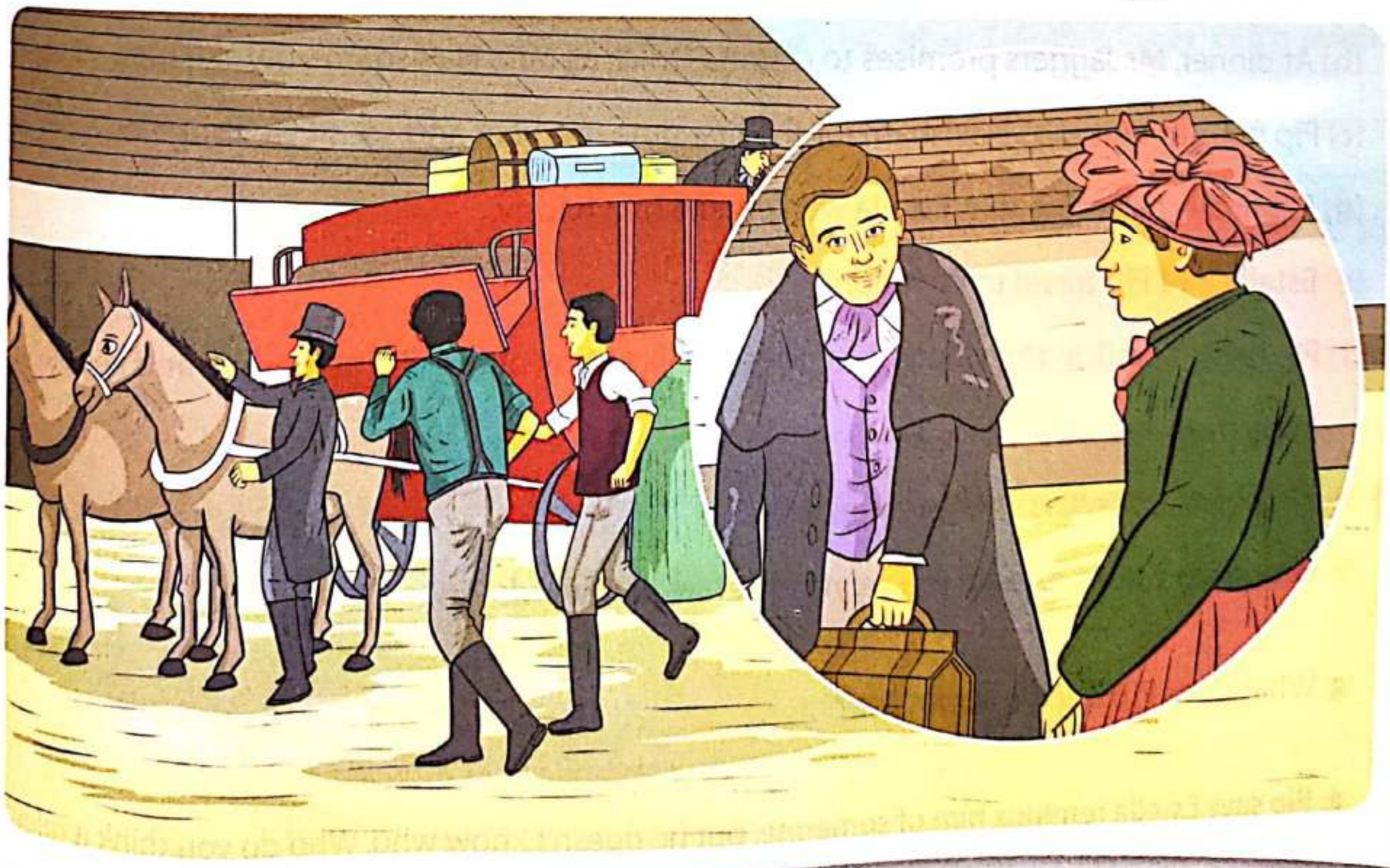
We continued our journey, passing Mr Matthew Pocket's house in Hammersmith on the way. I invited Estella to visit me there, and she told me that I was expected to call on her, in Richmond.

'And, Pip,' she sighed, 'Miss Havisham wants me to write to her often, to say how I am, where I have been, and what I have worn.

She has given me nearly all of her jewellery, you know!'

This was the first time that Estella had called me Pip!

I was delighted, and thought it would be wonderful if I married Estella and lived in Richmond with her. But in my heart, I knew the truth; Estella would never make me happy.



Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (7) Exercises (SB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words from the story.

adore – client – dismiss – elegant – gatekeeper – influence – jealous – keep – away from – leave it to me – recover – whisper

1. My sister looked very ..... in her new long, black dress.
2. I'm very ..... of my cousin because she's just got a new tablet.
3. I was so shocked when we won the competition. I needed a few minutes to ..... .
4. The job of a ..... is to open and close a gate, to decide who can enter the property.
5. I absolutely ..... my aunt. She's one of my favourite people.
6. Don't worry about anything at all. Just ..... .
7. You don't have to ....., no one can hear us.
8. We were warned to ..... that part of the city at night.
9. Sara is a ..... of mine. She comes to my salon every week to get her hair done.
10. We're planning to ..... Robert from his position because he isn't doing a very good job.
11. I'm going to decide for myself which job I want to do and I won't let anyone else ..... me.

2 Number the sentences in the order that the events happened in this part of the story.

(a) Pip tells Herbert that he cares for Estella and Herbert responds that she won't make him happy.

(b) At dinner, Mr Jaggers promises to dismiss Orlick as Miss Havisham's gatekeeper.

(c) Pip goes to visit Miss Havisham for the first time in a year and sees Estella again.

(d) Pip finally feels sure that Estella won't make him happy.

(e) Estella and Pip travel to Richmond.

(f) Pip takes a walk in the village, but doesn't talk to any of the village people and keeps away from Joe.

3 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1. How does Estella explain the way she behaved towards Pip?

.....

2. What does Pip decide about Joe?

.....

3. Pip says Estella reminds him of someone, but he doesn't know who. Who do you think it might be

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

4 **The writer doesn't only tell us what Pip does and says, but also what he's thinking and feeling. This is called the character's inner voice.**

As she spoke, she reminded me of someone, but I did not know who it was. I forgot the idea, thinking instead how beautiful she was. But she was still so cold!

Find another sentence or sentences in the text where the writer uses Pip's inner voice. Write them in your notebook.

5 **Which verbs or verb phrases does the writer use in Exercise 4 to show that he's describing Pip's inner voice?**

5 **Read this part of the text again.**

We continued our journey, passing Mr Matthew Pocket's house in Hammersmith on the way. I invited Estella to visit me there, and she told me that I was expected to call on her, in Richmond.

Write another sentence in your notebook describing what Estella's inner voice might be telling her at this moment.

Scanned with CamScanner

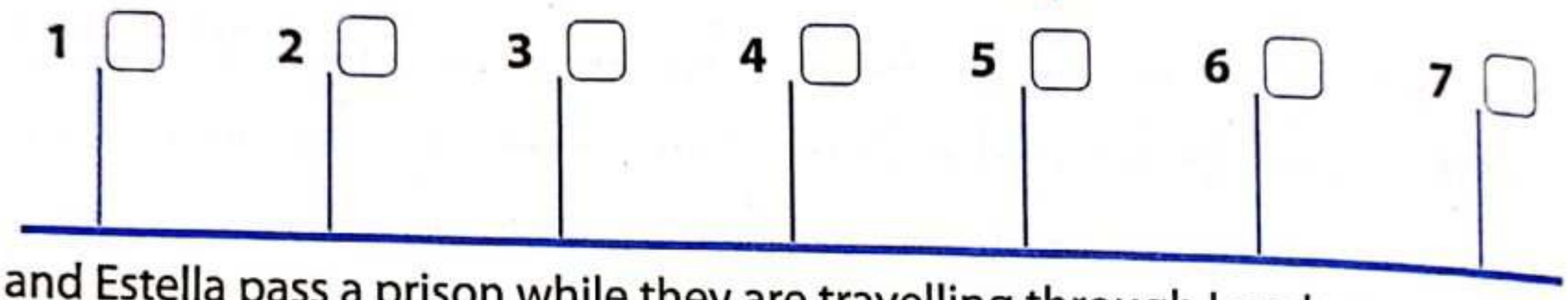
Scanned with CamScanner

Exercises (WB)

1 Match the words and phrases and the definitions:

1. ☐ adore	a) make someone leave their job
2. ☐ client	b) have an affect on the way someone behaves
3. ☐ dismiss	c) avoid going to or seeing
4. ☐ elegant	d) get better from an illness or injury
5. ☐ gatekeeper	e) love someone or something very much
6. ☐ influence	f) say something very quietly
7. ☐ jealous	g) someone who pays a person for a service or advice
8. ☐ keep away from	h) to affect the way someone behaves, or thinks
9. ☐ recover	i) a person whose job is to guard an entrance
10. ☐ whisper	j) having an attractive and graceful appearance

2 Complete the timeline with these events from the story:



(a) Pip and Estella pass a prison while they are travelling through London.
(b) We learn that Miss Havisham has given nearly all her jewellery to Estella.
(c) Pip finds that Orlick is now Miss Havisham's gatekeeper.
(d) Pip visits an inn in London with Estella.
(e) Pip talks to Estella in Miss Havisham's garden.
(f) Mr Jaggers promises he will dismiss Orlick from his job as gatekeeper.
(g) Pip has dinner with Miss Havisham, Estella and Mr Jaggers.

3 Circle True or False and correct the false sentences in your notebook:

1. Orlick lets Pip into Miss Havisham's house a month after his last visit. True/Fal
2. Pip thinks that Estella now looks very beautiful and smart. True/Fal
3. Herbert tells Pip that Estella is now kind and good. True/Fal
4. Pip is sure that Miss Havisham wants him to marry Estella. True/Fal
5. Pip tells Estella that Mr Jaggers has clients in Newgate Prison. True/Fal
6. Estella tells Pip that she will visit him at Matthew Pocket's house. True/Fal

4 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

1. 'She will make you unhappy. You should forget her.'
   Who says this to Pip and why?

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

2 'I expect you have new friends. The ones you had in the village wouldn't be good enough now, would they?'
Why did Estella say this and do you think it is true?

3 'If she is cruel, love her! If she breaks your heart, love her! I made her what she is – to be loved!'
Why do you think Miss Havisham wants people to love Estella when she is so cruel?

4 'We are not free to do what we want, you know; we have to follow our instructions.'
Whose instructions do you think Estella is talking about, and why are they not free?

5 Match the people to the descriptions:

Estella – Herbert – Mr Jaggers – Orlick – Pip

1 He is unpleasant and might be dangerous. .....
2 He knows many secrets, and Estella has known him for a long time. .....
3 She says that she has no heart. .....
4 He gives Pip some good advice about Estella. .....
5 He has become very proud of himself and his new life. .....

6 Answer the questions:

1 Why did Pip tell Mr Jaggers that Miss Havisham was not safe with Orlick as gatekeeper?

2 Why did Pip decide that he did not want to see Joe again?

3 Why does Pip feel delighted at the end of the chapter?

4 Why do you think some of Miss Havisham's relatives, the Pockets, are jealous of Pip?

7 Complete the sentences from the story with the correct adjective:

annoyed – elegant – gloomy – guilty – jealous – proud – unpleasant – wealthy

1 At the gate to Miss Havisham's house, Pip had an ..... surprise when he saw Orlick.
2 Pip noticed a/an ..... lady sitting next to Miss Havisham.
3 Pip did not speak to any people in the village because he was too ..... of himself and his new life.
4 Pip felt ..... that he had not seen Joe and sent him a present.
5 Estella did not seem ..... that Pip was going with her in a carriage through London.
6 Pip and Estella sat in an inn that was dark and ..... .
7 Estella told Pip that she would be staying with a ..... lady, who would be paid to introduce her to suitable people in London.
8 Estella tells Pip that the Pockets are ..... of him.

8 It is a year since Pip last saw Estella. In what ways has she changed? In what ways is she the same? Write a paragraph about how Estella's character has developed. Write about 200 words in your notebook.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (8)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

admire	معجب
affectionately	بحنان/برقّة
argument	نقاش
arrogant	معجب بنفسه/متغطرس
astonished	مندهش
benefactor	فاعل خير/متصدق
buried	يدفن
convict	مجرم
debt	دين
extravagant	متطرف/مغالٍ
fortune	ثروة
funeral	جنازة
graveyard	مقبرة
including	متضمنا
interrupt	يقاطع
jealous	غيور
lodging	سكن
marsh	مستنقع
nod	يحرك رأسه موافقا
patient	حليم/صبور
rough	عنيف/قاس
stormy	عاصف
ugly	قبيح
uncertain	شاك/متردد

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

so that	لكى
fall in love with	يقع فى حب
apart from	باستثناء
Pay off ... debts	يسدد الدين
keep my promise	يفى بالوعد
well-paid job	وظيفة ذات عائد جيد

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter Text

Chapter 8 character list
Estella Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
Herbert Pocket Pip's friend in London
Biddy friend to Pip
Mr Jaggers a lawyer
Mr Wemmick Mr Jaggers' clerk
Mr Clarriker a businessman; Herbert Pocket's employer
Magwitch the convict Pip helped to escape

I did not understand Estella, or my feelings for her. My future in London and what my expectations might bring were also uncertain.

I knew that I had changed, and not for the best, since I had met Mr Jaggers and learnt that I was to become a gentleman. I sometimes wished that I had never met Miss Havisham.

I also felt guilty for two reasons: I had not visited Joe, and I had been **extravagant**, encouraging Herbert to spend more money than he should. We had both become members of The Finches – an expensive gentlemen's club where we ate large dinners and had discussions with some of the other members – including Bentley Drummle.

Herbert and I often returned to our lodgings after midnight, and woke up late.

After visiting my teacher in Hammersmith, I often went to Richmond so that I could see Estella. I still hoped that she would **fall in love with** me, but I usually felt unhappy when we were together.

Once, when I took Estella to visit Miss Havisham, they had a terrible argument. I had felt sorry for Miss Havisham as she sighed and complained to me that Estella was a proud, hard woman, with a cold heart.

'You should know,' replied Estella, 'because I am what you made me!'

If Estella had a cold heart, she hid it well. The wealthy woman, who Estella lived with in Richmond, had introduced her to many people in London and she now had many **admirers**. I was jealous of them all, especially Bentley Drummle. He was stupid, **arrogant** and ugly, and I was sorry that she knew him. One day, I told her how sad I was that she encouraged Drummle to visit her.

'You know that I want to trick all of my admirers,' she replied. 'All of them, apart from you!'

At least Herbert and I were good friends, even though we were often **in debt**. As soon as we had paid off our old debts, new ones appeared. As Herbert had less money than I did, he soon owed more than me.

Our extravagant life was interrupted one day when news came that my sister had died.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Because she had been ill for so long and now lived so far away, I had almost forgotten about her; and although I was not sad, I was angry that her attacker had not been caught. And when I thought of Orlick, I wanted revenge.

I returned home for the **funeral** and found the house full of neighbours, all dressed in black. As my sister was buried beside my parents, a bird sang high above us.

Soon afterwards, Joe, Biddy and I were alone together. Joe was as good to me as ever, and Biddy was kind and patient. I was sorry that I had not visited them sooner.

That evening, I went for a walk with Biddy.

'What will you do now, Biddy?' I asked her, affectionately. 'If you want any money…'

'I'll tell you, Mr Pip,' she replied quickly. 'I'm going to be the teacher at our new village school! I know that I will enjoy it. After all, I learnt such a lot when I helped you with your lessons at my grandmother's school.'

I was pleased for her. Then I asked about Orlick.

'I am not sure what he does now,' she replied.

'But I saw him by that tree on the night your sister died. I think I saw him there again tonight! But he has gone now.'

So Orlick had attacked my sister, and now he was frightening Biddy!

I promised that I would try to make Orlick leave the village. 'And I will come to visit often,' I said. 'I am not going to leave you and Joe alone!'

'Are you sure that you will come often?' she asked, in a very quiet voice.

I was hurt. But in my heart, I was not sure that I would keep my promise.

As I said goodbye to Biddy and Joe the next day, I realised that they knew me better than I knew myself.

It would soon be my twenty-first birthday.

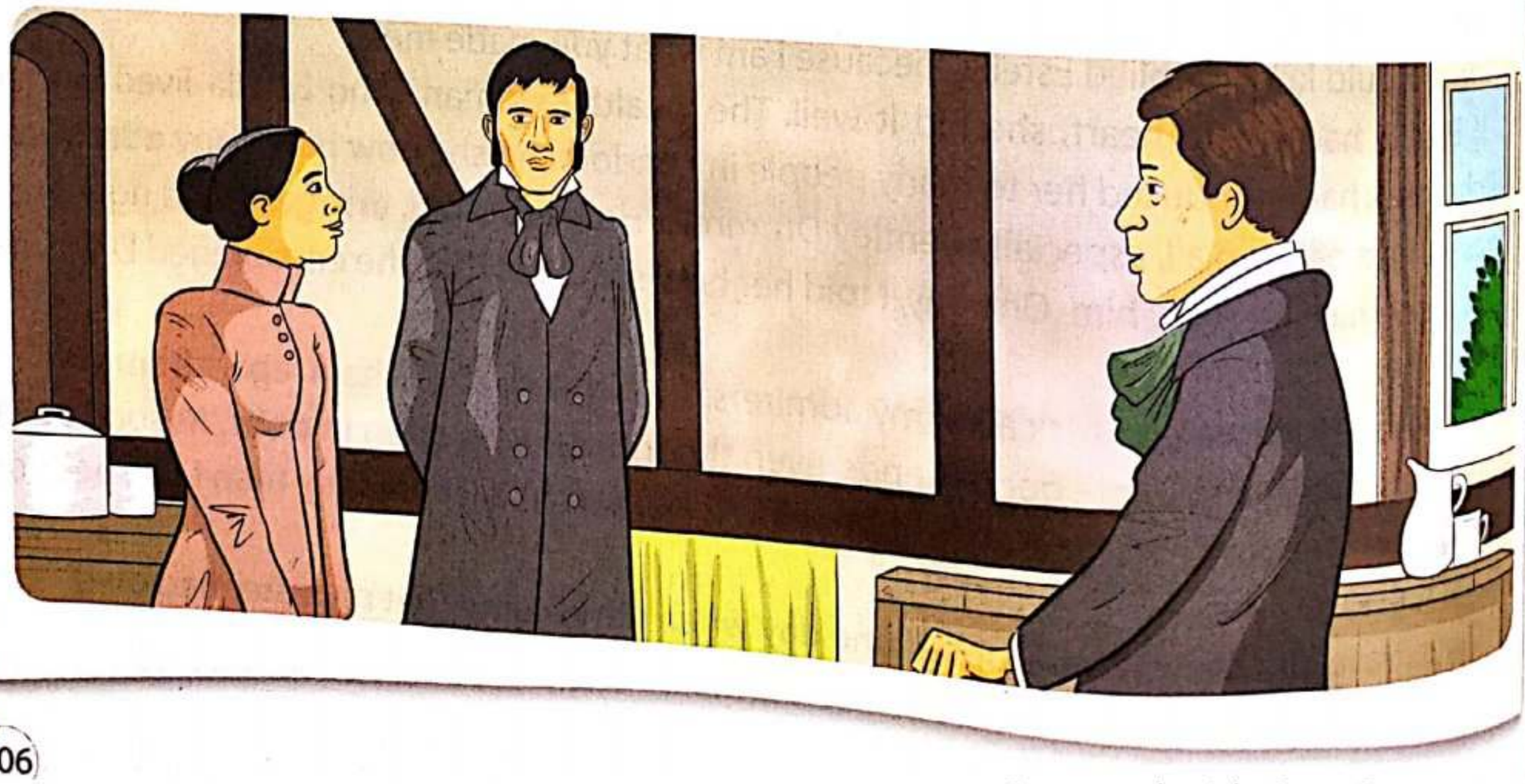
I hoped that I would receive all of my fortune then, and discover the name of my secret benefactor.

But when the day arrived, Mr Jaggers gave me a very extravagant present of five hundred pounds. He told me, however, that he could not answer any questions about my secret benefactor, nor could I send my thanks. He also said that he did not know when I would meet my benefactor.

I realised then that it might be years before I would know the truth.

By now, I was worried about Herbert. He did not earn enough money to pay his debts, and so I decided to use my five hundred pounds to help him.

Mr Wemmick suggested that I used some of my money to help a merchant, called Mr Clarriker, with his business. In return, Mr Clarriker agreed to meet Herbert and offer him a well-paid job. Herbert was delighted, and accepted at once. When I saw how happy he was, it seemed that my expectations had done some good at last.



Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Two years passed. Herbert and I moved to our new lodgings next to the river, and as I did not need a teacher any more, I no longer visited the Pocket family in Hammersmith. Herbert often travelled abroad for Mr Clarriker, and I missed him and hoped that he would soon return.

One dark and stormy evening, when Herbert was away in France, I was reading by the fire in our lodgings. As the clock struck eleven, I shut my book. And then I heard it – a strange noise outside on the stairs.

I held up a light and ran to see what it was.

'Is someone there?' I called out.

'Yes', came a man's voice, 'I've come to see Mr Pip.'

'Is there something the matter?' I asked, worried now.

'Nothing's the matter,' said the man as he came towards me.

And then, I saw him: a man of about sixty, with dark, grey hair and a heavy, **rough** coat. He was clearly delighted to see me. I invited him in and he looked around.

'I'm glad you've grown up, my boy!' he said.

Suddenly, I realised that I knew him.

It was as though the wind and rain had washed away the years since we had last met, in the graveyard where I had given him Joe's file and some food. He was Magwitch, the convict from the marshes all those years ago.

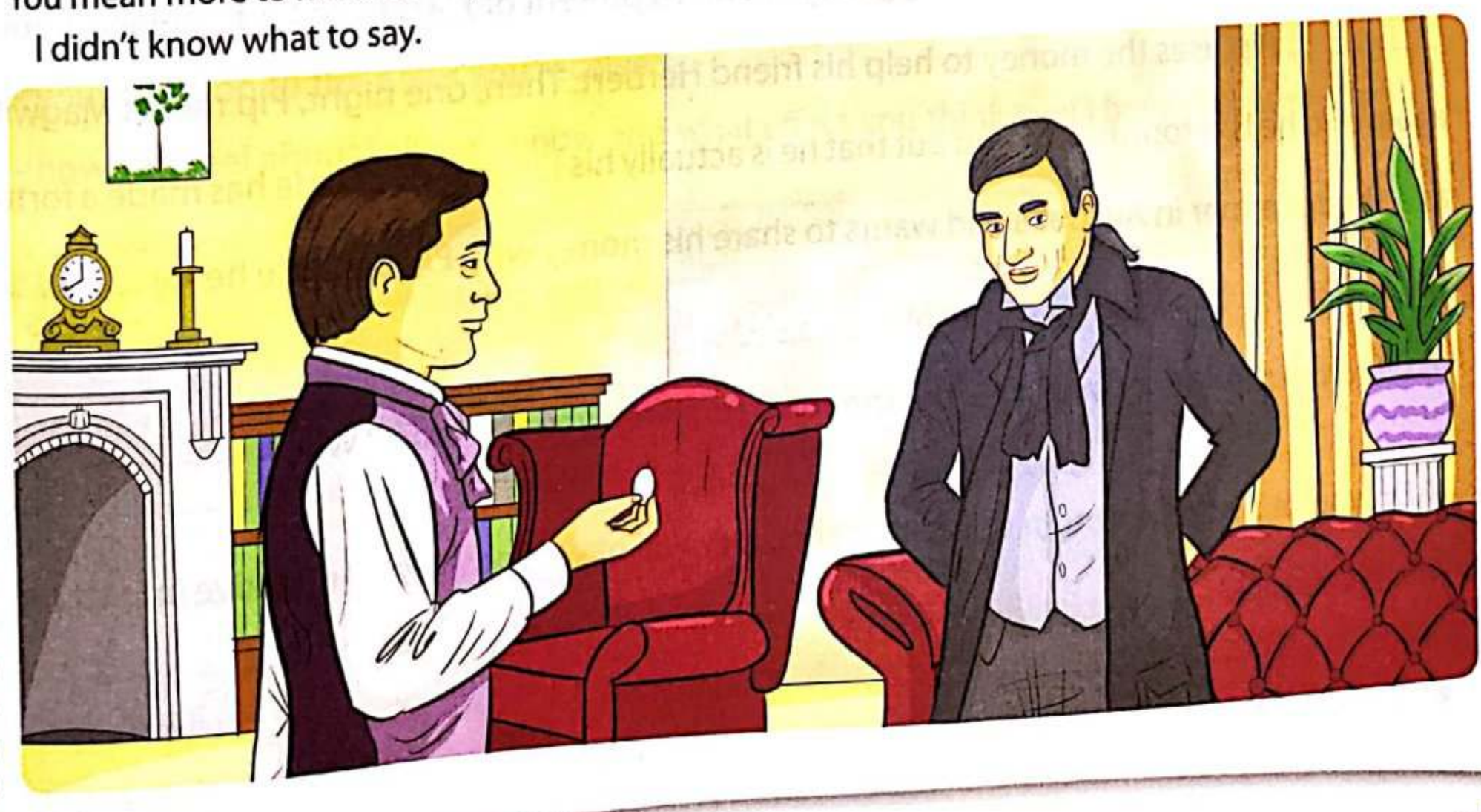
'I have never forgotten what you did for me that day, Pip!' Magwitch said. 'I was sent to Australia for life when they caught me afterwards. I've been a sheep farmer there ever since, and have made a fortune.'

'Your friend kept his promise,' I said. 'He found me and brought me this.' Then I showed him the shiny new coin I had been given years before by the stranger at the village inn. Magwitch smiled and nodded.

'I wanted to find you as soon as I arrived back in England,' Magwitch said, 'so I wrote to Mr Jaggers and was given your address.'

Seeing my astonished face, he said, 'Yes, Pip, I've made a gentleman of you! When you gave me the food and that file all those years ago, I decided that if I ever became rich, I would make you rich, too! I've worked hard in Australia ever since, so that you won't need to work. I'm your second father, Pip. You mean more to me than any son!'

I didn't know what to say.



Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Exercises (SB)

1 Match the words and the definitions:

1. ☐ admirer	a) something that has an uneven surface, not smooth
2. ☐ arrogant	b) someone who thinks they're better or more important than they really are
3. ☐ astonished	c) someone who spends too much money
4. ☐ extravagant	d) Someone who likes a particular person
5. ☐ fall in love with	e) Extremely surprised
6. ☐ in debt	f) to have strong romantic feelings for someone
7. ☐ rough	g) owing money

2 Re-read this part of the story. Complete the summary using the words and phrases in the box.

benefactor – doesn't tell him who it is – except for him – means more to him than a son – neither of them believe that he will – uncertain

Pip feels that he doesn't understand his feelings for Estella and his future in London also seems (1) ..... In spite of this, he often visits Estella in Richmond and she tells him that she wants to trick all of her admirers (2) ..... Then Pip learns that his sister has died and he travels home for the funeral. He promises Biddy that he will visit them often, but (3) ..... Pip's 21st birthday arrives and Mr Jaggers gives him a present of £500 from his benefactor but (4) ..... Pip uses the money to help his friend Herbert. Then, one night, Pip meets Magwitch again and he is astonished to find out that he is actually his (5) ..... . He has made a fortune as a sheep farmer in Australia and wants to share his money with Pip because he (6) .....

3 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Which of the events in this part of the story surprised you the most? Why?

.....

2 Do you think the events in this part of the story will have a positive or negative impact on Pip in the future?

.....

3 Looking back, were there any clues in the story which suggested who Pip's benefactor was?

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

4 The writer uses adjectives to give more details about a) the characters, b) the characters' thoughts and feelings and c) places. What do the adjectives in these examples add more details about?

1 I had an **unpleasant** surprise.

2 Then I noticed an **elegant** lady sitting next to Miss Havisham.

3 The room that we sat in was **dark** and **gloomy**, ...

5 Re-read this part of the story and look for other examples of adjectives the writer has used to add more detail. Make notes on what each adjective adds for the reader.

6 Imagine you are Pip. In your notebook write a diary entry about when you found out who your benefactor is. Describe:

- what happened today
- your reaction to the news you received
- how you feel about this news now and what effect you think it will have on your future.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words:

admirer – arrogant – astonished – extravagant – funeral – rough – sigh – apart from – pay off

1. The bed was very uncomfortable, with thick, ... blankets.
2. Tarek went on holiday and was ..... to see his neighbour was staying in the same hotel!
3. I am a great ..... of famous writers from the past, like Charles Dickens.
4. The rich guest at the hotel was very ..... . He ordered the best food and stayed in the most expensive room. But he was also ..... He thought he was better than us.
5. After the famous actor died, hundreds of people went to his ..... .
6. Finally, I managed to ..... my debts.
7. Ahmed ..... with relief when he saw his test results.
8. The room was empty, ... one man who was sitting beside the bed.

2 Circle True or False and correct the false sentences in your notebook:

1. Pip loved Estella because he understood how she felt. True/False
2. In London, Estella had many admirers because she had a cold heart. True/False
3. Pip believes that Estella likes Bentley Drummle. True/False
4. Pip was poorer than Herbert and had more debts. True/False
5. Pip learnt who his benefactor was on his birthday. True/False
6. Pip used his birthday money to help Herbert get a job. True/False
7. Pip was home alone when Magwitch visited him. True/False
8. Magwitch escaped from a prison in Australia and is very poor. True/False

3 Match to make collocations:

1. ☐ become	a) a fortune
2. ☐ make	b) someone a job
3. ☐ offer	c) your debts
4. ☐ pay	d) a member of a club

4 Match the people with the descriptions:

Bentley Drummle – Biddy – Herbert – Magwitch – Miss Havisham – Mr Clarriker – Mr Jaggers – Orlick

1. He had less money then Pip and spent more money at gentleman's clubs than he should. (.....)
2. Pip thought him arrogant and was jealous of him because he visited Estella. (.....)
3. She had a terrible argument with Estella. (.....)
4. She was kind and patient with Pip and was going to be the village teacher. (.....)
5. Biddy saw him when Joe's sister died and he was watching Biddy from behind a tree. (.....)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

6 He gave Pip a generous birthday present but no information about his benefactor. (.....)
7 He was a merchant who gave Herbert a job. (.....)
8 He was about sixty with dark, grey hair. (.....)

5 Choose the correct spelling of the words in these sentences from the story:

1 Estella wanted to trick all her admirers, **a part/apart** from Pip.
2 Pip learnt that his sister had **dyed/died**.
3 Pip was angry that his sister's attacker had not been **caught/court**.
4 They decided to **berry/bury** Pip's sister next to their parents.
5 Pip was not **shore/sure** that he would visit Biddy often.
6 When Herbert went abroad to work, Pip **missed/mist** him.

6 In your notebook write ten sentences using each of the words in bold from exercise 5. You can use a dictionary.

1 **A part** of my car was damaged by a bicycle yesterday.
2 I like most kinds of vegetables **apart** from onions.

7 Answer the questions. Write in your notebook:

1 In what ways had Pip and Herbert become extravagant?
.....
2 Why did Pip continue to visit Estella in Richmond?
.....
3 Why did Pip feel angry and want revenge when he thought of Orlick?
.....
4 Why did Pip feel sorry when he visited Joe and Biddy?
.....
5 Why did Pip promise Biddy that he would make Orlick leave the village?
.....
6 Why was Pip looking forward to his twenty-first birthday?
.....
7 Who was the person who had made Pip a gentleman?
.....

8 Read the quotations and answer the questions. Write in your notebook.

1 'You know that I want to trick all of my admirers. All of them, apart from you!'
Why do you think Estella says this to Pip?
.....
2 'I have never forgotten what you did for me that day, Pip!'
Why does Magwitch say this?
.....
3 'I've worked hard in Australia ever since, so that you won't need to work.'
Why did Magwitch want to do this?
.....
4 "Yes, Pip, I've made a gentleman of you!"
Who made Pip a "gentleman"? How did Pip become a gentleman?
.....

9 Pip says, 'I knew that I had changed, and not for the best, since I had met Mr Jaggers and learnt that I was to become a gentleman. I sometimes wished that I had never met Miss Havisham.' Write about 200 words to explain why Pip thinks this.
.....
.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (9)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

duty	واجب
half-brother	أخ غير شقيق
horrified	مذعور/خائف
leg-irons	سلاسل حديدية
permanently	دائما
purse	محفظة
ring	خاتم
scared	خائف
survive	يبقى حيا
Unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
ashamed	خجلان
at once	فى الحال
begged	استعطف/ترجى
boast	يتفاخر
confirm	يؤكّد/يعتمد
criminal	مجرم
crouching	انحناء/جلسة القرفصاء
desert	يهجر
dishonest	غير أمين
dived off	غادر

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

night watchman	حارس ليلى
prison ship	سفينة السجن
worse was to come	كان الأسوأ سياتى
a life sentence	السجن مدى الحياة
as soon as possible	على قدر المستطاع
fear for	يخاف على
My heart sank	أصبحت حزينا أو محبطا

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter Text

Chapter 9 character list

Provis the convict Pip helped to escape, previously known as 'Magwitch'
Night watchman
Mr Jaggers a lawyer
Herbert Pocket Pip's friend and roommate in London
Compeyson a dishonest person
Arthur Compeyson's friend

Magwitch pulled my gold watch out of my pocket, and looked at the ring on my finger, and at my clothes and books.

'What a fine gentleman you are now, Pip!' he said, happily. 'Did you not think that I might be your benefactor?'

'No, never!' I replied, horrified.

'Only Mr Jaggers knew,' Magwitch continued.

'But all the time I was in Australia, I was planning to return home – to see my gentleman!'

My heart sank when I heard this news. Miss Havisham was not my benefactor after all, and so Estella was not meant for me! And this convict had made me leave Joe for a new life in London! I felt sad and ashamed.

But worse was to come. Magwitch came close to me, and whispered, 'The problem is, my boy, that I have a life sentence. If I am caught here, I will be put back in prison!'

واجب
أخ غير شقيق
مذعور/خائف
سلاسل حديدية
دائما
محفظة
خاتم
خائف
يبقى حيًا
لسوء الحظ
حارس ليلى
سفينة السج
كان الأسوأ

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

What would I do with Magwitch? Where could he stay? I was upset by these and other questions that night while Magwitch slept well in Herbert's room.

On the way downstairs to get a light, I fell over something. It was a man, **crouching** in the corner! When I asked him what he was doing he didn't reply and ran outside. I followed him, but the street was empty.

I told the **night watchman** what had happened, and we looked for the man together. But we found no one.

'We haven't had many visitors tonight, because of the storm,' the watchman said. 'But I saw your visitor arrive at eleven. He had another man with him, I think.'

'What did that other man look like?' I asked.

The night watchman did not know exactly, but thought he wore a dark coat.

In the morning, I asked Magwitch if he had brought a man with him. He denied it, but said that someone could have followed him into the building.

'We'll turn you into the best gentleman in London, Pip!' he said proudly, and threw a purse full of money onto the table.

'Everything I have is yours! And there's a lot more where that came from!'

He then told me to call him Provis from now on. That was his name in Australia. When Provis said he had returned **permanently**, I went to see Mr Jaggers at once. Unfortunately, he **confirmed** that Provis was my benefactor, and advised me to be careful.

I was sure that Provis would be caught. Even with the new clothes that I had bought him, he still looked like a convict. We did not go out for several days while I wondered what to do.

Then Herbert returned. Provis told him not to tell anyone that he was there, and Herbert, who was as scared as I was, immediately agreed.

'We'll make you a gentleman, too, my boy!' Provis laughed.

I was grateful to Provis because he had done so much for me, but at the same time, I also disliked his behaviour.

He boasted that he had made me a gentleman, and he thought that I would be happy with a wealthy new life in London.

Now that I knew the truth, however, I was horrified. My benefactor was a criminal!

I knew that I could not accept any more money from him in the future.

Herbert and I knew that Provis would be caught if he stayed in England. As he had been so good to me, I felt it was my duty to help him escape. After that, I never wanted to see him again.

The next day, Provis told Herbert and I about his life. He did not know where he was born, or who his parents were. He had been alone for as long as he could remember.

As a child he was always hungry, so he stole and begged to survive. As he grew up, he continued to steal and spent more and more time in prison. However, when he was not in prison, he sometimes worked for a short time.

He learnt to read and write from people that he met as he travelled around the country. He even got married and it seemed that his life was finally improving. Then, one day, he met a man called Compeyson.

At first, Provis thought that his new friend was a gentleman; he wore fine clothes and spoke well. But then Provis discovered that Compeyson was really a dishonest person.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

He found out that Compeyson and his friend, Arthur, had been very successful in the past, and had even tricked a rich, young woman out of most of her money. They had now spent almost all the money and needed to get some more. Arthur could not help because he was too ill, but he also felt guilty for what he had done in the past.

So Provis began to steal for Compeyson, and soon they were both caught. However, Compeyson told everyone in court that Provis was responsible for all the crimes. Because Compeyson looked and behaved like a gentleman, the court believed him. As a result, Provis was given a longer prison sentence than Compeyson.

The two men were both sent to the same prison ship, far out on some marshes. One day, after they had had a bad argument, Provis dived off the ship and swam to land. It was while he was hiding in the graveyard nearby that he met me.

Compeyson had also escaped from the ship that day. When I had met the second convict on the marshes and had told Provis that there was a second man, he had started to search for him. When the two men met, they began to fight. It was then that they were found by the soldiers and taken back to the prison ship.

I remembered that Joe and I had walked with the soldiers that day, and that we had seen what had happened. When the convicts had returned to the prison ship, Compeyson was put in leg-irons for trying to escape.

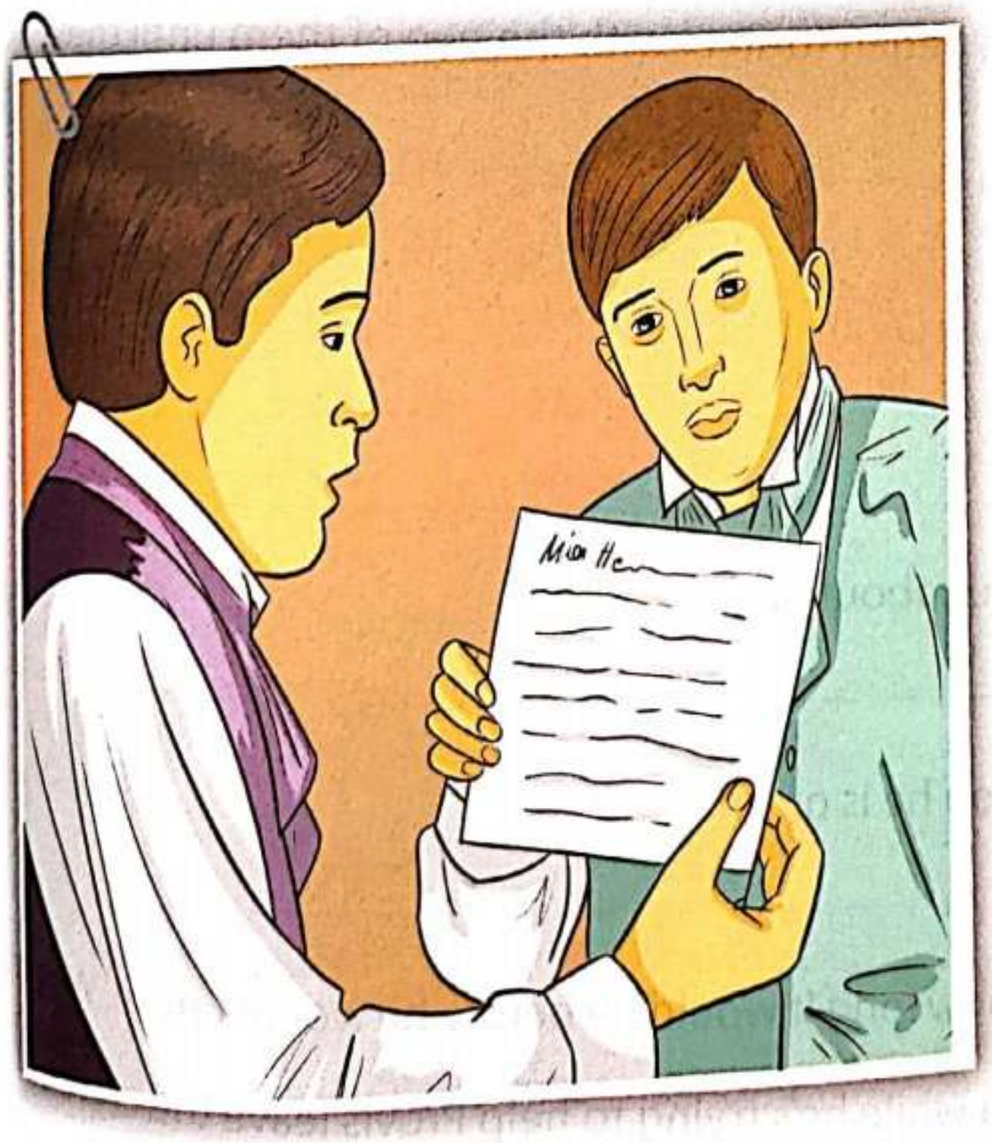
However, Provis got a life sentence and was sent to Australia.

'Well, you can see that I didn't stay there for life. I had to come back to see you, Pip,' he said. 'I wanted to see you as a gentleman.'

At that moment, I began to feel sorry for Provis, but I was horrified by him, too.

'Is Compeyson still alive?' I asked.

'I don't know,' he replied. 'But if he is, I am sure that he will want to kill me!'



Just then, Herbert showed me a note that he had written. It said,

Miss Havisham's half-brother was called Arthur. Compeyson is the man who took Miss Havisham's fortune and **deserted** her!

When I read this, I **feared for** Provis. Compeyson would certainly kill him if he found him. Herbert and I both knew now that Provis must leave the country as soon as possible. I felt that I must go with him, to help him escape, and I did not know how long it would be before I would return.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (9)
Exercises (SB)

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words from this part of the story:

confirm – crouch – to desert – fear for – My heart sank – night watchman – permanently

1 We're going to move back to France ..... because I have a new job there.

2 I ..... down next to my 3-year-old son so we could talk more easily.

3 I hadn't expected you ..... me at the wedding. I thought you wanted to marry me!

4 ..... when I opened the letter with my exam grades, they weren't very good.

5 There's a ..... who walks around the buildings at night.

6 We really ..... Ahmed because he's going to try a really dangerous new trick on his bike today.

7 I'm not sure whether the event will still go ahead, but I'll check and ..... with you.

2 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

1 After discovering who his benefactor is, Pip believes he won't marry Estella. ☐

2 Provis admits that he had brought someone else with him and this is the man Pip saw on the stairs. ☐

3 Provis says that he also wants to help Herbert to become a gentleman. ☐

4 Provis met Compeyson and Arthur and began to steal with the two of them until they were all caught. ☐

3 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 What do we learn about Provis's past?

.....

2 What does Pip's reaction to Provis tell us about Pip?

.....

3 Is Provis telling the truth? What tells you he is or isn't?

.....

4 The text tells us that Pip didn't know how long it would be before he would return. Why might Pip think this and what might happen while he's trying to help Provis leave the country?

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

3 In this part of the story, the writer uses several words and phrases to show that two things were happening at the same time. Read these sentences and find the words or phrases that the writer used for this reason:

1. My heart sank when I heard this news.
2. Even with the new clothes that I had bought him, he still looked like a convict.
3. We did not go out for several days while I wondered what to do.
4. I was grateful to Provis because he had done so much for me, but at the same time, I also disliked his behaviour.
5. As he grew up, he continued to steal and spent more and more time in prison. It was while he was hiding in the graveyard nearby that he met me.

4 Read the sentences in Exercise 4 again and answer the questions:

1. Which part of the sentence are the words and phrases in?

.....

2. Which words and phrases do you already use in your writing?

.....

5 Write a summary of the information that Pip found out in this part of the story, which he will want to remember in the future.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (9) Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words.

confirmed – heart sank – crouched – deserted – criminal – night watchman – permanently – fear for – commit

1. In the past, a ..... was like a police officer, who kept people safe at night.
2. Hamdi got an email that ..... that the job interview had been successful. He starts next month.
3. Farmers ..... the land after three years of no rain.
4. Gameela ..... near the box to see the new-born kittens.
5. My ..... when I was not accepted for the job.
6. My mother was a part-time worker at the school, but now she works ....., five days a week.
7. I ..... polar bears if all the ice melts in the Arctic.
8. A person who ..... a crime is called a ..... .

2 Put the events from Chapter 9 in the order we hear about them:

(a) ☐ Pip and Herbert want to help Provis escape the country and from Compeyson.
(b) ☐ Herbert shows Pip a note that he had written.
(c) ☐ Provis tells Pip and Herbert about a dishonest person called Compeyson.
(d) ☐ Provis tells Pip that he always planned to return from Australia to see him.
(e) ☐ Pip tells Herbert about Provis and he agrees not to tell anyone he is there.
(f) ☐ Provis and Compeyson escape from a prison ship and swim to the marshes.
(g) ☐ Pip and the night watchman try to find the man who was hiding in Pip's house.

3 Answer the questions in your notebook:

1. What did Provis learn by looking at Pip's watch, ring, clothes and books?
2. Why did Pip feel ashamed by what Provis had told him?
3. Why was Pip sure that Provis would be caught if he went outside?
4. Why did Pip think he could not accept any more money from Provis?
5. What did Pip plan to do with Provis?
6. Why did Provis first become a criminal?
7. Why was Provis given a longer prison sentence than Compeyson?
8. How did Miss Havisham know Compeyson?
9. Why did Pip want to go with Provis?
10. What did Pip used to call Provis?
11. What do you think of the story so far?

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Match the items in column A with those in column B:

A	B
1. Magwitch now wants to	a) was not going to be his wife.
2. Pip now realised that Estella	b) sorry for Provis.
3. Only Jaggers knew that	c) Provis got a life sentence.
4. Provis's life started to improve	d) until he met Compeyson.
5. Compeyson was put in leg-irons but	e) Provis was Pip's benefactor.
6. Pip began to feel	f) be called Provis.

3 Circle True or False and correct the false sentences in your notebook:

1. Provis had to become a criminal because he had a very difficult childhood. True/False
2. Compeyson and his friend Arthur tricked rich old men out of their money. True/False
3. Provis helped Compeyson because Arthur was not good at his job. True/False
4. At court, Compeyson admitted he and Provis had committed the crimes. True/False
5. Compeyson probably wants to kill Provis because he knows what he has done. True/False
6. Compeyson tricked Miss Havisham out of her money and deserted her. True/False

4 Complete the sentences from the story with the correct form of these verbs:

boast – catch – confirm – crouch – fear – sink

1. Pip's heart ..... when he heard that Magwitch was his benefactor.
2. If Magwitch was ..... in England, he would be killed or sent to prison.
3. At night, Pip nearly fell over a man who was ..... in a corner.
4. Mr Jaggers ..... to Pip that Provis was his benefactor.
5. Provis ..... that he had made Pip a gentleman.
6. Pip ..... for Provis because Compeyson wanted to kill him.

Imagine that you are Pip. Write a letter to Joe telling him what you have learned about your benefactor. Write about 200 words.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (10)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

acquit	يبرئ
afterwards	بعد ذلك
alive	حى/على قيد الحياة
apprenticeship	تمرن/تمرين
coincidence	مصادفة
congratulate	يهنئ
court	محكمة
familiar	مألوف
forgive	يسامح
knitting	حياكة
lawyer	محام
mislead	يضلّل
misunderstand	يسىء الفهم
murdering	القتل عمدا
perform	يؤدى
pity	رأفة/شفقة
relate	يتعلّق ب
rowing	تجديف
tears	دموع
warn	يحذّر

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

look after	يعتنى بـ
accused of	متهم بـ
dressing room	حجرة اللبس
break your heart	يكسر القلب/يحطم الفؤاد
wedding dress	فستان الفرح
take my mind off	يريح الذهن من
acquitted by the court	أعلنت المحكمة براءتها

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter Text

Chapter 10 character list

Estella Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
Miss Havisham a rich, elderly lady
Bentley Drummle someone Pip knows in London
Mr Wemmick Mr Jaggers' clerk
Compeyson a dishonest person; Miss Havisham's ex-fiancé
Herbert Pocket Pip's friend and roommate in London
Provis Pip's benefactor, previously known as 'Magwitch'
Mr and Mrs Whimple, Clara Whimple the family that Provis lives with
Mr Wopsle a friend of Joe Gargery
Mr Jaggers a lawyer
Molly Mr Jaggers' housekeeper

Estella had left Richmond, and was now living with Miss Havisham again. I decided to visit them immediately. Herbert offered to look after Provis while I was away; it was only to be for one night.

On my way to Miss Havisham's house, I stopped at the nearby inn and found Bentley Drummle there. He boasted that he was having dinner that evening with a young lady, and he looked pleased with himself. When he left on his horse, I noticed a man outside the inn who reminded me of Orlick.

I went to see Miss Havisham at once. She was in her room, wearing her wedding dress. Estella sat next to her. She was knitting.

'Why are you here, Pip?' Miss Havisham asked. I could see that she was surprised to see me.

'You will not be surprised – or sorry – to know that I am very unhappy,' I replied. 'I know now who my benefactor really is. And I realise that until now, I have misunderstood everything! I thought that Mr Jaggers …'

'Mr Jaggers,' Miss Havisham interrupted, 'has nothing to do with this. He is my **lawyer**. The fact that he is also your benefactor's lawyer is a coincidence, and that is all! He is a lawyer who works for many different people.'

'But you misled me!' I said. 'I made a mistake and you let me continue to believe it. That isn't kind, Miss Havisham..'

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

'Yes, I have misled you, Pip,' Miss Havisham said. 'But why should I be kind?'

'You were kind to me as a child,' I replied. 'You paid for my apprenticeship with Joe. However, when you allowed me to believe that you were my benefactor, you were unkind to your family too.'

'You believed what you wanted to believe.'

'I have lived with your relatives, Herbert and Matthew Pocket, in London,' I said. 'They are kind, and they helped me because they thought you were my benefactor. They wanted to make you happy, but you have misled them, too. They are both good people – not like some of your other relatives!'

Miss Havisham thought for a moment. Then she turned and asked, 'Then tell me, what can I do to thank Herbert and Matthew Pocket?'

'Miss Havisham, please use your money to help Herbert,' I replied. 'Two years ago, I secretly arranged for him to get a better job so that he could pay his debts. But now I must go abroad, and I cannot help him any more.'

Miss Havisham nodded. I turned to Estella, who was looking down at her work.

'Estella, you know that I love you!' I cried.

She did not move.

'I have loved you since we first met,' I continued. 'I thought Miss Havisham wanted us to get married.'

Estella looked at me coldly. 'I do not share your feelings,' she said. 'Don't you remember? I warned you long ago that I have no heart.'

'I saw Bentley Drummle just now,' I told her. 'Surely you don't love him?'

'We are going to marry,' she answered.

I left at once. Unable to think clearly, I walked all the way back to London. It was late that evening when I reached the edge of the city. Near my lodgings, a young boy was waiting. When he saw me, he stopped me and gave me a note from Mr Wemmick, warning me not to return home.

I went to a hotel, but I was unable to sleep that night. The next morning, I visited Mr Wemmick and asked what had happened. He explained that while I was away, he had visited Newgate Prison. Someone there had warned him that Provis, Herbert and I were being watched. Mr Wemmick had also heard that Compeyson was alive, and that he was in London.

Herbert had already been warned by Mr Wemmick, so he had found Provis some new lodgings in a house by the river. Mr and Mrs Whimple lived there, together with their daughter, Clara.

I left Mr Wemmick and went to see Provis at the Whimple's house. Provis already knew that he was in danger, and agreed to escape abroad with me. Herbert and I decided that we would keep a boat on the river, close to the Whimple's house. We could use it to escape when the time came.

I began to take the boat out from the Whimples' house regularly so that I could practise **rowing**. I went out on the river every day, whatever the weather. Sometimes Herbert came with me. The weeks passed slowly. Nothing happened, but Herbert and I feared for Provis. We felt that someone was permanently watching us.

I was sure that Estella had become Bentley Drummle's wife. One evening in February, to **take my mind off** my sad thoughts, I went to the theatre. Mr Wopsle, a friend from home, was now working in London as an actor. I watched him perform and went to congratulate him afterwards.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

When I saw him, Mr Wopsle told me that he had seen a man in black sitting behind me and watching me during the play. 'Mr Pip, do you remember that day when you were a child and some soldiers came to the door?' he asked.

'I remember it well,' I replied.

'Well, it is very strange, but the man in the theatre today seemed very familiar. When I saw his face, I remembered our walk across the marshes with the soldiers to find the convicts who had escaped. I am sure that the man I saw today was one of those convicts.'

I was sure that the man was Compeyson, but there was nothing I could do.

Herbert, Provis and I waited. I felt we were going to have to wait for some time.

***

Mr Jaggers, Mr Wemmick and I were eating dinner at Mr Jaggers' house, and we had just been talking about Miss Havisham. She wanted me to visit her the following day.

'So our friend, Estella, has married!' Mr Jaggers said.

Mr Jaggers continued, 'Bentley Drummle is strong, but he is not intelligent. He may find it difficult to be married to Estella. I do not think they will have a happy marriage.'

He looked at Molly, his housekeeper. She quickly put some food on the table. I realised then that her hands, her eyes and her hair all reminded me of Estella! I was sure that they were **related**.

As we were walking back home that evening, I asked Mr Wemmick to tell me Molly's story. He explained that when she was young, Molly had been a homeless **criminal**.

'She was once married,' said Mr Wemmick, 'to a man who used to spend a lot of time in prison. One day, she was accused of **murdering** her young daughter as well as an older woman. She was **acquitted** by the court, however, thanks to Mr Jaggers. She became his housekeeper afterwards. This all happened more than twenty years ago. Mr Jaggers is very good at what he does.'

Could Estella be Molly's daughter? I wanted to find out, and hoped to get an answer from Miss Havisham the following day.

To my surprise, Miss Havisham seemed almost afraid of me now.

'You have asked me to help Herbert Pocket, and I will,' she said, as soon as I entered her dressing room. 'I will pay for him to continue working for Mr Clarriker.'

I was pleased. But then I thought of Estella, who was no longer there.

Miss Havisham asked if I was very unhappy.

'Yes,' I said, 'for many reasons, which I cannot discuss.'

Then she asked, 'Is there nothing I can do?'

'I do not think so.'

'Oh, what have I done?' she cried, over and over again. Her eyes were full of **tears**.

'Is Estella married?' I asked.

'Yes,' she said. 'Forgive me, Pip! I used her to break your heart. But if you knew my story, you would **pity** me!'

Then she told me everything.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (10) Exercises (SB)

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words from the chapter:

acquit – coincidence – criminal – lawyer – murder – related – rowing – take my mind off – tear

1. After she finished university, she trained to be a ..... .
2. He bought his own boat because he liked ..... so much.
3. We hadn't planned to go to the theatre on the same night as my sister; it was just a ..... .
4. No one guessed they were ..... because they looked so different.
5. The ..... was told he would go to prison for twenty years.
6. I couldn't stop the ..... from falling when it was time to say goodbye for the last time.
7. They knew who had ..... the old man, but they didn't know how.
8. Five months ago, she was ..... on the charge of murder.
9. If I'm worried about something, I usually play music to ..... it.

2 Complete the gaps with the name of the correct person from the word pool:

Compeyson – Drummle – Herbert – Molly – Wopsle

In Chapter 10:

1. Pip finds out that Estella is going to marry ..... .
2. He realizes that ..... may be Estella's mother.
3. Pip asks Miss Havisham to help ..... .
4. Pip discovers that ..... is following him.
5. Pip goes to watch ..... at the theatre.

3 Read again and put the events of Chapter 10 in the correct order:

1. Pip went to visit Miss Havisham to tell her he knew who his benefactor was. ☐
2. Miss Havisham asked Pip to forgive her. ☐
3. Mr Jaggers, Mr Wemmick and Pip had dinner at Mr Jagger's house. ☐
4. Pip went to see Provis at the Whimple's house. ☐
5. Herbert and Pip bought a boat. ☐
6. Pip spent the night in a hotel. ☐

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Answer the questions in your notebook:

1. How did Miss Havisham mislead Pip?
2. What does Estella say when Pip tells her he loves her?
3. Why did Pip and Herbert get a boat?
4. Who was sitting behind Pip at the theatre?
5. What makes Pip think that Molly is Estella's mother?

5 Discuss the questions in pairs:

1. In what ways do Herbert and Wemmick show their loyalty towards Pip?
2. Are you surprised that Miss Havisham seems to feel sorry for Pip? Explain your answer.

6 Write a paragraph of around 100 words saying what you think will happen to Provis. Compare your ideas with your classmates. Do you agree?

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Exercises (WB)

1 Write the words and phrase that match the definitions.

acquitted – coincidence – criminal – lawyer – murdering – related – rowing – take my – mind off – tears

1. An adjective to describe that you are part of the same family as another person: .....
2. When things happen at the same time in a way that seems surprising or unusual: .....
3. A person who can help you with legal problems: .....
4. Someone who commits a crime: .....
5. A synonym for 'killing a person': .....
6. The action of moving a boat on water using long sticks: .....
7. To stop thinking about something which is negative: .....
8. The drops of water which fall from your eyes when you are sad: .....
9. When a person is told officially they did not commit a crime: .....

2 Which is the best summary of what happens in this chapter?

Summary 1

Pip goes to visit Miss Havisham and she is very happy to see him. He asks her to help his friends and to explain why she did not tell him the truth years ago. Although Estella says she feels the same way about him, she tells Pip that she is going to marry another man. In the theatre Pip sees the convict that is following him and starts to plan his escape by train.

Summary 2

Pip is a lot more direct with Miss Havisham and expresses to her how unhappy he is about not being told the truth. Miss Havisham feels bad about this and offers to fulfill Pip's request to help her relatives, the ones who Pip has been living with. Pip also discovers that Estella is now married. Pip is told that he is being watched and that he should get ready to escape to another country at any moment.

3 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1.

1. I need to go out and do some exercise to ..... all the exams I have next week.
2. ..... is a very good water sport to make your legs and arms stronger.
3. My mum had ..... in her eyes while she was watching the sad film.
4. I can't believe we are both wearing the same T-shirt. What a .....!
5. Police are looking for a dangerous ....., he is accused of ..... someone.
6. They have been ..... by the court. They had a very good ..... .
7. My grandmother told me yesterday that we are ..... to a famous writer.

4 Circle True or False and correct the false sentences in your notebook.

1. Bentley Drummle was sad when he spoke to Pip. True/False
2. Mr Jaggers is the lawyer of Pip's benefactor and Miss Havisham's lawyer too. True/False
3. Miss Havisham told Pip she was his benefactor. True/False
4. Miss Havisham wants to compensate Herbert and Matthew Pocket for misleading them. True/False
5. Pip tells Estella that he does not love her. True/False
6. Provis agreed to escape abroad with Pip in a boat. True/False
7. Pip had rowed a boat before and did not need to practise every day. True/False
8. Pip went to the theatre with Mr Wopsle to watch a play. True/False

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Find how these ideas are expressed in the story.

1 I saw a man outside the inn.

2 Mr Jaggers has no connection with this.

3 I can't believe you love him.

4 They are both kind people but some of your other family members are not kind!

5 I'm sorry I misled Herbert and Matthew Pocket. How can I compensate for that?

6 I don't feel the same way about you as you do about me.

7 Herbert and I were worried that Provis was in danger.

8 One evening in February, to think of something that did not make me sad, I went to the theatre.

6 Use the ideas to write sentences using the past modals (modal + *have* + past participle).

1 It was impossible that Pip knew he was going to meet Bentley Drummle in the inn. (can't)

2 Miss Havisham clearly expected Pip to be angry when he discovered the news. (must)

3 Pip thought it was a bad idea for Miss Havisham to mislead him. (should not)

4 Pip told Miss Havisham that she was not kind to her family and this was not a good idea. (should)

5 It was clear that Mr Wemmick knew Pip would be in danger. (must)

7 Write the sentences using *would* to express a past habit.

1 When/young/Pip/think/Estella a lot

2 Miss Havisham/wear/wedding dress/even though/not getting married

3 When/Pip/young/believe everything/Miss Havisham said

4 Pip/often go rowing/on the river

8 Imagine you are Pip. Write a letter to Biddy. Tell him the different things that have happened to you and how you really feel about the situation. Write about 200 words in your notebook.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (11)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

adopt	يتبنى
argument	نقاش/تحاور
bandaged	ربط الجرح
committed	ارتكب جريمة
confident	مطمئن/واثق
deliberately	عمدًا
directions	اتجاهات
fainted	أغمى عليها
fiancé	خاطب
fiercely	بعنف
fight	قتال/مجابهة
further	إضافى/أبعد
guide	يرشد
handle	مقبض/يد
incredible	لا يصدق
jealous	غيور
lying	مستلقيا
murder	جريمة قتل
pack	يعبئ
pale	شاحب/باهت
relatives	أقارب
row	يجدف
scream	يصرخ
spark	شرارة
spoiled	أفسد/أتلف
steamer	باخرة
tablecloth	مفرش السفرة
thick	سميك
tie up	يربط
tight	ضيق
trust	ثقة/اعتماد

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

take revenge on	ياخذ بالثار (ينتقم من)
break people's hearts	تحطم قلوب الناس
took it off	يخلع
put out the flames	يطفئ اللهب
dining room	حجرة العشاء (حجرة السفرة)
badly injured	أصيب بسوء
without anyone else seeing us	بدون رؤيتنا من قبل الآخرين

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter 11 character list

Miss Havisham a rich, elderly lady
Compeyson Miss Havisham's ex-fiancé
Mr Jaggers a lawyer
Estella Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
Herbert Pocket Pip's friend and roommate in London
Provis Pip's benefactor
Molly Mr Jaggers' housekeeper
Mr Wemmick Mr Jaggers' clerk
Orlick a man who worked at the blacksmith's
Startop Pip's friend

When Miss Havisham's fiancé left her, her heart was broken. As time passed, however, she wanted to take revenge on men. She decided to adopt a daughter so that she could teach her how to break people's hearts. When she told Mr Jaggers that she wanted to adopt a little girl, he brought Estella to her. He told her that Estella was an orphan.

'It is my fault that Estella is so cruel. Forgive me, Pip!' Miss Havisham cried.

I told her that there was nothing to forgive; I knew that I would always love Estella, even if she was cruel to me.

Miss Havisham was crying more now. I did not know how to help her, so I thought that I should leave. Before I went, I walked for a while in the untidy garden. It was so full of memories!

I was thinking of Estella, and my first meeting with Herbert, when I suddenly had a terrible feeling. I was sure that something bad had happened to Miss Havisham, so I ran back to her room.

I quickly opened the door. Miss Havisham was still in her chair, but she was screaming. A spark from the fire had fallen on her wedding dress, and now it was burning fiercely. I was wearing a thick coat, so I took it off and used it to cover her and put out the flames. I also pulled the tablecloth off the table in the dining room and used that. The spiders ran away in all directions. I didn't notice that I had burnt my hands until the fire was out and we were lying on the floor of the black and burnt room.

Miss Havisham was badly injured and unable to move. The doctor came, and then I waited for Miss Havisham's relatives to arrive. It was late in the afternoon before I opened the gate to leave. As I left, I heard Miss Havisham crying out, again and again, 'Forgive me! Forgive me!'

I was in pain when I reached my lodgings that night, so Herbert washed and bandaged my burnt hands. If I sat quietly and rested, my mind immediately went back to the terrible fire. Herbert noticed this and did his best to talk to me about other things. As he worked, he told me that he had had a long conversation with Provis, and had learnt much more about his past.

'About twenty years ago, Provis was in love with a young woman called Molly,' Herbert said. 'They were married and had a daughter.

مستلقيا
جريمة قتل
يعبئ
شاحب/باهـ
أقارب
يجدف
يصرخ
شرارة
أفسد/أتلف
باخرة
مفرش الس
سميك
يربط
ضيق
ثقة/اعتما
حجرة العـ
أصيب بـ
بدون رؤي
Scanned with CamScanner
Scanned with CamScanner

Provis loved the child very much, but one day, after an argument, Molly disappeared with the little girl. Provis was afraid that his daughter was dead. Oh, sorry, did I hurt you? Is the bandage too tight?'

'Not at all, Herbert. You are very gentle. Please continue the story.'

'After several months, Provis heard that Molly had been accused of murder. Some people thought that she had killed the child, as well as an older woman. Provis was very upset and did not go to the court. Mr Jaggers worked as Molly's lawyer and she was acquitted. But Provis does not know what happened to Molly, or their daughter, after that.'

'Herbert!' I cried, 'This is incredible. Provis is Estella's father!'

I went at once to Mr Jaggers, and told him that I knew that Molly and Provis were Estella's parents. He explained that when Molly left Provis, she had hidden Estella. Because the little girl suddenly disappeared, Molly was accused of murder. Miss Havisham wanted to adopt a little girl at that time, so he took Estella to her. And once Molly was free from prison, he asked her to become his housekeeper.

'Now that you know the truth, I advise you not to repeat it to anyone,' Mr Jaggers said. I promised that I would not tell anyone.

Soon afterwards, two letters arrived. One was from Mr Wemmick, telling Herbert and I that it was time to help Provis escape. The second letter did not say who it was from. It promised that I would find out more about Provis if I went that night to an old house, on the marshes near my village.

I thought this was probably important, so I decided to leave at once. But first I left a note for Herbert, telling him what had happened.

It was dark and wet as I walked to the old house on the marshes that evening. The pale light of a candle, in a downstairs window, helped to guide me there. I knocked on the door, but nobody came. Then I tried the handle and found that the door opened easily. As I went into the building, however, I was hit by something. 'Who is this?' I shouted. 'Help! Help!'

A man's strong hand held me against the wall. With my burnt arms, I could not fight. Then I was tied up. By the light of the candle, I recognised Orlick.

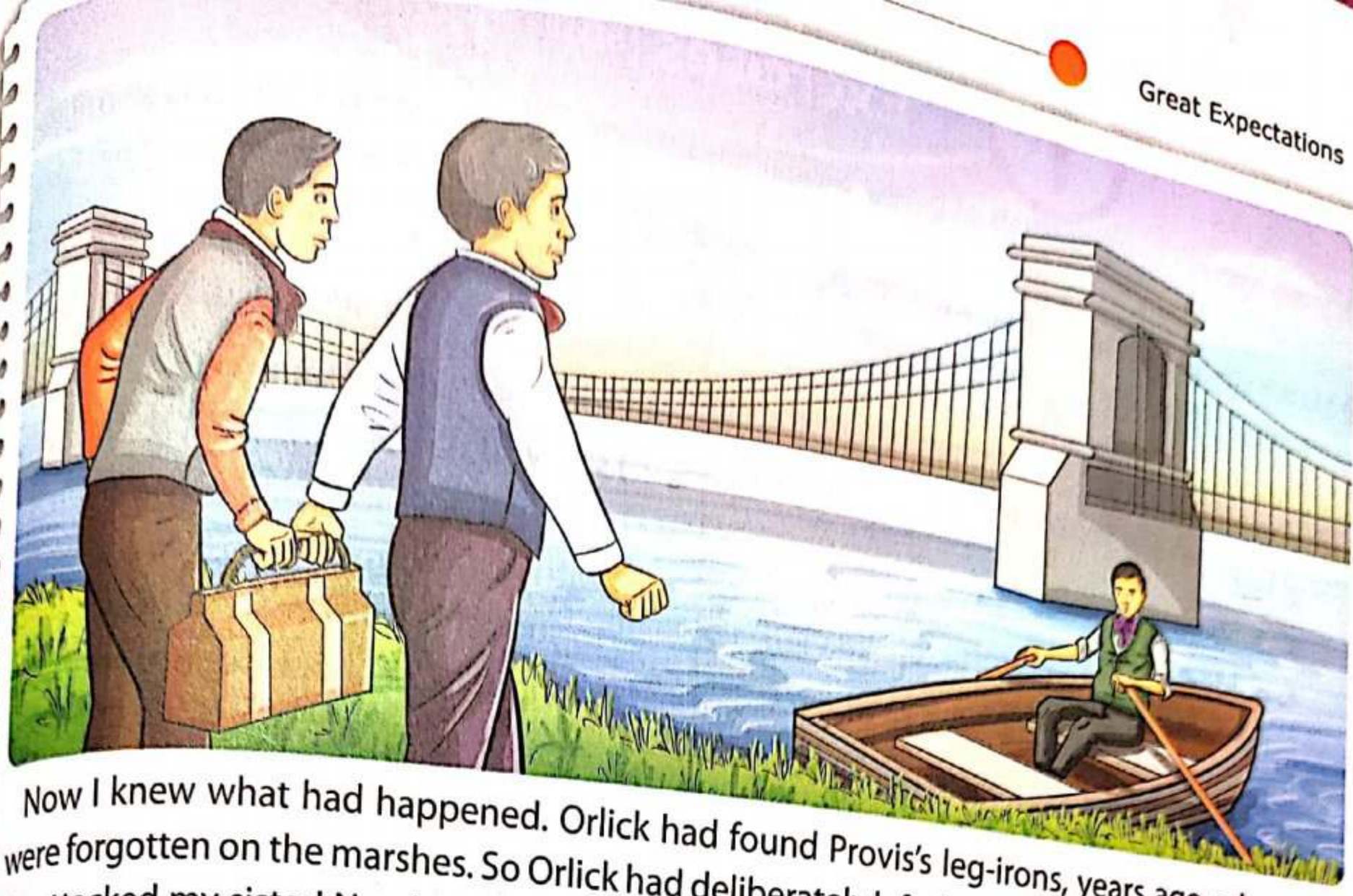
'Now I've got you!' said Orlick, in a loud voice. Then he shouted, 'I am going to stop you. You have always spoiled things for me. I lost my job at Miss Havisham's because of you! And you told Biddy not to trust me!'

I knew that calling for help would make no difference because the house was too far from any other building. As I stood there, tied up against the wall, I thought of all the people who would suffer if I died now: Provis would think I had deserted him; Herbert would be sad; Joe and Biddy would never know how sorry I was for my behaviour towards them.

'I'm going to tell you something,' he said quietly. 'You made me angry and jealous, so I took my revenge!'

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner



Now I knew what had happened. Orlick had found Provis's leg-irons, years ago, when they were forgotten on the marshes. So Orlick had deliberately left the leg-irons in the kitchen when he attacked my sister! Nearly everyone who saw it thought that a convict had committed the crime.

But now, Orlick was going to kill me! He ran towards me, and I fainted.

When I opened my eyes, Herbert was next to me and Orlick had gone. When I left my house that morning, I had dropped Orlick's letter in the entrance hall to our rooms. After I had left, Herbert had found my note and the letter and he had started to worry. He had met Startop, our friend from Hammersmith, and together they had followed me to the marshes. He arrived with a group of men from the village and this had saved my life.

But now there was no time to look for Orlick. We had to help Provis escape; any delay would be very dangerous for him.

Herbert and I had already made plans to help Provis escape. I was to go with Provis abroad, so I quickly packed a suitcase and took it with me to the river, where Herbert and Startop were waiting by our boat. We didn't know exactly where we were going, but we had to get Provis out of the country without anyone else seeing us.

The sun shone as we rowed slowly along the river so that no one would notice anything strange about us. Provis joined us in the boat when nobody was watching, and we went further down the river.

Late that evening we tied our boat up and spent the night at a nearby inn. We continued our journey the next day until we came to the place where steamers took on passengers. Then we stopped our boat in deep water and waited.

About an hour later, the steamer to Hamburg appeared. We thought that this boat would be our best opportunity, and we felt confident that nothing was going to go wrong with our plan.

Provis and I said goodbye to Herbert and Startop, and stood up. But as we did so, another boat stopped next to ours. In it were some police officers and an older man.

It was Compeyson! My heart nearly stopped in surprise. But Provis was the most surprised of all of us. He wasn't expecting things to end like this at all.

'Abel Magwitch, also known as Provis!' a police officer shouted. 'You must come with us!'

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (11) Exercises (SB)

1 Match the words with their meanings.

A	B
1. scream	**a)** too small or uncomfortable
2. tight	**b)** show someone how to get somewhere
3. deliberately	**c)** part of a door that you turn to open it
4. guide	**d)** with intention
5. faint	**e)** to suddenly lose consciousness
6. handle	**f)** to shout loudly because you are afraid

2 Complete the summaries of the chapter with the correct form of words in the box.

bandage – burn – fiercely – incredible – tie up – spark – spoil – steamer

1. A fire started when a ..... fell onto Miss Havisham's wedding dress, causing it to burn .....
2. Orlick, who thinks Pip has ..... everything for him, tricks Pip into going to an old house on the marshes where he is trapped and ..... .
3. Pip finds out the ..... truth that Provis is Estella's father.
4. Pip and Provis try to escape on a ..... leaving for Hamburg.
5. Pip ..... his hands in the fire and Herbert ..... them while Pip thought about the terrible fire.

3 What do we learn about the characters in this chapter? Read and match.

A	B
1. Pip	**a)** is very concerned for Provis's life.
2. Miss Havisham	**b)** saves Pip's life.
3. Orlick	**c)** is very angry and tries to take revenge on Pip.
4. Herbert	**d)** is very sorry about the way they treated Pip.

4 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1. Miss Havisham adopted Estella because she had always wanted a daughter. ☐
.....

2. Pip returned to Miss Havisham's room because he heard her screaming. ☐
.....

3. When Pip arrived at the old house on the marshes, he had to break down the door to get inside. ☐
.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

d Herbert and another friend rescued Pip from Orlick. ☐

e Provis and Pip never got on the steamer which was going to Hamburg. ☐

3 Discuss the questions in groups.

1 What does Orlick blame Pip for?

2 In this chapter, Miss Havisham feels guilty about her actions. What does she feel guilty about? How do we know?

3 How have Miss Havisham's actions affected other characters in the novel?

4 Which other characters in the novel feel guilty? Why?

4 Imagine you are a newspaper reporter.

Write a clear and easy-to-understand news report on the fire at Miss Havisham's house in your notebook. Include quotes from the people involved in the incident.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (11) Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the sentences with words in the box.

screamed – spark – fiercely – tight – guide – handle – tied up – incredible – spoil – deliberately – faints – steamers

1. I can't believe how well you draw. This picture is ..... Well done!
2. My mum ..... loudly when she saw a mouse in the kitchen!
3. I think I need to go on a diet as these trousers are too ..... for me.
4. My sister has an extreme fear of injections. She often ..... when she sees the needle.
5. The lighthouse helped to ..... the ship away from the rocks.
6. Don't say anything about Amir's birthday present. I don't want you to ..... the surprise.
7. The ..... of the door broke and I couldn't get out of the room for a long time.
8. You must be careful when having a barbecue. Just one ..... could cause a big fire.
9. Somebody started the fire ..... . It burnt ..... as the firefighters tried to stop it.
10. In the past, criminals were ..... and transported from England to Australia by .....

2 How are these sentences expressed in the story?

1. I opened the door fast.

.....

2. Orlick had intentionally left the leg irons in the kitchen.

.....

3. The fire was burning in a violent way.

.....

4. The little girl disappeared quickly and unexpectedly.

.....

5. We did not row fast along the river.

.....

6. I very quickly decided to visit them.

.....

7. You made me furious and envious.

.....

3 Choose the correct relative pronoun to complete the sentences.

1. Molly was the person who/when/where disappeared with her daughter.
2. A rowing boat was the object when/whose/which they used to get to the steamer.
3. Orlick was about to attack Pip which/when/where he fainted.
4. Orlick, when/which/who used to work for Miss Havisham, lost his job because of Pip.
5. It was on the river when/who/where the police caught Provis.
6. Where/When/Whose dress caught on fire?
7. Which/Whose/When Pip touched the flame, it was so hot, it burnt his hand.

4 Put the events from the story into the correct order.

(a) ☐ Miss Havisham tells Pip she wanted to use Estella to take revenge on all men.

(b) ☐ Provis is caught by the police before he can escape.

(c) ☐ Herbert and Pip make plans to help Provis escape abroad.

(d) ☐ Mr Jaggers tells Pip to keep the information about Molly and Pip a secret.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

(e) ☐ Pip saves Miss Havisham by putting out the fire on her dress.
(f) ☐ Orlick says he took his revenge on Pip for causing him to lose his job.
(g) ☐ Startop and Herbert follow Pip to the marshes and save him from being killed by Orlick.
(h) ☐ Pip is attacked and tied up by Orlick.
(i) ☐ Pip discovers that Provis and Molly are Estella's parents.

5 Read the sentences. Circle true or false and correct the false sentences in your notebook.

1 Miss Havisham had a bad experience in the past but wanted to help men. **True/False**

2 Miss Havisham adopted Estella so she could help her real mother. **True/False**

3 While Pip was in the kitchen he heard Miss Havisham screaming and went to help her. **True/False**

4 Provis had a daughter with Molly but Provis disappeared with the little girl. **True/False**

5 Orlick planned to kill Pip for spoiling things for him. **True/False**

6 Pip was able to escape through the window before he was killed by Orlick. **True/False**

6 Look at the pictures and write a short paragraph in your notebook to explain what happened in each picture.

7 Revenge is a common theme in this chapter of the story. Write a short paragraph to explain who the following characters might want to take revenge on and why.

Orlick: .....

Miss Havisham: .....

Provis: .....

8 Read the questions and write your answer. Write an essay of about 200 words.

Miss Havisham tries to give Pip an explanation, but can there be any justification for everything she has done to him, and others, so far? What do you think?

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (12)

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

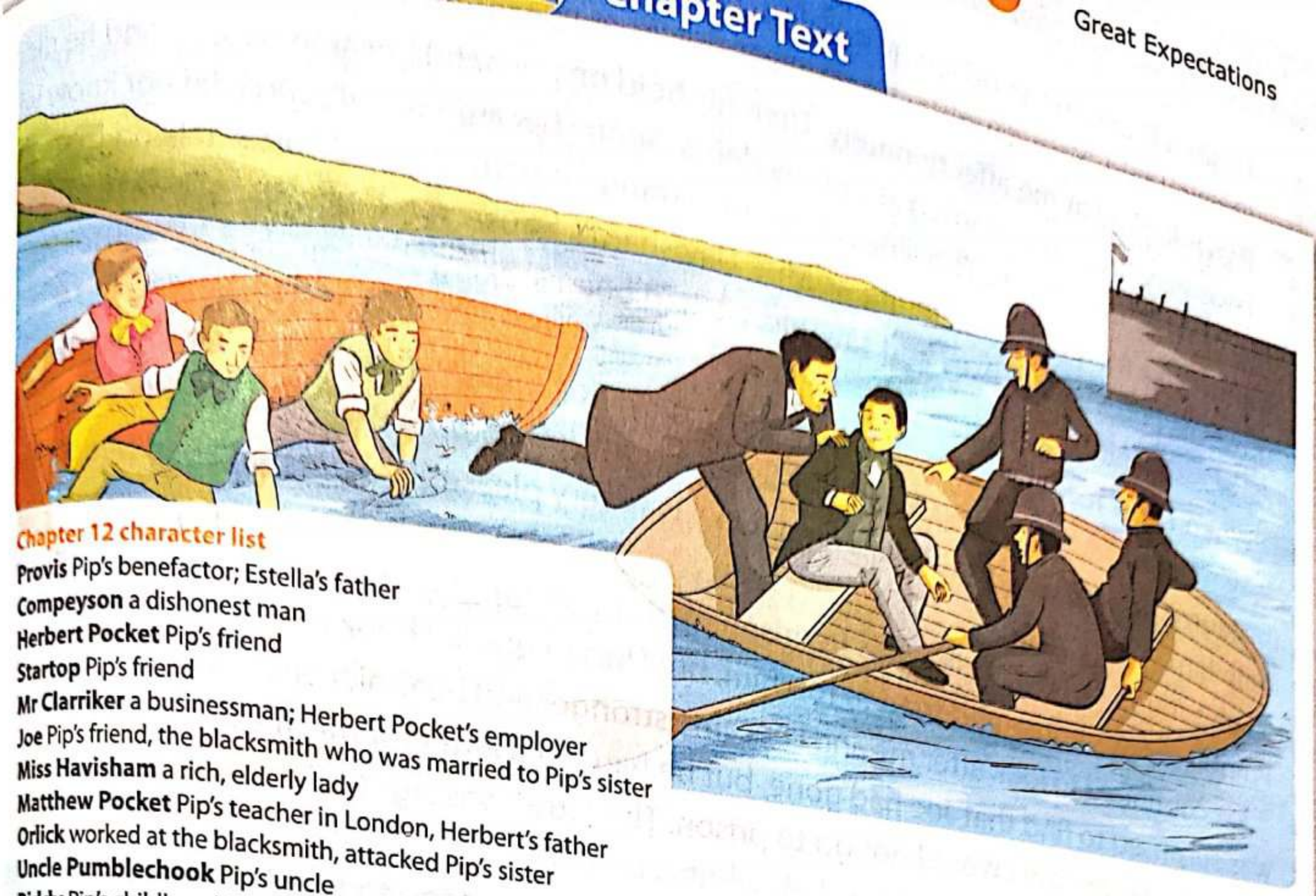
apart	منفصل
blacksmith	حداد
broken into	يقتحم
calm	يطمئن/هادئ
consider	يعتبر
crew	طاقم
delighted	مبتهج
fascinated	مسحور
grab	يختطف
leap	يثب/يقفز
push	يدفع
recognise	يتعرف على
rescue	ينقذ
rob	يسطو
struggle	يكافح
sweep (swept)	يكنس
wave	موجة
Within	داخل

Expressions, Phrases, Idioms & Prepositions

pay with his life	دفع حياته
found guilty	وجد مذنبا
sat down to talk	جلس للحديث
had a place in my heart	له مكانة فى قلبى

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner



Chapter 12 character list

Provis Pip's benefactor; Estella's father
Compeyson a dishonest man
Herbert Pocket Pip's friend
Startop Pip's friend
Mr Clarriker a businessman; Herbert Pocket's employer
Joe Pip's friend, the blacksmith who was married to Pip's sister
Miss Havisham a rich, elderly lady
Matthew Pocket Pip's teacher in London, Herbert's father
Orlick worked at the blacksmith, attacked Pip's sister
Uncle Pumblechook Pip's uncle
Biddy Pip's childhood friend
Estella Molly and Provis' daughter, adopted by Miss Havisham

Provis suddenly jumped up and leapt into the police officer's boat. He grabbed Compeyson and pulled him to his feet. The crew of the steamer could not stop the ship and it passed close by us moments later. A large wave swept over us. There were shouts as our boat filled up with water, and then began to sink.

I was **struggling** to swim, and was pulled out of the river by the police officers. Herbert and Startop had already been rescued, but Provis and Compeyson were missing. Then we saw a dark shape in the water. It was Provis! He had been hit on the head by the steamer as it passed by. We pulled him into the boat, too, and I sat with him. Compeyson did not come back up. Provis had struggled with him under the water and pushed him away. He did not see what happened to him after that.

Provis lay in the bottom of the boat and I held his hand. He had been so kind to me! I looked at him now, and felt only pity. He had left Australia to return to England for me, and now he might have to **pay with his life**.

'You can become a gentleman without me, my boy,' Provis said, weakly.

'I will not leave you,' I replied.

Provis was taken to the prison hospital, where I visited him every day. I could not leave him now, but my debts were growing. Herbert had a new job in Egypt, and Mr Clarriker had asked if I would also like to work for him there. He had agreed to give me some time to **consider** his offer.

When Provis appeared in court, he was found guilty. To my horror, he and thirty-two other criminals were all given life sentences at once. Some were crying, but Provis was calm. He knew that this might happen.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

I visited Provis in the prison hospital for one last time. He was very weak.

'Provis,' I said, 'Your daughter is still alive! She is very beautiful, and I love her!'

Provis looked at me affectionately. Then his hold on my hand became weaker, and he died.

I was very tired, and worried about my debts. Soon I became very ill, and I did not know what day or what time it was. The illness gave me strange dreams. I heard voices talking to me and frightening memories of the fire at Miss Havisham's house came back to me. One morning, however, I opened my eyes and saw Joe. He had been looking after me, like a child, for weeks. He was so kind!

When I was feeling better, Joe had some news for me. Miss Havisham had recently died, leaving most of her money to Estella. She had also left some money to Mr Matthew Pocket, because I had told her she should help him. I was very pleased to hear that I had been able to help him.

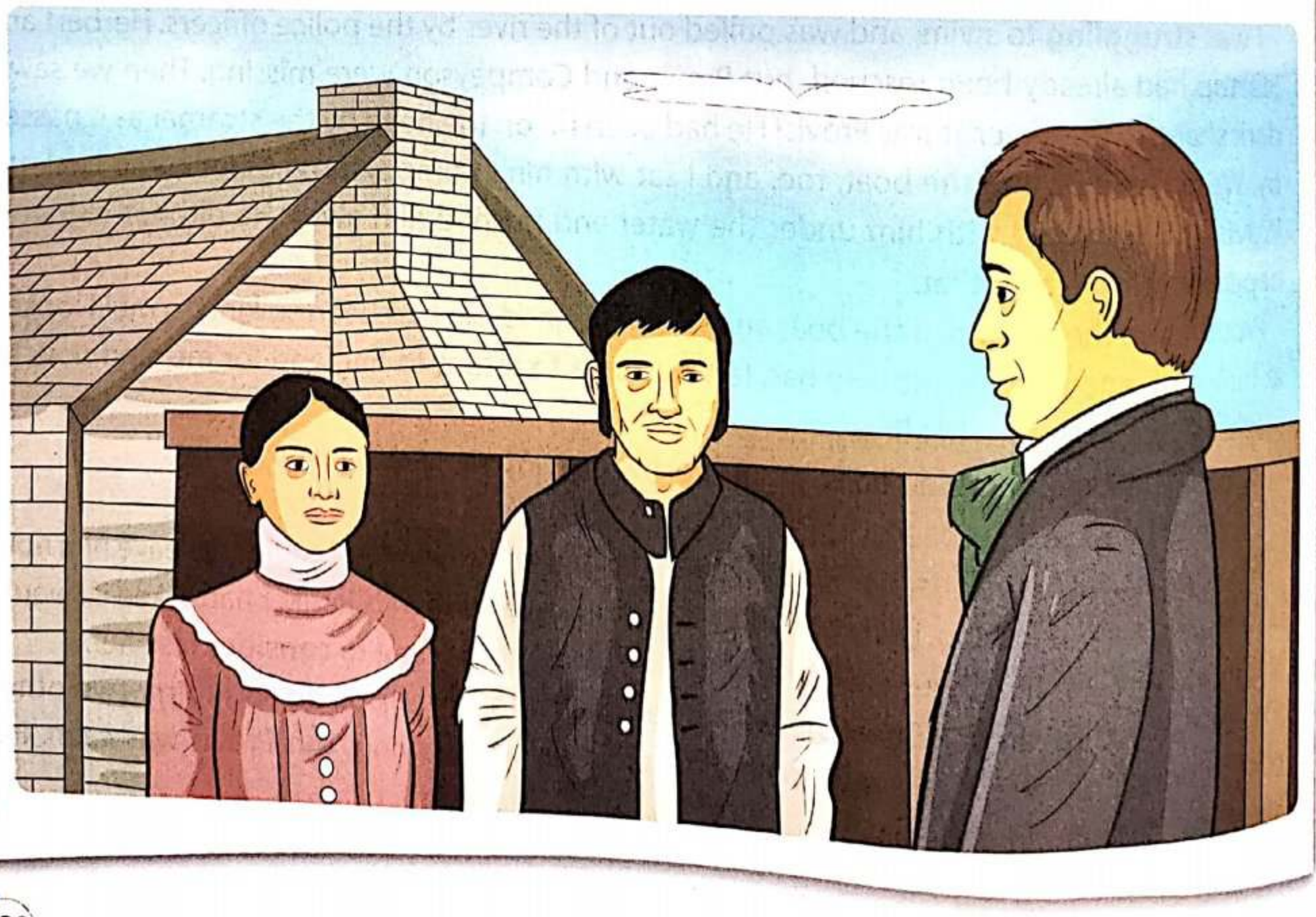
I also found out that Orlick was in prison! With some other men, he had **broken into** Uncle Pumblechook's house and tried to rob him, but Uncle Pumblechook had recognised him.

Joe continued to look after me and I became stronger and healthier each day. One morning, I was surprised to find that Joe had gone, but he had left a letter for me. It said that he had paid all my debts, so now I would not go to prison. The letter was signed: 'Your best friend always, Joe.'

I knew then that I must go back to the blacksmith's very soon to thank him. I also felt that I must see Biddy. I wanted to tell her how sorry I was that I had hurt her in the past and I hoped now that she might marry me.

It was a beautiful summer day when I returned to the blacksmith's. Nobody was in the house when I arrived, but after a few minutes, I saw Joe and Biddy together in the street. They were delighted to see me, and Biddy began to cry.

'It's my wedding day, Pip!' Biddy said, happily. 'Joe and I have just got married!'



Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

They welcomed me back to the blacksmith's, and although the news surprised me, I was glad that I had never told Joe that I hoped to marry Biddy.

'You have the best husband in the world, Biddy!' I said. 'And Joe, you have the best wife!'

I asked them to forgive me. They both told me they would, but they also said there was nothing to forgive.

It was time for me to leave. Within a few weeks I had sold everything I had in London. Then I travelled to Egypt, to work for Mr Clarriker. After some years there, Herbert and I both became managers in Mr Clarriker's business.

Eleven years passed before I saw Joe and Biddy again. They were very happy at the blacksmith's and had two children, a little boy and a little girl. Joe told me that his son was called Pip, after me. He and Biddy welcomed me warmly, and it felt as though I had never been away.

'What kind people they are,' I said to myself. 'I am so lucky to know such good people.'

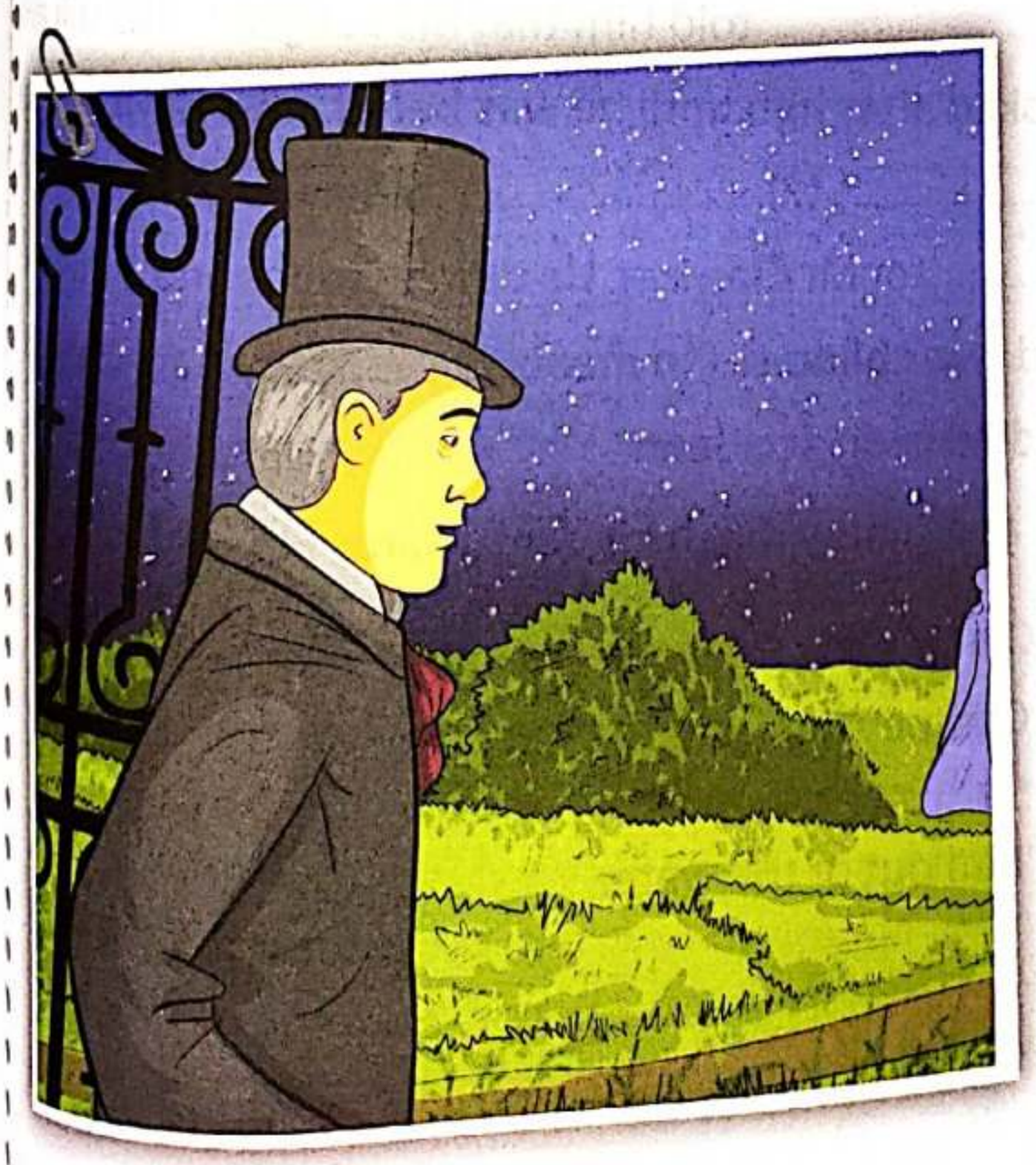
That night, I went to the place where Miss Havisham's house used to be. It was no longer there; instead, I found a large, untidy garden.

As I walked in this strange place with the stars shining brightly above me, I thought of Estella. She had been very unhappy with Bentley Drummle. He had been cruel to her, and so she felt she had no choice but to leave him. Several years ago Drummle had died in an accident with a horse, and I did not know if Estella had married again.

And then I saw her. Estella was no longer beautiful. She was older, of course, but she looked tired, and her eyes were sad. But she still **fascinated** me.

I called to her, and we sat down to talk.

'I have not been here for many, many years,' Estella said. 'But I have returned tonight to say goodbye to this land. I have sold it now.'



Then she said quietly, 'I have often thought of you, Pip.'

'You have always **had a place in my heart**,' I replied.

'I have been hurt, just as much as I hurt you,' she said, 'and now I understand how you felt. Please tell me that we are friends, Pip.'

'We are friends!' I said at once.

'And we will continue to be friends, even when we are **apart**,' she added.

As we left the untidy garden, I felt sure, however, that we would never be apart again.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (12) Exercises (SB)

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words from the box:

apart – break into – consider – fascinate – struggle

1. The sea was rough and they ..... to get him back into the boat.
2. He went to prison because he had ..... someone's house and taken some jewellery.
3. She ..... his offer of marriage very seriously, but in the end she said no.
4. Egypt is a country which has always ..... me.
5. They spent a lot of time ..... as they were working in different countries.

2 Rearrange the words in brackets to complete the sentences in your notebook:

1. She said he had always (her/had/in/heart/place/a) and that's why she wanted to be with him forever.
2. Many soldiers who fought for our freedom (lives/with/paid/their).
3. Everyone was shocked when the judge (guilty/the woman/found) of the crime.

3 Complete the chapter summary with the correct names of the characters:

Pip and Provis tried to escape, but (1)..... fell in the water when a wave made the boat sink. (2)..... was hit on the head by the steamer. (3)..... died in the prison hospital, but before he died, (4)..... told him that his daughter was still alive. Pip became ill, and (5)..... looked after him until he was better. Miss Havisham died and left most of her money to (6)..... . (7)..... and Joe got married. Pip went to Egypt to work with (8)..... for Mr Clarriker. He didn't see Joe and Biddy for 11 years. When he saw them again, they had two children. Pip meets (9)..... who is no longer married. (10)..... had died in an accident.

(11)..... has changed a lot and is now much kinder towards Pip.

4 Are the sentences true (*T*) or false (*F*)? Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

1. The police officers rescued Provis and Compeyson from the river. ☐
2. Provis was still alive when they pulled him out of the water. ☐
3. Pip was offered a job abroad. ☐
4. Provis died in the prison hospital. ☐

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Joe was very confused while he was ill. ☐

6 Pip went to Joe and Biddy's wedding. ☐

7 Estella had been happily married to Drummle before he died. ☐

8 Pip meets Estella in Miss Havisham's old house. ☐

4 Work in pairs and discuss the questions..

1 What were Pip's 'expectations' or ambitions at the beginning of the novel?

2 What does he do to try and achieve his ambitions?

3 Does he achieve any of his goals?

4 What does he learn?

5 Study the following essay title. Do you agree or disagree with the statement? Compare your views with a partner. Plan and write a response to the essay title.

In view of Pip's hopes and expectations at the beginning of the novel, Pip seems to end the novel as a failure. Discuss.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Chapter (12)
Exercises (WB)

1 Match the definitions with the words in the box.

be apart – have a place in your heart – fascinated – be found guilty – consider – struggle – break into – pay with your life

1. To make a big effort to do something: .....
2. To be killed for doing something bad: .....
3. To be known for doing something wrong: .....
4. Think about a possibility: .....
5. Very interested in something or someone: .....
6. Enter a building by force perhaps to steal something: .....
7. You like someone a lot: .....
8. To be separated: .....

2 Complete the sentences with the correct word or expression from Exercise 1. You may need to change the form of the word.

1. I'm going to ..... the two university offers I have and decide which is best.
2. The students were ..... by how many languages the teacher could speak.
3. The thief ..... of stealing important objects from a museum.
4. The robber ..... the house while the family were away on holiday.
5. The young man was driving too fast and ended up ..... . They buried him that night.
6. My grandmother is a wonderful woman and will always ..... .
7. The students ..... to understand the English vocabulary, but the teacher helped them.
8. My brother is going abroad to university, so we will ..... for six months.

3 Change these sentences from the story into reported speech:

1. "Provis," said Pip, "Your daughter is still alive".

.....

2. "You can become a gentleman without me, my boy," Provis said.

.....

3. "It's my wedding day, Pip". Biddy said, happily.

.....

4. Biddy said, "Joe and I have just got married".

.....

4 Complete the sentences using narrative tenses.

1. When I was ..... (feel) better, Joe ..... (have) some news for me.
2. Pip was ..... (struggle) to swim, and someone ..... (pull) him out of the river.
3. Pip ..... (return) to London and in a few weeks he had ..... (sell) everything.
4. Pip ..... (walk) in the untidy garden when he ..... (see) Estella.

5 Put the events from the story in the correct order.

a) ☐ Estella tells Pip that he had always had a place in her heart.

b) ☐ Provis dies while holding Pip's hand.

c) ☐ Joe and Biddy get married.

d) ☐ Miss Havisham dies.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

e) ☐ Pip returns to where the house was.

f) ☐ Pip becomes ill and Joe helps him get better.

g) ☐ Pip and Herbert go to work in Egypt.

h) ☐ Provis was given a life sentence.

6 Read the two sentences about the events in this chapter. Tick (✓) the correct one.

1 a) Compeyson was in a boat on the river rowing by himself. ☐

b) Compeyson was in a boat on the river with police officers. ☐

2 a) Provis had been hit on the head by the steamer. ☐

b) Startop had been hit on the head by the steamer. ☐

3 a) Mr Clarriker offered Pip a job in Egypt. ☐

b) Herbert offered Pip a job in Egypt. ☐

4 a) Joe was able to pay off Pip's debts. ☐

b) Herbert was able to pay off Pip's debts after a few years. ☐

5 a) Joe and Biddy had two children. ☐

b) Joe and Biddy had four children. ☐

6 a) Pip thought that he would never see Estella again. ☐

b) Pip thought that he and Estella would stay together. ☐

7 Read about the characters in this final chapter and decide which character it is.

1 This character tries to help his benefactor who has an accident. He has debts that Joe pays off and decides to start again in a new place. (.....)

2 This character is very rich and has caused lots of problems for many people as she was unhappy in life due to problems caused by a man. She dies and gives money to a young lady and to a man she was told needed help. (.....)

3 This character is a criminal and tried to kill the main character in the story and broke into someone's house. He is sent to prison. (.....)

4 This character works with metal and he says he is the main character's best friend. (.....)

5 This wealthy businessman offers two other characters a job abroad. (.....)

6 This character is adopted by a rich woman. (.....)

8 The story of Great Expectations is about Pip's journey in life. Lots of good and bad things happen to him. What do you think the moral of the story is and what lessons can we learn from Pip's journey in life? Write your answer in your notebook. Write about 200 words.

9 How do you think the story continues? Write a story about what you think happens next from the point of view of Estella.

Remember to use specific adjectives and adverbs and the narrative tenses: Past Simple for finished past actions; Past Perfect for a past action that happened before another action; Past Continuous for background information; Past Continuous with the Past Simple to show a shorter action happened before a longer one. Write about 200 words in your notebook.

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Advanced & Open General Exercises Answers

Unit 7

1. **d)** overcome
2. **a)** value
3. **c)** treated
4. **b)** coaches
5. **a)** character
6. **d)** determination
7. **b)** attached
8. **c)** ceremony
9. **c)** degrees
10. **a)** graduated
11. **d)** leave
12. **c)** so as not to
13. **b)** How
14. **a)** is
15. **c)** hardly
16. **d)** such
17. **b)** Which
18. **c)** any
19. **a)** both
20. **d)** mine

- be overcome by/with) تعبير بمعنى (يتغلب عليه شعور ما فلا يتصرف بشكل طبيعى).
- be of value) تعبير بمعنى (يصبح ذا قيمة).
- treat هنا بمعنى (يفعل أو يشترى شيئًا مميزًا ليسعد شخصًا ما).
- coach هنا بمعنى (أتوبيس مريح لنقل الناس).
- character هنا بمعنى (طبيعة أو ما تتميز به منطقة ما).
- determination هنا بمعنى (تحديد رقم أو قدر شىء ما).
- on attached هنا بمعنى (مرتبط عاطفيًا).
- Without ceremony تعبير بمعنى (بطريقة غير مؤدبة).
- by degrees تعبير بمعنى (تدريجيًا).
- graduated هنا بمعنى (يتدرج من شىء إلى شىء أقوى أو أفضل).
- بعد let يأتى المفعول ثم المصدر.
- بمعنى لكى لا.
- للتعجب How + adj./What + adj. + noun
- كلمة money تعامل مفردًا.
- بمعنى بالكاد وهنا للتناقض.
- بعد such اسم موصوف وهنا luggage اسم لا يعد لذلك لم تأخذ a
- تستخدم which للتخيير بمعنى أى/أيهما
- تأتى any للنفى مع فعل مساعد منفى على عكس no التى هى منفية بذاتها
- بمعنى كلاهما للمثنى وفعلها جمع دائمًا
- ضمير ملكية ولا يأتى بعدها اسم بمعنى ملكى

Unit 8

1. **b)** candidate
2. **d)** company
3. **a)** base
4. **c)** Department
5. **a)** nursing
6. **b)** qualification
7. **c)** measure
8. **d)** profile
9. **c)** task

- candidate هنا بمعنى (مرشح لجائزة)
- company هنا بمعنى (صحبة/زائرين)
- base هنا بمعنى (مركز رئيسى لشركة أو مؤسسة)
- Department بمعنى (وزارة) وهذا المسمى مستخدم أكثر فى أمريكا بدلًا من Ministry
- Nursing home هنا بمعنى (بيت/دار لرعاية المسنين)
- qualification هنا بمعنى (تأهل لنهائيات مسابقة ما)
- measure هنا بمعنى (مقياس)
- profile هنا بمعنى (صورة أو نظرة لشخص أو مؤسسة)
- take ... to task تعبير بمعنى (ينتقد بشكل كبير)

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

10. a) expense
11. b) to the club
12. a) like so much
13. c) of yours
14. d) loaves of bread
15. b) much better
16. a) have her parents
17. d) was born three years ago
18. c) can't
19. b) won't I
20. c) anywhere

- at the expenses of تعبير بمعنى (على حساب او مسببًا ضررًا لـ)
- كان السؤال عن المكان فجاء الرد بالمكان مثله
- بعد حذف ضمير الوصل لا نضع ضميرًا مكانه ولا يأتى الفعل like مضافًا إليه ing فى الأزمنة المستمرة لأنه فعل state
- أصلها a friend of your friends وبعد حذف friends نستخدم yours
- لأن الخبز لا يُعد نستخدم قبله لفظًا من ألفاظ التجزئة وهو loaves
- الجملة هنا تدل على المقارنة ولذلك استخدمنا better
- قاعدة and so بعدها الفعل المساعد المشتق من الجملة الأولى ثم الفاعل
- الاختيار الوحيد الدال على الماضى البسيط
- فى الاستنتاج نستخدم can't be بمعنى لا يمكن أن يكون
- الفعل هنا منفى فى السؤال المذيل لأن الفعل الأول مثبت
- تأتى any للنفى مع فعل مساعد منفى ومعناها أى

Unit 9

1. b) direction
2. d) wisdom
3. c) employment
4. a) potential
5. d) recipe
6. a) generation
7. c) retire
8. b) contacts
9. d) remains
10. a) translate
11. a) be caught
12. d) since
13. b) what
14. c) is going to collect
15. b) too much
16. a) As he isn't studying
17. c) enjoying
18. b) himself
19. d) somewhere
20. c) take them off

- under the direction of تعبير بمعنى (تحت إشراف/توجيه)
- In their infinite wisdom تعبير بمعنى (فى حكمتهم اللانهائية) وهو تعبير ساخر للتعبير عن عدم الرضا عن قرار ما
- employment هنا بمعنى (توظيف أو استخدام مواد فى صنع شىء ما)
- potential هنا بمعنى (محتمل/كامن)
- recipe هنا بمعنى (وصفة للنجاح أو التحسن)
- generation هنا بمعنى (توليد الكهرباء)
- retire هنا بمعنى (يجلس بمفرده فى مكان ما)
- contacts هنا بمعنى (معارف/أشخاص ذوو أهمية)
- It remains to be seen تعبير بمعنى (ليس مؤكدًا)
- translate هنا بمعنى (يتحول إلى/يؤدى إلى)
- فى المجهول هنا لذلك استخدمنا to be + P.P.
- قبل since مصطلح it's + a period of time
- قبل what يأتى فعل وهى بمعنى ما كأداة ربط
- نستخدم going to مع الخطط والنوايا
- القهوة اسم لا يُعد لذلك أخذت much وأخذت too للكثرة
- مضارع مستمر منفى
- بعد can't help يأتى الفعل به ing بمعنى لا أستطيع أن أمنع نفسى من
- ضمير عكسى وهنا جاءت بمعنى نفسه مع كلمة الشخص وهى مذكر
- بمعنى ستجدها فى مكان ما وهى ليست منفية
- كلمة حذاء جمع لذلك نستخدم معها الضمير them الذى يأتى بين الفعل وحرف الجر

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

12. **d)** days' rest
13. **b)** of whom
14. **a)** provided
15. **d)** at
16. **b)** like
17. **c)** no one
18. **a)** would rather
19. **b)** in case
20. **d)** since I saw

- إذا كان الاسم ينتهى بـ s يأخذ apostrophe فقط فى حال الملكية
- حرف الجر لا يأتى إلا قبل whom او which فى حال ضمائر الوصل.
- تحل provided محل if فى الحالتين ١ و ٢ بمعنى بشرط
- حرف الجر مع weekend هو at
- هنا like بمعنى مثل ويأتى بعدها اسم وليس جملة
- مطلوب نفى للجملة بدون not فلذلك نستخدم no
- تستخدم would rather فى المقارنة بمعنى افضل أو أريد وبعدها المصدر
- نستخدم in case بمعنى فى حالة/تحسبا وهى تساوى if فى المعنى
- نستخدم since مع it's + period

Unit 12

1. **b)** flooded
2. **a)** legends
3. **d)** stretched
4. **c)** cheered
5. **a)** pace
6. **b)** tear
7. **c)** races
8. **a)** bend
9. **a)** solution
10. **c)** conflict
11. **d)** How long
12. **b)** aren't I
13. **c)** each other
14. **a)** until
15. **c)** arrived
16. **a)** are you seeing
17. **d)** much bigger
18. **b)** fantastic, blue, Chinese
19. **a)** got used to
20. **a)** in

- flooded with calls تعبير بمعنى (تنهمر عليه المكالمات)
- legends هنا بمعنى (أشخاص ذوو إنجازات كبيرة فى مجال ما)
- stretch هنا بمعنى (يمتد لمسافة)
- cheer هنا بمعنى (يبهج/يسعد)
- can't stand the pace تعبير بمعنى (لا يستطيع مجاراة سرعة أو ضغط العمل)
- wear and tear تعبير بمعنى (التمزق بالاستعمال)
- race هنا بمعنى (عرق/جنس)
- to ... bend بمعنى (يقنع)
- solution هنا بمعنى (محلول)
- conflict of interest تعبير بمعنى (تضارب مصالح)
- نستخدم How long مع المضارع التام أو التام المستمر و How long ago مع الماضى البسيط
- فى السؤال المذيل نستخدم aren't I إذا كان هناك I'm
- نستخدم الضمير التبادلى each other بمعنى كل منا أو كل منهم الآخر
- نستحدم until بمعنى حتى وهى ليست لها قاعدة محددة
- هنا arrived الحدث الثانى لأن فقدان رحلة الطيران كان الأول
- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل ومقابلة الأشخاص من الأشياء التى رتب لها والفعل see هنا بمعنى يقابل.
- استخدام much قبل صفات المقارنة يفيد الزيادة الكبيرة
- ترتيب الصفات هنا يبدا بالراى ثم اللون ثم الجنسية وهو ترتيب سليم.
- بعد get used to نستخدم gerund ولم نستخدم be used to هنا لأن الفعل be غير مصرف
- نستخدم in مع the morning/afternoon/evening

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Translation Vocabulary

addiction	الإدمان
awareness	الوعى
bullying	التنمر
by accident	بالصدفة
chronic diseases	الأمراض المزمنة
citizenship	المواطنة
combat	يكافح
co-operation	التعاون
curative tourism	السياحة العلاجية
determination	الإصرار
discipline	الانضباط
distance learning	التعلم عن بُعد
distinctive	مميز
distinguished	المتميزون
domestic tourism	السياحة الداخلية
eliminate	يقضى على
glorious	رائع
health care	الرعاية الصحية
hepatitis C	مرض الكبد الوبائى
housing	الإسكان
illiteracy	الأمية
initiative	مبادرة
inner potentials	إمكاناتنا الداخلية
loans	القروض
measures	الإجراءات
medical	الطبية
miracles	المعجزات
nuclear energy	الطاقة النووية
overpopulation	الزيادة السكانية
patience	الصبر
peace	السلام
physically	جسديًا
pioneering role	الدور الرائد
precautionary	الاحترازية
prosperity	الرخاء
reconstruction	إعادة بناء
renewable	المتجددة
resorted	لجأت
security	الأمن
space exploration	استكشاف الفضاء
suffering	المعاناة
terrorism	الإرهاب
understanding	التفاهم
unemployment	البطالة
water desalination	تحلية المياه
weapon	سلاح

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

abstract	يستخلص
access to	وصول/مدخل/وسيلة لـ
accurately	بإتقان
aches	ألم
addiction	إدمان
advantage	ميزة/مصلحة
aggressive	عدوانى
anxiety	قلق/اضطراب
anxious	قلق/جزوع/ملهوف
appreciate	يقدر
approach	منهج/طريقة
archery	الرماية
asbestos	أسبستوس/حرير صخرى
ashore	على الشاطئ
aspiration	طموح/توقان/مطمع
assign	تعيين
asthma	ربو
attend	يحضر
attitude	موقف
audience	جمهور
author	مؤلف
average	معدل/متوسط
aviation	طيران
basis	أساس
bear	دب
beliefs	معتقدات
bet	يراهن/يخاطر/يقامر
biodegradable	قابلة للتحلل/دميم
blame	يلوم/يأخذ عليه
blind	أعمى
block	يعرقل/يعوق/عقبة
blood pressure	ضغط الدم
bombarded	يقصف
bombardment	قصف بالقنابل
breathe	يتنفس
bright	متوهج/مضىء
brilliant	ساطع
bulletin board	لوحة البيانات أو الإعلانات
buzzing	يدندن/طنين
capability	مقدرة/استطاعة
capacity	مقدرة/طاقة
captioning	التسميات التوضيحية
carbon dioxide	ثانى أكسيد الكربون
cardboard	ورق مقوى/كرتون
career	شغل/مهنة
celebrities	أشخاص مشهورون
celestial	سماوى
challenge	اعتراض/تحدٍ
charities	جمعيات خيرية
cheek	خد/وجنة
chloroform	بنج/مخدر
clarity	وضوح/نقاء
client	عميل/زبون/موكل
collapse	ينهار
collar	رباط/طوق (العنق)
commerce	تجارة
commit suicide	ينتحر
common	مشترك/متداول/شائع
community	مجتمع
complexity	تشابك/صعوبة/تعقيد
confirm	يؤكد/يؤيد/يعزز
conflict	صراع
consequences	نتائج
construction	بناء/تشييد
consume	يستهلك/ينفق
container	وعاء/حاوية/إناء
contributors	مساهمون
convince	يقنع بالحجة/يقنع
cordless	لاسلكى
creature	مخلوق
crisps	مقرمشات
cruelty	قسوة/وحشية/عنف
crustal	القشرة
cultivating	زراعة/حرث
culture	ثقافة
curtains	ستائر
customs	تقاليد
dawn	فجر/طلوع/حلول
deaf	أصم
decisive	قاطع/فاصل
defeat	يهزم/يغلب
demolish	يحطم
departure	انصراف/رحيل/مغادرة
depression	منخفض/ضغط
desire	رغبة
desperate	يائس/فاقد الأمل
diagnosed	شخّص المرض
diagnosis	تشخيص المرض
digesting	هضم
disability	عجز/عدم مقدرة
disappointed	خائب الأمل
disorders	إضرابات
divide	يقسم/يوزع
doer	فاعل
drowsy	نعسان/موخم
drugs	أدوية/عقاقير/مخدرات
duty	مهمة/واجب/مأمورية
eagerness	اشتياق/لهفة
earmuff	واقى الأذن
earplug	سدادة الأذن
economy	اقتصاد/تدبير
election	انتخاب
emotion	انفعال/مشاعر/عاطفة
emotional	انفعالى
enthusiasm	حماس/حمية/اندفاع
entice	يجتذب/يستدرج
environment	بيئة/محيط
erosion	تأكل
evaluate	يقيّم/يثمن/يقدر
excuse	يتغاضى/يسامح/عذر/حجة
exert efforts	يبذل قوة أو مجهودًا
exposure	تعرض/انكشاف
extreme	مفرط
fake	زيف/تقليد

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

feasible	ملائم/معقول/متيسر
feed	يطعم/يغذى
figure	رقم/قوام/صورة
focused	متمركز/مركز
former	أسبق/متقدم
foundation	مؤسسة
gadget	جهاز/آلة
gather	يجمع
generation	جيل/تولد
generosity	كرم
giant	عملاق/هائل/ضخم
give out	يوزع
gliders	طائرة شراعية
grim	عبوس/متجهم
handle	يتناول/يتعامل مع
heal	يتعافى/يلتئم/يندمل
hiking	السفر على الأقدام
hosing	الإسكان
hysterically	بطريقة هيستيرية
ideal	مثالى
identity	هوية
ignorance	جهل
illiterate	أمى/غير متعلم
import	يستورد/يجلب
indecision	تقلب/حيرة
indicate	يشير
ingesting	استيعاب/البلع
initially	مبدئيًا
inner	باطنى/داخلى
insanity	جنون/اختلال العقل
insincerity	عدم إخلاص/نفاق
insist	يصر
inspiration	إلهام/إيحاء
intensive	متكثف/مركز
interact	يتفاعل
interfere	يتدخل
isolated	منفصل/معزول
jar	إناء/برطمان/جرة
judgment	حكم/قضاء/فصل
Jupiter	المشترى
knock	يضرب
lawn mowers	جزاز الحشائش/حصاد
leaf blower	منفاخ الورق
legitimate	شرعى/مرخص
lightweight	الوزن الخفيف
loosen	يرخى/يحل
low-paid	منخفضة الأجر
marine	القوة البحرية/بحرى
Mars	المريخ
mathematics	علم الرياضيات
maximum	الحد الأقصى
memory loss	فقدان الذاكرة
mental	عقلى
Mercury	عطارد
merely	فقط/مجرد/ليس إلا
meteorites	أجرام سماوية
misuse	يسىء استعماله
mosquito	بعوضة
motion	تحرك
motivation	إثارة/إثارة الدوافع
mysteries	أسرار غامضة
mysterious	غامض
narrow-minded	ضيق الأفق
nausea	غثيان/اشمئزاز
nearby	مجاور
nervous breakdown	انهيار عصبى
Nintendo games	ألعاب نينتندو
numerous	موفور
nutrition	غذاء
objective	هدف/قصد
obstacle	حاجز/عائق
obvious	واضح
oceans	محيطات
opium	أفيون
optimistic	متفائل
organisation	هيئة/منظمة/عصبة
otherwise	بالعكس/وإلا
outdoors	فى الخلاء
outstanding	بارز
overcrowded	مزدحم
packaging	تعليب/تعبئة
packet	رزمة/ربطة/علبة
panic	ذعر
parental	أبوى
particle	أداة/ذرة
particularly	خصوصًا
passion	شغف
path	مسار/طريق
patience	صبر/جلد
peak	ذروة/قمة
permanent	دائم/مستديم
perseverance	مثابرة/صمود
persistence	إصرار/مثابرة
perspiration	عرق
pesticides	مبيد الحشرات
pillar	ركيزة/عمود
pitched	مطروح/منبوذ
plenty	غزارة/كثرة
pointless	لا معنى له
politicians	السياسيون
population	السكان/شعب
postpone	يؤخر/يؤجل/يرجئ
prescribe	يصف علاجًا
press	الصحافة
principal	رئيس/رئيسى
profession	مهنة
profits	أرباح
progressive	تقدمى/تصاعدى
promote	يطور
propagandist	وكيل الدعاية/مروج
protection	حماية
psychiatrist	طبيب نفسانى
punctual	مراعى المواعيد
purpose	غرض/هدف
pursue	يتتبع/يلاحق
pursuit	مواصلة/ملاحقة/متابعة
radiation	إشعاع
radioactive	إشعاعى
raising money	جمع مال لغرض ما
rapid	سريع/عاجل
rate	معدل
ratio	درجة/معدل
recycling	إعادة تصنيع
reel	يترنح
refrigerator	ثلاجة
relate	تعلق بـ

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

relationship	علاقة/صلة/رابطة
relieve	يخفف/يسكن
religion	ديانة
reputation	سمعة «حميدة»
requirement	متطلبات
respiratory	تنفسى
responsible	مسئول/ملتزم/مكلف
ridicule	يستهزئ
risk	يخاطر/مجازفة/مخاطرة
Saturn	زحل
scrap metal	الخردة
secure	يصون/يؤمن/يحافظ
seek/sought	يبحث/بحث
self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
sensitive	حساس/سريع التأثر
seriousness	أهمية/خطورة
shape	شكل/تكوين/مظهر
sincere	مخلص/حسن القصد
single	فريد/أعزب/بمفرده
siren	صفارة الإنذار
spell	يتهجى
spirit	روح/مضمون/فحوى
square	ميدان/مربع
stamina	قوة/احتمال
stand for	يرمز لـ/يشير إلى
status	وضع/حالة/مكانة
stepping-stones	منطلقات/دوافع
stick	يلتصق/عصا
stomach	معدة/شهية
stream	ممر مائى
strong-willed	قوى الإرادة
struggle	كفاح/نضال
subject to	خاضع لـ/عرضة لـ
subsequent	لاحق
supportive	مدعم
surrounded	محاط بـ
survive	يبقى حيًا
swallow	يبلع/يتجرع
sweating	عرق/كدح
symptoms	أعراض
taking off	الإقلاع
technophobes	كارهون للتكنولوجيا
tense	مشدود/متأزم
tension	توتر
tip	رأس/حافة/ميلان
tiredness	تعب
tragedies	روايات محزنة
tumours	أورام/متورم
twist	يلتوى/يلتف/يعوج
types	أشكال/أنواع/فئات
uncomfortable	غير مريح
unconsciousness	غيبوبة/لا شعور
undergo	يتحمل/يكابد
unravel	يحل
unsatisfied	غير راضٍ
unsightly	قبيح المنظر
upper	علوى
urge	يحث/يستعجل
vapour	بخار
variety	اختلاف/تنويع
various	متعدد
versatile	متغير/متعدد المهارات
vision	رؤية/بصيرة
volume	مقدار/حجم/جهارة الصوت
voyage	رحلة بحرية
wander	يتسكع
waste	نفاية/فضلات
whale	حوت
wolf	ذئب
workout	تدريب

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner

Contents

Unit 7 The meaning of success 5

Test 1 47

Unit 8 Work experience 51

Test 2 91

Unit 9 Starting again 95

Test 3 132

Revision 3: Units 7, 8 & 9 136

Test on Units 7, 8 & 9 145

Unit 10 Places of cultural interest 149

Test 4 185

Unit 11 Finding your culture 189

Test 5 231

Unit 12 Myths and fables 235

Test 6 275

Revision 4: Units 10, 11 & 12 279

Test on Units 10, 11 & 12 289

Great Expectations 293

Chapter (7) 296

Chapter (8) 304

Chapter (9) 312

Chapter (10) 320

Chapter (11) 328

Chapter (12) 336

Advanced & Open General Exercises Answers 344

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢٢/٧٢١٤

NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

Scanned with CamScanner

Scanned with CamScanner